



iSeries

Backup, Recovery, and Media Services for iSeries

Version 5

SC41-5345-03





iSeries

Backup, Recovery, and Media Services for iSeries

Version 5

SC41-5345-03

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the information in "Notices" on page ix.

Fourth Edition (August 2002)

This edition applies to version 5, release 2, modification 0 of Backup, Recovery and Media Services (product number 5722-BR1) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions. This edition applies only to reduced instruction set computer (RISC) systems.

This edition replaces SC41-5345-02. This edition applies only to reduced instruction set computer (RISC) systems.

© **Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1998, 2002. All rights reserved.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

About Backup, Recovery and Media

Services for iSeries (SC41-5345-03) . . . vii

Who should read this book	vii
Prerequisite and related information	vii
iSeries Navigator	viii
How to send your comments	viii

Notices ix

Trademarks.	x
---------------------	---

Summary of Changes xiii

Software Enhancements	xiii
Compatibility.	xv
Book Enhancements	xv

Part 1. Getting Started with BRMS . . 1

Chapter 1. Introduction to Backup Recovery and Media Services for iSeries (BRMS) 3

BRMS Standard	3
BRMS Network Feature.	3
BRMS Advanced Functions Feature.	3
Overview of Standard BRMS Product Functionality	4
How BRMS Policies Work	5
Types of Policies	5
How BRMS Control Groups Work	6
How Policies and Control Groups Work Together	6
The BRMS Media Management Components	7
How the BRMS Functional Components Work Together.	9

Chapter 2. Installing and Initializing BRMS 11

Hardware Considerations.	11
Software Considerations	11
Installing Media and Storage Extensions (MSE)	11
Installing BRMS	12
After the Installation	12
Updating License Information	13
Removing BRMS From Your System	13

Chapter 3. Backing Up Your Entire System 15

Enrolling Media	15
Determining Media Classes	16
Enrolling Media into BRMS for use by a Stand-Alone Tape Device	17
Enrolling Media into BRMS for use by a Media Library	17
Performing the Backups	18
Backing Up System with *SYSTEM	18
Backing Up System Data with *SYSGRP.	18

Backing Up User Data with *BKUGRP	19
Printing Your Recovery Reports	19

Chapter 4. Recovering Your Entire System 21

An Overview of the Recovery Reports	21
Recovering Your Entire System Report (also called the Recovery Analysis Report)	21
Recovery Volume Summary Report	22
Display ASP Information Report	22
Printing the Recovery Reports	22
Using the Recovering Your Entire System Report	23
Step: Recover Licensed Internal Code.	24
STEP: Recover Operating System	25
STEP: Setting up standalone or media library devices for recovery	26
STEP: Recover the BRMS product and associated libraries	27
STEP: Recover BRMS Related Media Information	28
STEP: Initialize BRMS functional authority information	29
STEP: Update system name in BRMS media information	29
STEP: Initialize BRMS device and media library information	30
STEP: Recover User Profiles	30
STEP: Change QSECOFR user profile password	31
STEP: Recover BRMS Required System Libraries	31
STEP: Recover configuration data	32
STEP: Reset BRMS Device and Media Library Information	33
STEP: Recover All Remaining System and User Data.	33
STEP: Recover IBM Product Libraries.	34
STEP: Recover User Libraries	35
STEP: Recover Document Library Objects	36
STEP: Recover Objects in Directories	36
STEP: Recover Spooled Files for all ASPs	36
STEP: Special Recovery Processing — iSeries Integration for Windows® Server	37
STEP: Special Recovery Processing — Recovering Linux servers in a logical partition.	37
STEP: Special Recovery Processing — IBM Content Manager onDemand for iSeries	38
STEP: Apply Journal Changes	38
STEP: Recover Authorization Information	39
STEP: Verify system information	39
STEP: Apply PTFs	39
STEP: Print Job Log	40
STEP: Reset system values	40
STEP: Perform IPL	40
STEP: Special Recovery Processing — iSeries Integration for Windows Server	40
Recovery Tips	41

Part 2. Tailoring Your BRMS

Operations 43

Chapter 5. Working with Devices in BRMS 45

Adding New Devices	45
Adding a New Device Automatically	45
Adding a New Device Manually	46
Changing an Existing Device	46
Changing Device Information for Stand-Alone Devices	46
Changing Device Information for Media Library Devices	48
Working with Third Party Media Libraries	50
Last Active Device	51

Chapter 6. Setting Up Your Media Management Operation 53

Preparing Your Media	54
Working with Media Classes	54
Enrolling Media	55
Initializing Volumes	58
Setting Up Your Media Inventory System	60
Storing Your Media	61
Media Policies	61
Storage Locations	64
Containers and Container Classes	66
Media Slotting	69
Moving Your Media	69
Move Policies	70
Initiating Movement	74
Verifying Movement	76
Tracking Your Media	77
Working with the BRMS Media Inventory	77
Duplicating Media	79
External Label Printing	81

Chapter 7. Tailoring Your Backup 83

Planning Considerations	83
The BRMS System Policy	84
Understanding the System Policy	84
The BRMS Backup Policy	86
Changing the Backup Policy	86
Backup Control Groups	89
Content of Control Groups	90
Using the *SAVSYS Special Value	92
Contents of the Default Control Groups	94
How to Work with Backup Control Groups	96
Control Group Processing Order	103
Creating Backup Lists in a Control Group	104
Processing User Exits in a Control Group	111
Backing Up Your Control Group	112
Additional Options for Processing Control Groups	113
Using the Save-While-Active Feature	113
Console Monitoring	118
Performing Serial, Concurrent, and Parallel Backups	120
Sample Backup Scenarios: Working with Multiple Control Groups and Shared Devices	122

Scenario 1: Using Multiple Control Groups in a Serial Backup	123
Scenario 2: Using Multiple Control Groups in Parallel and Concurrent Backups	126
Scenario 3: Performing a Backup Across a Network with Shared Devices	129
Additional BRMS Save Commands	131

Chapter 8. Performing Selected Recoveries 133

Recovery Policy	133
Working with the STRRCYBRM Command	135
Understanding the STRRCYBRM Parameters	135
Recovering Control Groups with STRRCYBRM	137
Recovering Multiple Control Groups	140
Recovering Libraries with STRRCYBRM	142
Recovery of Individual Integrated File System Objects	143
Recovering User Profiles	146
Additional Restore Options in BRMS	147
Recovering Objects with Object Detail	147
Recovering Individual Folders	149
Recovering Spooled Files	151
How to Perform Parallel and Concurrent Recoveries	153
Recovering Multiple Control Groups with Concurrent Support	154
Performing Parallel Recoveries	155
How to Resume a Recovery	156
Performing a Recovery without the Recovery Analysis Report	156
Identifying the Tapes you Need	156
Generating a Recovery Analysis Report after a Failure	157
Using the Recovery Planning and Activity Displays	157
Creating a Recovery Contact List	157
Creating a Recovery Activities List	158
Additional BRMS Restore Commands	160

Chapter 9. Daily Maintenance in BRMS 163

What the STRMNTBRM Command Does	163
Scheduling the STRMNTBRM Command	165
Processing the STRMNTBRM Command in a Backup Control Group	166
Notification of Failure to Process STRMNTBRM	167

Chapter 10. Scheduling Backup and Recovery Jobs 169

Scheduling Backup and Recovery Jobs	169
Scheduling Control Group Backups	169
Scheduling Selected Recovery Items	171
Working with Scheduled Jobs	172
Keeping Job Log Information	172
Changing the Job Scheduler	173
Some Notes™ on Substitution Variables	174

Part 3. Advanced Topics in BRMS 177

Chapter 11. The Functional Usage Model and BRMS Security

Considerations. 179

How the Functional Usage Model Works	179
Backup Function	180
Recovery Function.	180
Media Management Components.	181
System-Related Functions	181
Implementing the Functional Usage Model	182
Registering New BRMS Activities with the Functional Usage Model.	183
Working with the SETUSRBRM Command	183
Securing the Console Monitor	185
Working with OS/400 Security Controls	185
BRMS Media Security	186

Chapter 12. Setting Up BRMS as a Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) Client . 189

An Overview of the BRMS Application Client	189
Benefits	189
Restrictions	189
Setting Up Your BRMS Client	190
Steps at the TSM Server	190
Steps at the TSM Client	191
Using TSM Automatic Password Management	196

Chapter 13. Networking with BRMS 199

An Overview of BRMS Network Functionality	199
How Shared Media Inventory Synchronization Works	200
How BRMS Networks Communicate	202
TCP/IP Network configuration	204
How to Set Up a BRMS Network.	205
A Step-by-Step Guide to Setting Up Your BRMS Network	205
Changing the System Name	209
Joining Two BRMS Networks	212
Copying Control Groups Between Networked iSeries Servers	213
Verifying the BRMS Network	214
Removing a System From a Network	215
Removing the Network Feature from a Previously Networked System	216

Chapter 14. Online Lotus Server Backups 217

How Lotus Server Online Backup Works	217
Initialize BRMS For Lotus Server Backups.	218
Performing An Online Lotus Server Backup	218
Determine the device and media class to use	219
Add media to the media class scratch pool	219
Start the backup	219
View the Catalog of Lotus Server Saved Items	220
Planning for Disaster Recovery	220
Recovering a Single Lotus Server Database	220
Restrictions	221
Recommendations.	221
Limitations	221
Lotus Server Backup Performance Tuning	221

For Domino servers	221
For QuickPlace servers	221
How to Copy BRMS Lotus Server Control Groups	222
Pre-processing and Post-processing *EXITs in Control Groups.	222
BRMS Online Incremental Lotus Server Backup	223
Setting up your Lotus Servers for Online Incremental Backup	223
Setting up BRMS for Online Incremental Backup	223
Setting up BRMS to restore Online Incremental Backups	224

Chapter 15. Backup and Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices. 227

Backup of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices	227
Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices	231

Chapter 16. Using Tape Automation with BRMS 235

Adjustments to BRMS When Using Tape Automation	235
Setting up Tape Automation with BRMS	235
Creating Tape Automation on Your System	235
Basic Setup of a Media Library with BRMS	235
Enrolling Tape Automation Media (volume) into BRMS	236
Save and Restore Tasks	237
Performing a Normal Save Operation	237
Save Storage and BRMS.	237
Using the Save Licensed Program Command	237
Recovery Process Using Tape Automation.	237
Recovering an Entire System (Starting with Licensed Internal Code).	238
Completing the Recovery	238
Tasks for Archiving	238
Archiving When Using Tape Automation	238
Using Dynamic Retrieval	238
Moving Volumes with BRMS	239

Chapter 17. Tape I/O From A Program 241

Using BRMS for Tape File Processing	243
Recovery	245
Using BRMS for Input Processing	245
Input/Output Processing with Multiple Devices	247
1. Create Tape File Objects	247
2. Compile The Program.	248
3. Use OVRTAPF to Indicate Which Tape Drives to Use	248
4. Use SETMEDBRM to Involve BRMS in Managing the Tape	250
Call the Program	251
Results	251
Other Processing Techniques	253
Messages.	254

Part 4. Appendixes 255

Appendix A. A Summary of BRMS Reports 257

ASP Information Report (QP1AASP, QP1AXS)	257
Backup Folder List Report (QP1AFL)	257
Backup Link List Report (QP1AFS)	257
Backup Object List Report (QP1AOB)	257
Backup Plan Report (QP1ABP)	257
Backup Policy Report (QP1ABX)	258
Backup Spooled File List Report (QP1ALQ)	258
Calendar Report (QP1ACA)	258
Centralized Media Audit Report (QP1ASYN)	258
Container Report (QP1ACN)	259
Container Class Report (QP1ACT)	259
Device Report (QP1ADV)	260
Library Backup Analysis Report (QP1ALA)	260
Link Information Report (QP1ADI)	260
Location Analysis Report (QP1A2SL)	261
Log Report (QP1ALG)	261
Media Report (QP1AMM)	261
Media Class Report (QP1AMT)	262
Media Expiration Report (QP1AEP)	262
Media Information Report (QP1AHS)	262
Media Library Report (QP1AMD)	263
Media Library Media Report (QP1A1MD)	263
Media Merge Report (QP1AEN)	264
Media Movement Report (QP1APVMS)	264
Media Policy Report (QP1AME)	264
Media Volume Statistics Report (QP1AVU)	264
Media Volume Threshold Report (QP1AVOL)	265
Move Policy Report (QP1AMP)	265
Recovery Activities Report (QP1ARW)	266
Recovery Analysis Report (QP1ARCY)	266
Recovery Policy Report (QP1ARX)	266
Recovery Volume Summary Report (QP1A2RCY)	266
Save Files Report (QP1ASF)	267
Save Strategy Exceptions Report (QP1ALE)	267
Saved Folders Report (QP1AFD)	267
Saved Objects Report (QP1AOD)	267
Saved Spooled Files by Date Report (QP1AOQ)	267
Storage Location Report (QP1ASL)	268
System Policy Report (QP1ASP)	268

Version Control Report (QP1AVER)	268
Volume Movement Report (QP1AVMS)	269

Appendix B. Programs and APIs 271

Tape Information Exit Program	271
Required Parameter Group	271
Format of Operational Information	271
Field Descriptions	272
Tape Movement Exit Program	272
Required Parameter Group	272
Format of Operational Information	273
Field Descriptions	273
BRMS Object Retrieval Exit Program	274
Required Parameter Group	275
Format of Object Description Information	275
Field Descriptions	276
Format of Media Information	276
Field Descriptions	276
Format of Control Value Information	277
Field Descriptions	277
BRMS Retrieve Media Information (Q1ARTVMED)	
API	277
Required Parameter Group	277
Format of the Generated Information	278
Field Descriptions	279
Format of Control Value Information	280
Field Descriptions	280
Error Messages	281
BRMS Select Device (Q1ASLTDEV) API	281
Required Parameter Group	281
Format of Generated Information	282
Field Descriptions	282
Format of Control Value Information	282
Field Descriptions	282
Error Messages	283

Index 285

About Backup, Recovery and Media Services for iSeries (SC41-5345-03)

This book provides information on how to install and use the standard Backup, Recovery and Media Services (BRMS) product. This information includes instruction on how to design and implement a comprehensive backup, recovery, and media management strategy for your company. Following is a list of the topics that are discussed in this book:

- An immediate backup of your entire system.
- Use BRMS recovery reports to assist you in recovering your entire system.
- Tailor a backup strategy that best suits the specific needs of your company.
- Perform recoveries of selected libraries and objects.
- Design an effective, automated media tracking system using BRMS.
- Perform daily and weekly maintenance tasks in BRMS.
- Secure your backup, recovery, and media operations.
- Establish BRMS as a client to Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM)
- Create a network of BRMS systems.
- Setup for online backup of Lotus servers.

This book provides step-by-step instruction on how to perform each of these tasks, and provides detailed examples whenever possible.

Since V5R1, many functions of BRMS are now available through a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For more information on the functions that are available in iSeries Navigator, go to the iSeries Information Center.

Who should read this book

This book is designed for system administrators and operators who work with BRMS on a regular basis, and for those responsible for designing backup, recovery, and media management strategies.

This book assumes familiarity with standard usage and terminology. It also assumes familiarity with the *Backup and Recovery*, SC41-5304-06 book.

Prerequisite and related information

Use the iSeries Information Center as your starting point for looking up iSeries technical information.

You can access the Information Center two ways:

- From the following Web site:
<http://www.ibm.com/eserver/iseries/infocenter>
- From CD-ROMs that ship with your Operating System/400 order:
iSeries Information Center, SK3T-4091-02. This package also includes the PDF versions of iSeries manuals, *iSeries Information Center: Supplemental Manuals*, SK3T-4092-01, which replaces the Softcopy Library CD-ROM.

The iSeries Information Center contains advisors and important topics such as Java, TCP/IP, Web serving, secured networks, logical partitions, clustering, CL commands, and system application programming interfaces (APIs). It also includes links to related IBM Redbooks and Internet links to other IBM Web sites such as the Technical Studio and the IBM home page.

With every new hardware order, you receive the *iSeries Setup and Operations CD-ROM*, SK3T-4098-01. This CD-ROM contains IBM @server iSeries Access for Windows and the EZ-Setup wizard. iSeries Access offers a powerful set of client and server capabilities for connecting PCs to iSeries servers. The EZ-Setup wizard automates many of the iSeries setup tasks.

iSeries Navigator

IBM iSeries Navigator is a powerful graphical interface for managing your iSeries servers. iSeries Navigator functionality includes system navigation, configuration, planning capabilities, and online help to guide you through your tasks. iSeries Navigator makes operation and administration of the server easier and more productive and is the only user interface to the new, advanced features of the OS/400 operating system. It also includes Management Central for managing multiple servers from a central system.

You can find more information on iSeries Navigator in the iSeries Information Center and at the following Web site:

<http://www.ibm.com/eserver/iseries/navigator/>

How to send your comments

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and high-quality information. If you have any comments about this book or any other iSeries documentation, fill out the readers' comment form at the back of this book.

- If you prefer to send comments by mail, use the readers' comment form with the address that is printed on the back. If you are mailing a readers' comment form from a country other than the United States, you can give the form to the local IBMbranch office or IBM representative for postage-paid mailing.
- If you prefer to send comments by FAX, use either of the following numbers:
 - United States, Canada, and Puerto Rico: 1-800-937-3430
 - Other countries: 1-507-253-5192
- If you prefer to send comments electronically, use one of these e-mail addresses:
 - Comments on books:
RCHCLERK@us.ibm.com
 - Comments on the iSeries Information Center:
RCHINFOC@us.ibm.com

Be sure to include the following:

- The name of the book or iSeries Information Center topic.
- The publication number of a book.
- The page number or topic of a book to which your comment applies.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A. IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
500 Columbus Avenue
Thornwood, NY 10594
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106-0032, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created

programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
Software Interoperability Coordinator
3605 Highway 52 N
Rochester, MN 55901-7829
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

Application System/400
AS/400
BRMS/400
e (logo)
IBM
iSeries

Operating System/400
OS/400
400

Tivoli is a trademark of Tivoli Systems Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Summary of Changes

Following are brief summaries of the enhancements to Backup, Recovery and Media Services (BRMS) for iSeries for V5R2, and the accompanying enhancements to this book.

Software Enhancements

New functions available in BRMS at V5R2 include the following:

- The BRMS System Recovery Report (QP1ARCY) has been enhanced with new steps.

The new steps include:

- Setting up standalone or media library devices for recovery
- Initialize BRMS functional authority information
- Update system name in BRMS media information
- Configure auxiliary storage pool devices
- Verify auxiliary storage pool device names
- Recovering Linux servers in a logical partition

Additional detail was also added to many of the base steps to help improve the recovery process.

- Media policies used for Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) operations have been updated to allow for a 64-character password, the maximum allowed by TSM servers. In addition, these passwords are stored by BRMS using a stronger encryption algorithm than was provided in previous releases.
- The BRMS TSM client has been enhanced to support the PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE client option when used with the Tivoli® Storage Manager OS/400® Client API, Version 4 Release 2 Level 1 . See “Using TSM Automatic Password Management” on page 196 for further information on this topic.
- BRMS has been enhanced to support backup and recovery of objects on auxiliary storage pool devices (auxiliary storage pools 33–255). You might want to review Chapter 15, “Backup and Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices” on page 227 if you are using auxiliary storage pool devices to assure you are getting a complete backup of your user data on these devices.
- The DUPMEDBRM command has been enhanced to provide object detail for duplicated media. The object detail of the duplicated media is not actually copied, but is “keyed” to the original saved object detail to minimize the storage BRMS requires to maintain the duplicated detail information. Duplicated media will always result in duplicated object detail, if object detail information is available for the duplicated items on the input media.
- The INZBRM command now provides two new options. The *SETAUT option allows you to initialize the BRMS functional authorities. The *CHGSYSNAM option allows you to rename the owner of the BRMS media information and history information before recovering to a system or logical partition with a name that is different than when this information was saved.
- The STRMNTBRM command has been enhanced with a new parameter which allows you to reorganize the BRMS databases. Reorganizing the BRMS databases on a periodic basis helps minimize the amount of disk storage needed to maintain BRMS policies, media information and history information on your

system. This is particularly important if you save with object detail where a lot of history is expired each time the command runs.

- The BRMS restore commands, as well as the BRMS retrieve and recovery defaults, have been updated to allow use of the *FILELVL special value for the Allow object differences ALWOBJDIF parameter.
- A new attribute was added to the Network Group to allow you to indicate whether the system is enabled for TCP/IP communications. If you set this value to *YES, BRMS will communicate with other systems in the BRMS network using TCP/IP.
- The BRMS functions in iSeries Navigator were significantly enhanced with V5R2. These enhancements include:
 - A Move Policy wizard and move policy properties to help you create and maintain move policies and to optionally create new locations. In addition, media functions and tasks were added to enable you to perform and verify media movement operations.
 - New backup policy properties allow you to specify media libraries, save files and TSM servers as backup devices with options to enable and specify parallel device backups. You can now specify the days of the week when running commands before and after the backup, or add special actions (exits) to be performed during backups. You can also define the type of incremental backup to use, what subsystems should be ended and/or restarted, and what job queues are to be held and/or released. You can also specify whether backup items are to be saved using save-while-active.
 - New functions were added to the Backup Policies folder which allows you to create, update and manage your backup lists, and to save your backups saved to save files.
 - New function was added to the Move Policies folder which allows you to create, update and manage your locations.
 - A new Media Pools folder was added to the Media folder with functions provided for creating, updating and maintaining your media pools (classes).
 - The Backup History–Include panel has been enhanced with new options so you can filter the backup history based on expiration date, saved system, and disk pool name or number.
 - The Volumes–Include panel has been enhanced with new options so you can filter the volumes based on location, container, owning system, as well as, volumes marked for duplication, duplicated volumes, or secured volumes.
 - Options were added to Run maintenance and cleanup so that you can now select the specific maintenance functions you want to run.
 - Options were added to Print reports so that you can now select one or more BRMS reports of various types for printing on the iSeries™ server.
 - Global properties were added to the plug-in. These properties let you specify whether TCP/IP is to be used for BRMS network operations. You can also specify notification controls, signoff exception and IPL controls using these global properties.
 - The Restore wizard was enhanced to allow you to perform point-in-time recoveries of objects saved using online incremental Lotus® server backups. In addition, the Restore wizard now supports restore of objects saved to TSM servers, objects saved to parallel devices, and objects saved to save files.

For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center., or download and review the BRMS Graphical User

Interface Student Guide which can be found on the BRMS web site at:
<http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iserries/service/brms/pluginguide.htm>.

BRMS functionality is always being enhanced. Enhancements between regularly scheduled software releases are provided by PTF. You should periodically review the BRMS web site at: <http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iserries/service/brms/> to learn of any new functions that might improve your backup and recovery strategy.

Compatibility

The following changes have been made to BRMS functions which may affect your operations.

- The RSTAUTBRM command has been changed so that it only restores the authority information saved using *USRAUTASP. The RSTAUTBRM command does not replace the function provided by the OS/400 RSTAUT command.
- With V5R1, some BRMS commands allowed referencing auxiliary storage pool devices using the numerical auxiliary storage pool identifier (33–99). Beginning with V5R2, auxiliary storage pool devices can only be referenced by name or special value, not by number. Only the system (1) and basic user auxiliary storage pools (2–32) can be referenced by number.
- All BRMS physical files in QUSRBRM are journaled to QUSRBRM/QJ1AJRN2 *JRN beginning with this release with the exception of the networked files which are journaled to QUSRBRM/QJ1ACM *JRN (see “A Step-by-Step Guide to Setting Up Your BRMS Network” on page 205 for the list of networked files). If you are journaling the non-networked files to your own journals for the purpose of mirroring these files to another system, you need to switch to the BRMS journals. You should never journal the networked files to your own journals when using the BRMS Network Feature.

Book Enhancements

The following changes have been incorporated into the BRMS book for V5R2:

- Updated Chapter 4, “Recovering Your Entire System” on page 21 to show the new and changed steps in the System Recovery Report (QP1ARCY).
- Updated Chapter 7, “Tailoring Your Backup” on page 83 to show the order backup items are processed within a backup control group.
- Updated Chapter 14, “Online Lotus Server Backups” on page 217 to describe how to set up and perform online incremental backup of Lotus servers using BRMS.
- Added Chapter 15, “Backup and Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices” on page 227 which discusses a strategy for backing up and recovering auxiliary storage pool devices.

Part 1. Getting Started with BRMS

Chapter 1. Introduction to Backup Recovery and Media Services for iSeries (BRMS)

The Backup Recovery and Media Services (BRMS) product provides separately priced, separately installed components. These components consist of a standard product and two additional features. You can find the latest information about BRMS on the Internet at this location:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/service/brms/brms.htm>.

Note: If you have not purchased the BRMS product, you can install and use the standard product and the additional features without a license for a 70-day trial period. Contact your IBM® representative if you want to purchase a license for BRMS.

The following is a summary description of the base product and the additional features.

BRMS Standard

The standard product provides you with the capability to implement a fully automated backup, recovery, and media management strategy for your iSeries system. Use BRMS with shared or stand-alone tape devices, automated tape libraries, Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) servers (formerly known as ADSTAR Distributed Storage Manager (ADSM) servers), and an unlimited number of volumes. The standard BRMS product does not provide archive, dynamic retrieval, automated migration operations, or shared media support.

Many of the features in the BRMS standard product are available as part of a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

BRMS Network Feature

The BRMS Network feature enables a BRMS system to interconnect via a network to other BRMS networked systems. A networked BRMS system can share the inventory and policies that are associated with media that is managed by a central BRMS system.

BRMS Advanced Functions Feature

The BRMS Advanced Functions feature provides hierarchical storage management (HSM) capability which includes archive, dynamic retrieval, and automatic auxiliary storage pool (ASP) migration. This book provides information on how to use the three primary functions (backup, recovery, and media management) of the standard BRMS product. It also includes information on how to use the Network feature. You can find information on the Advanced Functions components, such as archive, retrieve, and migration, in *Hierarchical Storage Management*, SC41-5351-01. You can order a copy of *Hierarchical Storage Management*, SC41-5351-01, when you purchase the Advanced Functions feature.

Overview of Standard BRMS Product Functionality



Figure 1. The Standard BRMS Functions

The standard BRMS product assists you in defining and processing your backup, recovery, and media management operations. Through user-defined controls, BRMS works in conjunction with your iSeries system to manage your most critical and complex backups while simplifying day-to-day operational tasks. The standard BRMS product provides three basic functions.

- **Backup:** BRMS backup assists you in establishing a disciplined approach to designing and managing your backup operations. It helps you to define, process, monitor and report your backup activities. Use BRMS to back up all of the data on your iSeries system including objects in libraries, folders, directories, spooled files, security information, system configurations, and the operating system itself. To do this, you can use the default backup control groups, already set up in BRMS, or you can design your own backup operation to suit more specific needs.
- **Recovery:** BRMS recovery provides for the orderly retrieval of lost or damaged data. Its most important feature is a series of recovery reports that take you, step-by-step, through the recovery of your system. These reports not only contain restore instructions, but also indicate which tapes the system requires for the recovery. With BRMS, you can restore your entire system, or selected items such as control groups, libraries, objects, folders, auxiliary storage pools (ASPs), spooled files, or Integrated File System links.
- **Media Management:** BRMS media management tracks all of your tapes and save files. Media is tracked through all cycles from tape creation to expiration. The tracking process includes active use, storage location, and return to scratch pool availability. BRMS tracks your media until you remove it from the media inventory or until it is otherwise disabled due to usage threshold or poor quality rating. BRMS also records and updates changes to the media inventory.

Figure 2 on page 5 illustrates how BRMS processes backups and recoveries through the media management system. Policies, control groups, and devices link the backup and recovery processes.

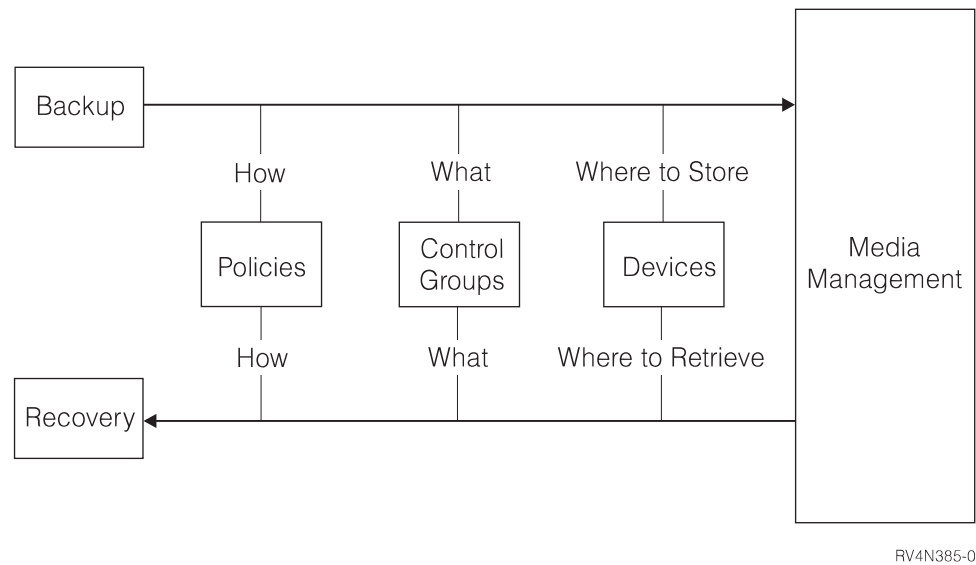


Figure 2. How the standard functions work together

Policies and control groups tell BRMS how and what to back up or recover. The media management system tells BRMS where to store the data and where to retrieve it.

How BRMS Policies Work

Policies define how BRMS operations are generally to be done, similar to the ways in which system values control how your iSeries operates. They establish actions and assumptions that are used during processing. They also provide a single point of control for administering broad changes in operating principles. Each policy provides a template for managing backup and media management strategies at high levels.

Types of Policies

The standard BRMS package provides the following policies:

- The **System Policy** is very similar to a set of system values. Unless other policies or controls are in place, system policy parameters determine the policy defaults for many of your BRMS operations.
- The **Backup Policy** specifies how to perform backups. You can define weekly backup activities, types of incremental backup, and the level at which you want to save media information. One backup policy governs all backup operations. You can define or change these operations at the control group level.
- The **Recovery Policy** defines how recovery operations are generally to be performed. One recovery policy governs all recovery operations. You can redefine or change recovery command values to allow for single or phased recoveries.
- The **Media Policies** govern the handling of media by media type. Media policies determine retention periods and instruct BRMS where to find the appropriate tapes to perform your backup. They also determine if backup operations will create and use save files. Unlike system, backup, and recovery policies, multiple media policies can exist.
- The **Move Policy** determines the movement of media from creation through expiration, and through various on and offsite storage locations. Multiple move policies can also exist.

How BRMS Control Groups Work

Control groups consist of groups of libraries, objects, folders, spooled files, and other types of data that share common characteristics or that you want grouped together for backup purposes. Whereas policies determine *how* data is processed, control groups determine, by their content, *which* data to process. They also specify what kind of backup you want BRMS to perform, such as full, incremental, or cumulative-incremental. In addition, control groups specify which days the data will be processed, and the order in which the processing occurs. Control groups usually refer to, and work with, related policies. You can set control group attributes to override policy decisions.

Though you cannot create control groups specifically for a recovery job, BRMS does efficiently recover data by control groups.

How Policies and Control Groups Work Together

The media, move, backup, and recovery policies are sometimes called function policies because they pertain to specific, core BRMS functional activities. The system policy is called a global policy because BRMS applies many of its values to the core functional activities.

3 illustrates the hierarchical relationship between policies and control groups.

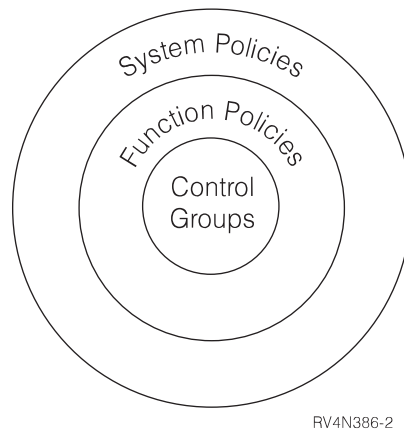


Figure 3. The policy and control group hierarchy

As you can see, the system policy is global and encompasses the function policies and the control groups. Unless otherwise altered, the information contained in system policy parameters overrides information that is contained in function policy parameters. By the same token, function policy information, unless otherwise altered, overrides control group information.

However, because save and restore needs vary depending on customer needs, policies and control groups that share the same parameters and values can override one another. In this way, a function policy value can override a shared system policy value, and a control group value can override a shared function or system policy value. The following examples illustrate override capability:

- The system policy uses a default media policy that is called FULL, which indicates that, among other things, media must be kept for 35 days. Suppose, however, that you want to retain media for a longer period. In this case, you

could specify the name of a different media policy in the backup policy at the *Media policies for full backups* field. In this way, a function policy can override a system policy value.

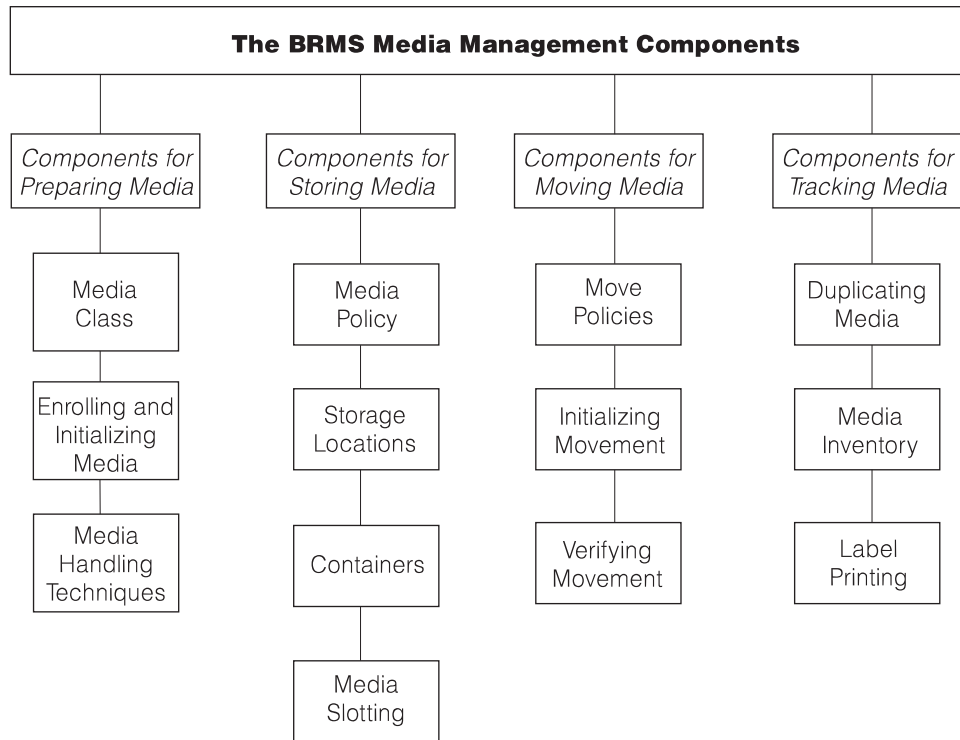
- A system policy default value instructs BRMS **not** to send a message to sign off interactive users before a save operation begins. There may, however, be occasions when the contents of a particular control group require that users be off the system during save processing. In that case, you would change the value in the *Sign off interactive users* field on the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display from *NO to *YES. *YES, in this instance, means that users cannot access that control group during save processing. In this way, a control group value can override a policy value.

BRMS comes with several pre-defined values (called defaults) so that you can immediately begin carrying out your backup, recovery, and media management operations. You can change all or any of the default values at any time to better reflect the needs of your company. If you have modified the default values, you can reset these back to the default values by running the INZBRM OPTION(*DATA) command.

BRMS also comes with pre-defined backup control groups that allow you to perform an immediate and comprehensive backup of your entire system. You can find more information on the default backup control groups in Chapter 3, “Backing Up Your Entire System” on page 15. You can find additional information on BRMS policies in Part 2, “Tailoring Your BRMS Operations” on page 43.

The BRMS Media Management Components

Use the BRMS Media Management to create an automated tracking system for all of your media activities. BRMS provides a variety of components with which you can track, protect, and store your media. Because BRMS Media Management is large and diverse, we have arranged its components into groups. Placing the media management components into groups gives you an easy understanding of the components available and the ways in which you can use them.



RV4N387-2

Figure 4. The BRMS Media Management Components

Components for Preparing Media

Use these components to prepare your media for backup or recovery processing. These components include media classes, and techniques for enrolling, initializing, and handling media.

Components for Storing Media

Use these components to define and track storage location and media retention information.

Components for Moving Media

Use these components to coordinate and track media movement from one storage location to another and to verify scheduled movement. These components include move policies, move commands, and move monitoring techniques.

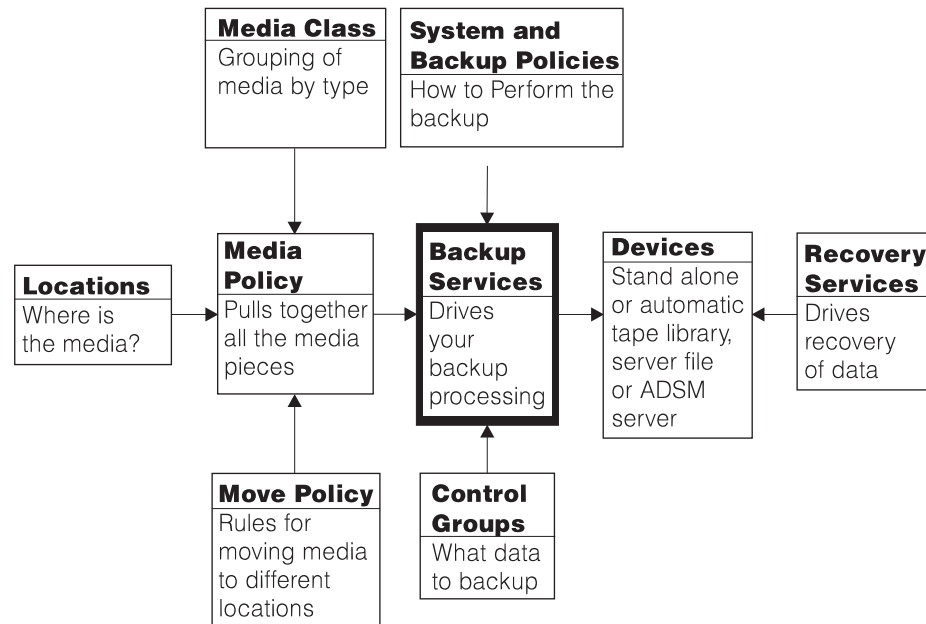
Components for Tracking Media

Use these components to assist you in tracking media through various stages of your backup, recovery, and media management operations. These components include the BRMS media inventory database, and techniques for duplicating media and printing media labels.

You can design your media management operation to use all of these components, or to use only those desired for specific purposes. You may use some of these components frequently and some not at all. See Chapter 6, “Setting Up Your Media Management Operation” on page 53 for information and instruction on how to use the media management components.

How the BRMS Functional Components Work Together

Figure 5 illustrates the ways in which the backup and recovery policies and control groups work with the various media management components to provide comprehensive backup, recovery, and media management support.



RV4N392-4

Figure 5. How the BRMS functional components come together

Chapter 2. Installing and Initializing BRMS

This chapter provides information on how to install BRMS on your iSeries server. It also discusses the types of hardware that are compatible with BRMS, and the kind of software that you need to install prior to installing BRMS. In addition, this chapter provides a list of things for you to consider before and after installation to help ensure your effective use of BRMS.

This chapter does not describe how to install the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For that information, see the iSeries Information Center.

Before installing BRMS, carefully review the next section to ensure that you can meet BRMS hardware and software requirements.

Hardware Considerations

BRMS is compatible with all iSeries RISC system models. The following types of media and tape library devices are compatible with BRMS:

- All types of iSeries tape media.
- All iSeries stand-alone tape devices.
- All iSeries media libraries (MLBs).
- Use of save files.
- Use of TSM servers.

BRMS **does not** support diskette, optical, unlabeled or non-standard label tape.

During installation, BRMS automatically registers and initializes the devices attached to your iSeries and creates corresponding device information entries. **It is very important that you attach the devices that you plan to use *before* installing BRMS.** If you add devices after the installation, you must run the initializing process again to register the new devices with BRMS. Use the Initialize BRMS (INZBRM) command with the parameter OPTION(*DATA).

Note: See Chapter 5, “Working with Devices in BRMS” on page 45 for more information on how to use BRMS to add or change devices and device information.

Software Considerations

You must install the Media and Storage Extensions (MSE) feature on your iSeries *before* you install BRMS. If MSE is not installed, BRMS cannot register the exit points and your saves will not complete.

Installing Media and Storage Extensions (MSE)

Take the following steps to install MSE on your machine:

1. Enter GO LICPGM from a command line.
2. At the Work with Licensed Programs display, select option 11 (Install Licensed Programs).

3. Select licensed program 5722SS1, option 18, Media and Storage Extensions (MSE), and press Enter.
4. Press Enter at the next display to confirm your selection.
5. At the Install Options display, type in the name of your installation device as requested. Press Enter to start the installation.
6. Review the job log to ensure that the installation completed successfully. Use the Display Job Log (DSPJOBLOG) command to review the job log.

You also need to ensure that the QSYS2 library is in your system library list. Use the Display System Values command (DSPSYSVAL QSYSLIBL) to check. If required, be sure to add the library to your system library list. You can use the Change System Library List (CHGSYSLIBL) command to do so.

Installing BRMS

To install BRMS on your iSeries, perform the following steps:

1. Enter GO LICPGM from a command line.
2. At the Work with Licensed Programs display, select option 11 (Install Licensed Programs).
3. Select Product 5722BR1, option *BASE, to install the standard Backup, Recovery, and Media Services for the iSeries product. Then press Enter.
4. Press Enter at the next display to confirm your selection.
5. At the Install Options display, type in the name of your installation device as requested. Then press Enter to start the installation.
6. Review the job log to ensure that the installation completed successfully. Use the Display Job Log (DSPJOBLOG) command to review the job log.
7. After you have successfully installed the *BASE BRMS product, you can install the additional features. To do so, repeat steps 1-6 for each feature. At step 3, take option 1 for the Network feature or option 2 for the Advanced Functions (HSM) feature.

During installation, BRMS performs the following tasks:

- Creates tape drive and media class entries that are based on the installed tape devices.
- Creates default BRMS objects.
- Creates the QBRM and QUSRBRM libraries, which contain all BRMS-related objects and information.
- Registers BRMS with the MSE feature of OS/400.

After the Installation

Do or consider the following after the successful installation of BRMS:

- Reload the latest cumulative program temporary fix (PTF) compact disk to ensure that all of the BRMS-related fixes are in place. If you recently ran the latest cumulative (CUM) PTF prior to installing BRMS, the IBM Operating System/400® Version 4 (OS/400) only runs BRMS-related PTFs.
- You may also want to load the latest Save and Restore Group PTFs. You can access the latest PTFs through the iSeries Internet home page at <http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/service/brms/group.htm>.
- Verify that the *Allow user domain objects in user libraries* (QALWUSRDMN) system value is set to *ALL, which is the default shipped value. This value allows user

domain objects in libraries. It also determines which libraries on the system may contain the user domain objects *USRSPC (user space), *USRIDX (user index), and *USRQ (user queue). If you do not set the system value to *ALL, you must add the QBRM and QUSRB RM libraries to the list of libraries that are shown on the QALWUSRDMN display. You can use the Work with System Values (WRKSYSVAL) command to verify the QALWUSRDMN system value.

Updating License Information

If you purchased BRMS, you need to update the BRMS license information to disable the automatic product locking function. If you do not, you cannot use most of the BRMS functions and functional components beyond the 70-day trial period. If you have the license keys, we recommend that you update the BRMS license information now. To do so, take the following steps:

1. Type the Work with Licensed Information (WRKLCINF) command at a command line and press Enter.
2. At the Work with License Information display, locate product 5722BR1, feature 5050.
3. Type a 1 in the *Opt* field next to 5722BR1 feature 5050, and press Enter. You see the prompt display for the Add License Key Information (ADDLICENSE) command.
4. Use the default value of *ANY in the *Processor group* field.
5. In the *License key* field, type in the 18-character license key that is provided with your BRMS license agreement.
6. In the *Usage limit* field, specify a value of *NOMAX.
7. Use the default value of *NO in both the *Expiration date* and *Vendor data* fields.
8. Press Enter. You see message CPC9E66 (1 license key information records added to the repository).
9. Repeat steps 2 through 8 for BRMS features 5101 and 5102 if your license agreement includes these features.

You should store the license key in a secure place in case you have to do an unexpected (and unlikely) scratch install of OS/400.

Removing BRMS From Your System

To remove BRMS from your system, take the following steps:

1. Enter GO LICPGM from a command line.
2. At the Work with Licensed Programs display, select option 12 (Delete licensed programs).
3. Type option 4 (Delete) next to the BRMS (5722BR1) products you want to remove and press Enter.
4. Press Enter again at the next display to confirm the products you want to remove, and to proceed with the licensed program removal.

You can remove the Advanced Function and Network features independently of the standard product if required. However, before you can remove the Network feature, you must first remove the system from the network. You can find instruction on how to remove systems from a network and how to remove the Network feature itself in Chapter 13, “Networking with BRMS” on page 199.

Deleting the BRMS product from your system will remove the QBRM and QUSRB RM libraries from your system. If you used BRMS to save objects to save

files, BRMS would have also created one or more libraries named Q1ABRMSnn, where nn is the number of the auxiliary storage pool containing the library. Deleting the BRMS product does not remove these save file libraries. If you intend to remove BRMS permanently from your system, you can also remove these libraries. You can delete these library by using the following command:

```
WRKOBJ OBJ(*ALL/Q1ABRM*) OBJTYPE(*LIB)
```

then use option 4=Delete to remove the libraries.

Chapter 3. Backing Up Your Entire System

You can use BRMS to perform a variety of backups. You can, for example, use BRMS-configured defaults to perform a straight-forward backup of your entire system. Or you can use a variety of other BRMS tools and techniques to tailor a backup and recovery operation that suits the specific needs of your company. This chapter provides instruction on how to use BRMS-configured defaults to back up all of your system and BRMS data.

Many of the functions described in this chapter are available as part of a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

BRMS generally processes backups by using control groups. You can also use commands to process backups. In this chapter, however, the focus is on performing backups with control groups. **Control groups** consist of groups of libraries, objects, folders, spooled files, and other types of data that share similar characteristics or that you want grouped together for a particular purpose. BRMS comes with three default backup control groups, ***SYSGRP**, ***BKUGRP** and ***SYSTEM**.

The ***SYSGRP** control group contains special values called ***SAVSYS** and ***IBM**, which save OS/400 and IBM licensed programs (primarily the Q-libraries). The ***SAVSYS** value saves the system security and configuration data. The ***BKUGRP** control group saves the system security and configuration data, and all user data including user libraries, folders, DLOs, and Integrated File System data. The ***SYSTEM** control group combines the entries of the ***SYSGRP** and ***BKUGRP** control groups to allow you to backup the entire system using a single control group. This chapter shows you how to use the ***SYSGRP**, ***BKUGRP** and ***SYSTEM** control groups to perform backups of your entire system.

It is intended that you perform these backups after installing BRMS. After these initial backups, you should backup your user and system data at the frequency that best meets your business requirements. Thus, you might schedule daily, weekly, and monthly backups. The information contained in this book can assist you in developing and implementing the backup and recovery strategy that best suits your business needs. Chapter 7, "Tailoring Your Backup" on page 83 and Chapter 8, "Performing Selected Recoveries" on page 133, which provide information on backup and recovery planning, and which also provide instruction on how to tailor your backup and recovery operations, are likely to be particularly helpful when designing your backup and recovery strategy.

Before you can perform any backups, however, you need to enroll the media for BRMS to use. To do that, read the instructions below and enroll your media as applicable.

Enrolling Media

The process of enrolling media has two steps, each of which is discussed in this section:

1. Determining the media class by which BRMS identifies and tracks your media.
2. Enrolling the media volumes into BRMS.

Determining Media Classes

It is important to have sufficient volumes enrolled in the BRMS scratch pool before performing a save operation. A media scratch pool is a group of available (expired and unused) media that share the same media class. BRMS draws the media it uses for backup and recovery operations from this pool. You are likely to need at least four volumes to perform the backups that are discussed in this chapter. Use two to back up your system data with the *SYSGRP control group, and two to back up your non-system data with the *BKUGRP control group, or use all four to backup your entire system using the *SYSTEM control group. You may need more or fewer tapes depending on the capacity of your media and the size of your system.

BRMS groups each tape into a media class, which allows BRMS to track and protect the active data on your media by type. A **media class** refers to the grouping of media by similar characteristics, for example, tape density and tape capacity.

During installation, BRMS creates default device information based on the type of device attached to your system at that time. If more than one tape device is attached, BRMS takes as its default device the fastest and most automated device that is attached. BRMS bases the default media class on the default device type. For example, if you have a 6380 tape device attached to your system, the media class might be QICxxx. In this case, the class prefix (QIC) signifies a 1/4" tape and the x's indicate different densities.

To perform the backups that are discussed in this chapter, you must use two different media classes:

- To perform the *SYSTEM backup of the entire system or the *SYSGRP backup of the system data, specify SAVSYS (Save System) as the media class when enrolling the volumes that are used for this backup.
- To perform the *BKUGRP backup of non-system data, specify the default media class name that is assigned by BRMS during installation.

You can find the default media class name assigned by BRMS in the system policy. To get there, perform the following steps:

1. Type GO BRMSYSPCY at a command line.
2. At the System Policy menu, select option 1 (Display or Change system policy).
3. At the Change System Policy display, note the media class name that is specified in the *Media class* field.
4. Use this media class name when you enroll the media for the *BKUGRP backup.

Change System Policy		RCHAS400
Type choices, press Enter.		
Media policy	FULL	Name, F4 for list
Devices.	TAP01	Name, F4 for list
Home location for media	*HOME	Name, F4 for list
Media class	QIC2GB	Name, F4 for list
Sign off interactive users	*NO	*YES, *NO
Sign off limit	30	0-999 minutes
Output queue	*PRTF	Name, *PRTF
Library		Name, *LIBL
Day start time	0:00:00	Time
Media monitor	*YES	*YES, *NO
Shared inventory delay	60	30-9999 seconds
Auto enroll media	*NO	*NO, *YES
Trace	*NO	*NO, *YES
Default usage.	*YES	*NO, *YES
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel		

Enrolling Media into BRMS for use by a Stand-Alone Tape Device

Use the following procedure to enroll media for use by the stand-alone tape device that is attached to your system:

1. Insert the pre-initialized volume into your tape device. If your volumes are not initialized, see Chapter 6, “Setting Up Your Media Management Operation” on page 53 for instruction on how to do so before enrolling the volumes into BRMS.
2. Type WRKMEDBRM at a command line to get to the Work with Media display.
3. At the Work with Media display, type a 1 in the *Option* column and then type the name of your volume in the *Volume Serial* column. Press Enter. This takes you to the Add Media to BRM (ADDMEDBRM) display.

Note: If you encounter a message saying *Cannot allocate device TAPxx*, then you need to vary on the device. You can do that by taking option 8 (Work with status) from the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) display.

4. Type the name of the appropriate media class in the *Media Class* field and press Enter. Be sure to enroll four volumes in the SAVSYS media class for the *SYSTEM backup, or two volumes into the SAVSYS media class for the *SYSGRP backup, and two into the media class assigned by your system policy for the *BKUGRP backup.
5. You have now returned to the Add Media to BRM display. Press F9 to prompt the additional parameters. Then press Enter again to enroll the media.
6. Repeat steps 4 through 6 for each volume.

Enrolling Media into BRMS for use by a Media Library

Use the following procedure to enroll media for use by the media library that is attached to your system:

1. Ensure that four pre-initialized volumes are available in your tape library. If your volumes are not initialized, see Chapter 6, “Setting Up Your Media Management Operation” on page 53 for instruction on how to do so before enrolling the volumes into BRMS.

2. Type WRKMLBBRM at a command line to get to the Work with Media Libraries display.
3. Type an 8 (Work with MLB media) next to the name of the media library device you want to work with and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Media Library Media display.
4. At this display, press Enter three times to work with current inventory of the media library. Place a 1 (Add MLB media) next to the volume you want to enroll and press Enter. This takes you to the Add MLB media to BRM display.

Note: If you encounter a message saying *Cannot allocate device TAPMLBxx*, then you need to vary on the device. You can do that by using the Work with Media Library Status (WRKMLBSTS) command.

5. At the Add MLB media to BRM display, type in the name of the appropriate media class. Be sure to enroll two volumes into the SAVSYS media class for the *SYSGRP backup, and two into the media class assigned by your system policy for the *BKUGRP backup. Then press Enter. This returns you to the Add Media Library Media to BRM display.
6. At the Add Media Library Media to BRM display, press Enter twice.
7. Repeat steps 5 through 7 for each volume.

Note: When volumes are physically inserted into the tape library, they must already have a volume identifier assigned to the volume. This is a requirement of the media library, not BRMS.

Performing the Backups

Use the following procedures to perform a full save of your entire system.

Notes:

1. Processing time for each backup depends on the size of your system processor, device capability, and the amount of data that you want to save.
2. You cannot perform other activities during these backups because your system will be in a restricted state.

Backing Up System with *SYSTEM

1. Sign on to your system console workstation.
2. Make sure that the device you want to use to perform the backup is varied on. Take option 8 (Work with status) from the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) command to check the status of your device.
3. Be sure that the media you use for this backup is enrolled in the SAVSYS media class.
4. To begin the backup, type STRBKUBRM CTLGRP(*SYSTEM) SBMJOB(*NO) at any command line and press Enter.
5. Once the *SYSTEM backup completes, review the job log to ensure that the save completed successfully. To display the job log, enter DSPJOBLOG at a command line, and then press F10 to see the details.

Backing Up System Data with *SYSGRP

1. Sign on to your system console workstation.
2. Make sure that the device you want to use to perform the backup is varied on. Take option 8 (Work with status) from the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) command to check the status of your device.

3. Be sure that the media you use for this backup is in the appropriate media class. Use the class name that is identified in the *Media class* field in the system policy.
4. To begin the backup, type STRBKUBRM CTLGRP(*SYSGRP) SBMJOB(*NO) at any command line and press Enter.
5. Once the *SYSGRP backup completes, review the job log to ensure that the save completed successfully. To display the job log, enter DSPJOBLOG at a command line, and then press F10 to see the details.

Backing Up User Data with *BKUGRP

1. Make sure that the device you want to use to perform the backup is varied on. Take option 8 (Work with configuration status) from the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) command to check the status of your device.
2. Be sure that the media you use for this backup is in the appropriate media class. Use the class name that is identified in the *Media class* field in the system policy.
3. End all subsystems to enable the *BKUGRP control group to save. You did not need to do this before the *SYSTEM or *SYSGRP save because BRMS performed this function for you. Before you end the subsystems, go to the Work with Subsystems display and write down the subsystem names that are listed there. After the *BKUGRP save, you will need to restart each subsystem by name. To get to the Work with Subsystems (WRKSBS) display, type WRKSBS from any command line.
4. To end all subsystems, type ENDSBS SBS(*ALL) OPTION(*IMMED) at a command line and press Enter. All subsystems end (except the subsystem that operates the system console workstation, usually called QCTL) when the *System ended to restricted state* message appears. You may need to refresh the display. To view the message, enter DSPMSG QSYSOPR at a command line.

Note: A message from QSYSOPR that asserts *System ending abnormally* will not affect your backup, though you may want to investigate the problem for other reasons.

5. Once all of the subsystems have ended, you can perform the *BKUGRP backup. At any command line, type STRBKUBRM CTLGRP(*BKUGRP) SBMJOB(*NO) and press Enter.
6. Once the *BKUGRP backup completes, review the job log to ensure that the save completed successfully. To display the job log, enter DSPJOBLOG at a command line, then press F10 to see the details.
7. To restart your subsystems, type STRSBS (Start Subsystem) on a command line and press F4 to prompt the Start Subsystems display. Type the name of a subsystem in the *Subsystem description* field and press Enter. Do this for each of the subsystems.

Printing Your Recovery Reports

After completing your backups, BRMS can generate a series of comprehensive recovery reports for use in recovering your entire system. If BRMS is offline due to system failure or other disaster, the recovery reports provide instruction on how to perform the first few steps manually. For example, the recovery reports tell you where to locate the volumes necessary to restore your system. In addition, they identify the manual steps you must take to install the Licensed Internal Code and

perform a restore of the operating system and the BRMS product. After completing the manual steps, you can use BRMS to assist you in recovering the remainder of your system.

Perform™ the following steps to print the recovery reports you will need to recover your system:

1. Type STRRCYBRM at any command line and press F4 to prompt the Start Recovery using BRM display.
2. Press Enter to get a complete list of fields.
3. Set the value in the *Option* field to *SYSTEM and the value in the *Action* field to *REPORT.
4. Press Enter to generate the spooled files from which to print the following reports:
 - QP1ARCY: Recovering Your Entire System (features the actual recovery steps)
 - QP1A2RCY: Recovery Volume Summary Report (tells you where to find the necessary volumes)
 - QP1AASP: Display ASP Information
5. Use the Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLF) command to print the reports.

To use BRMS to perform a recovery, you must have a copy of these reports available. Each time you complete a backup, print a new series of recovery reports. Be sure to keep a copy of these reports with each set of tapes at all locations where media is stored.

Chapter 4. Recovering Your Entire System

After the completion of each save, BRMS can generate a series of up-to-date reports that guide you, in a step-by-step manner, through the process of recovering your entire system. You can also use these reports to guide you through the recovery of selected aspects of your system. In the case of total system failure, the reports guide you through the first manual steps of the recovery process. These initial, manual steps include recovery of the Licensed Internal Code and the operating system. After completing the manual steps, you can use BRMS and these reports to help you restore the rest of your system.

While this chapter provides information on how to recover your *entire* system, there are a variety of other ways by which to recover data. For example, you can restore information by control group, object, library, and document library objects (DLOs). You can find information on how to perform selected recoveries in Chapter 8, “Performing Selected Recoveries” on page 133.

Because the success of your recovery depends in large part on the kind and quality of your backup operation, you should design your backup plan carefully. Chapter 7, “Tailoring Your Backup” on page 83 and Chapter 15, “Backup and Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices” on page 227, provide more information on how to plan and implement an effective, viable backup strategy for your system.

Key to good system recovery is running BRMS maintenance regularly. You should run maintenance after each backup to assure BRMS detects and records new and deleted libraries. By default, deleted libraries are not included in the *Recovering Your Entire System Report*. This is important if you are saving libraries on auxiliary storage pool devices. The auxiliary storage pool devices must be available when you run maintenance; otherwise, BRMS will not be able to locate the libraries and will consider the libraries on unavailable auxiliary storage pool devices as having been deleted from the system. You can specify OMITLIB(*NONE) on the STRRCYBRM command to include deleted libraries in the report, but this will also include libraries that were saved and then subsequently deleted which may not be your intention.

Many of the functions described in this chapter are available as part of a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

An Overview of the Recovery Reports

Following are brief summaries of the main reports BRMS can generate after the completion of your saves:

Recovering Your Entire System Report (also called the Recovery Analysis Report)

The *Recovering Your Entire System Report* is the primary recovery report generated by BRMS and is also referred to as the *Recovery Analysis Report*. Use this report to guide you in a step-by-step manner through the restoration of your entire system. This report includes instruction on how to recover your Licensed Internal Code,

your operating system, user libraries, spooled files, and other parts of your system. This report also identifies media volumes (by volume ID) you need for recovery.

Note: The name of this report becomes Recovery Analysis when you use it to guide you through selected recoveries rather than complete recoveries.

In addition to the following three required reports, there are other reports which assist or pertain to various aspects of the data recovery process. For more information on the additional reports, see Appendix A, “A Summary of BRMS Reports” on page 257.

Recovery Volume Summary Report

The *Recovery Volume Summary Report* is used in conjunction with the *Recovering Your Entire System Report* to identify the volumes necessary to perform your recovery. This report also identifies the locations where you can find the necessary media.

Display ASP Information Report

The *Display ASP Information Report* provide information which assists you in reconfiguring or verifying your ASP configuration.

Printing the Recovery Reports

To print the reports, perform the following steps:

1. Type STRRCYBRM at any command line and press F4 to prompt the Start Recovery using BRM display.

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Option	*SYSTEM	*SYSTEM, *SYSBAS, *SAVSYS...
Action	*REPORT	*REPORT, *RESTORE
Time period for recovery:		
Start time and date:		
Beginning time	*AVAIL	Time, *AVAIL
Beginning date	*BEGIN	Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN
End time and date:		
Ending time	*AVAIL	Time, *AVAIL
Ending date	*END	Date, *CURRENT, *END
Use save files	*NO	*NO, *YES
Auxiliary storage pool	*SYSTEM	Name, 1-32, *SYSTEM
Library		Name, generic*
List	*ALL	Name, *ALL

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

2. Press F9 to get a complete list of fields. Make sure that the value *Option* field is *SYSTEM, and that the value in the *Action* field is *REPORT.
3. Press Enter to generate the reports.
4. Print the reports from the output queue. If desired, you can use the Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLF) command to view the reports prior to printing them. The reports generate three corresponding spooled files, from which you can print the reports:
 - QP1ARCY: Recovering Your Entire System

- QP1A2RCY: Recovery Volume Summary Report
- QP1AASP: Display ASP Information

These reports are very important to a successful recovery. To ensure that the tapes and reports you need are available at **all times, it is critical that you perform the following steps:**

- Print an updated series of reports after the completion of each save (or at least once per day).
- You should make duplicate copies of each backup volume and attach copies of the latest reports to them.
- Distribute copies of the tapes and reports to each iSeries location that participates in the saves.
- You should always store at least one copy of the tapes and reports at an offsite location.

Note: Though this chapter only mentions the Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM) command in terms of its report capability, this command performs several other important recovery functions. You can find more information about this command in Chapter 8, “Performing Selected Recoveries” on page 133.

Using the Recovering Your Entire System Report

The successful completion of nearly every step in the Recovering Your Entire System Report relies on information in the *Backup and Recovery* book. After you obtain a copy of the *Backup and Recovery* book, you can review and test the steps that are outlined in this section.

Attention: If you are recovering a system that included data saved from independent disk pools, then refer to BRMS Information APAR II12662 for additional guidance on how to configure and vary on the disk pools. The independent disk pools must be varied on to successfully recover the data saved from these storage pools.

This chapter shows you how to use the steps in the Recovering Your Entire System Report to recover your entire system in the event of a total system failure. *You should not base an actual recovery on the steps that are outlined in this chapter. For assistance during an actual recovery, you must use the recovery reports that are generated by your own system.* Those reports contain recovery information particular to your own system. BRMS uses a pre-configured template as the basis for its recovery procedures, but also notes any steps that are uniquely yours. Such steps can include restoring from save files or from TSM servers.

It is very important that the QUSRBRM and QUSRSYS libraries be saved on a regular basis.

- The QUSRBRM library contains control group information, location information, media information and other customized information.
- The QUSRSYS library contains important information about your media volumes if you are using a media library device.
- The QUSRBRM and QUSRSYS libraries need to be recovered from the most current saved level for your BRMS recovery to be successful.

If you are using a 3494 tape library that is attached to a local area network (LAN), you must vary on the LAN line description. Use the WRKCFGSTS *LIN command

to vary on the LAN line description. If you attach your 3494 through an RS232 connection, you do not need to vary on the RS232 line description.

The Recovering Your Entire System Report presents the steps in the order required for recovery. To perform a system recovery, you begin with the first step at the top of the system recovery report and follow the flow down through the report to the last step at the bottom of the report.

The information in the sections that follow show accurate reflections of the instructions that appear for each step in the actual report. As you read through the recovery steps, be sure to read the information inside the step as well the text that may precede or follow it.

The following are a few general things to keep in mind as you review the steps:

- Use the *Start time* and *Stop time* fields to record the time it takes to test or perform the recovery step.
- The *Saved item* column indicates the name of the items you need to restore to perform the recovery step.
- The *Control group* column identifies the name of the control group that contains the saved item (if you saved the item in a control group).
- The *Volume identifier* column lists the name of the volume that contains the latest backup of the saved item that you need to recover. (The Volume Summary Report provides the name of the location where you can find the volume).
- The information in the remaining columns pertain to the backup of the saved item.

Step: Recover Licensed Internal Code

Before you can recover the operating system and user data, you must first recover the Licensed Internal Code. The Licensed Internal Code is the layer of iSeries architecture just above the hardware. To recover the Licensed Internal Code, follow the "Recovering the Licensed Internal Code" steps in the *Backup and Recovery* book.

If you are using a media library device, you will need to set the device to either standalone, automatic or manual mode in order to load the *SAVSYS saved item. See the device documentation on how to properly change the mode for your media library device.

```

*****
STEP: Recover Licensed Internal Code

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

Use the media shown below and the procedure for "Recovering the
Licensed Internal Code" in the "Backup and Recovery" book.

_ Use "Option 2" if you are recovering to a different system or if
you are recovering to a system with user ASP(s) or if you are
recovering to the same system with a different release.

_ Use "Option 3" if you are recovering to the same release and same
system or you are recovering a logical partition to another logical
partition.

--- Attention -----
If you are using a media library device, you will need to use either
standalone, automatic or manual mode, or use the device move media
function to load the media volume containing the *SAVSYS saved item.
Refer to the device documentation if you are not familiar with these
device modes or functions.
-----

Saved      ----- ASP ----- Save   Save   Sequence  Control  Volume
Item       Type  Name      Number  Date    Time   Objects  Omit    Number   Group   Identifier
-----
_ *SAVSYS   *FULL *SYSBAS   00001  7/25/02  8:03:03    0         1 *SYSGRP  VOL003
*****

```

STEP: Recover Operating System

Next you must recover the operating system. As a part of this step, you will need to change some system values to optimize the recovery. Use the WRKSYSVAL command to display and record the current settings, and to change these to the recommended setting. If you are recovering from distribution media, record the current settings using the printed system information.

```

*****
STEP: Recover operating system

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

Use the media shown below and the procedure for "Restoring the Operating
System using the Complete Restore Method", as detailed in the "Backup
and Recovery" book.

After sign on, display and change the following system values before
continuing with the recovery.

To do so, run the following command:

WRKSYSVAL

___ Use option 5=Display to show the current system value setting.
___ Record the current setting for use after recovery is complete.
___ Use option 2=Change to change the system value to the new setting.

-----
System value   Current setting   New setting
-----
QALWBJRST     _____      *ALL
QFRCCVNRST     _____      0
QIPLTYPE       _____      2
QJOBMSGQFL     _____      *PRTWRAP
QJOBMSGQMX     _____      30 (minimum, 64 recommended)
QPFRADJ        _____      2
QVFYOBJRST     _____      1
-----

After changing the system values, sign off using the following command

SIGNOFF LOG(*LIST)

Using a newly created password, sign back on as QSECOFR for the new
system values to take effect.

Saved      ----- ASP ----- Save   Save   Sequence   Control   Volume
Item       Type  Name   Number Date   Time   Objects Omit   Number   Group    Identifier
-----
_*SAVSYS   *FULL *SYSBAS 00001 7/25/02 8:03:03 0       1 *SYSGRP  VOL003
*****

```

STEP: Setting up standalone or media library devices for recovery

To allow for automated recovery, you must now setup the devices to be used for the recovery. Your recovery action will be different depending on whether you are using a standalone device or a media library.

```

*****
STEP: Setting up standalone or media library devices for recovery

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

If you are using a media library device and automatic configuration was
enabled, you can now use the media library device to automate recovery.

--- Attention -----
To perform automated recovery using a media library device, you must
have performed the save with the media library device enabled for
library operations.
-----

--- Attention -----
If you are using a 3494 Media Library for recovery, you will need to
configure and set up the communications necessary to control the
cartridge loader.
-----

For recovery using the device as a media library (TAPMLBxx):

__ A. Unload the media volume containing the *SAVSYS saved item from
the device.

__ B. Load all the volumes needed for the recovery (including the
*SAVSYS volume) in the media library.

__ C. Set the media library device for library operations. Refer to
the device documentation if you are not familiar with enabling
the device for library operations.

__ D. Use the following command to verify that the status of the
media library device is VARIED ON.

      WRKMLBSTS

__ E. Use Option 4=Allocate resource to set the current allocation of
the media library resources to ALLOCATED.

For recovery using the device as a stand alone device (TAPxx):

__ A. Retrieve all volumes needed for recovery. If you are using an
automatic cartridge loader, insert the volumes in the loader in
the required sequence.

__ B. Enter the following command:

      WRKDEVD DEVD(*TAP)

__ C. Use Option 8=Work with status to verify that the status of the
device you are using is VARIED ON.
*****

```

STEP: Recover the BRMS product and associated libraries

To allow BRMS to aid you through the recovery process, you must now recover the BRMS product and associated libraries. The commands you use to recover these saved libraries will be different depending on whether the save type for the library was full (*FULL), incremental (*INCR), or cumulative (*CUMUL).

```

*****
STEP: Recover the BRMS product and associated libraries

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

The BRMS product and associated libraries must be recovered before
you can use the product to perform other recovery operations.

To prevent messages that are not related to the recovery from
interrupting the recovery process, run the following command:

CHGMSGQ MSGQ(QSYSOPR) DLVRY(*NOTIFY) SEV(99)

Use the following command to see which tape devices are configured:

WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*DEV) CFGD(*TAP)

Or use the following command to see which media library devices are
configured:

WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*DEV) CFGD(*TAPMLB)

Run the following command for each of the libraries listed below
specifying the saved-item, volume-identifier, and sequence-number
listed:

For type *FULL use the command:

RSTLIB SAVLIB(saved-item) DEV(device-name)
VOL(volume-identifier) SEQNBR(sequence-number)

For type *CUML or *INCR use the command:

RSTOBJ OBJ(*ALL) SAVLIB(saved-item) DEV(device-name)
VOL(volume-identifier) SEQNBR(sequence-number)

```

Saved Item	Type	----- ASP Name	----- Number	Save Date	Save Time	Objects	Omit	Sequence Number	Control Group	Volume Identifier
QUSRBRM	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	11:35:30	181		56	*BKUGRP	VOL002
QBRM	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:43:38	1,007		15	*SYSGRP	VOL003
QMSE	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:43:38	7		52	*SYSGRP	VOL003
Q1ABRMSF01	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:43:38	1		106	*SYSGRP	VOL003
Q1ABRMSF02	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00002	7/25/02	14:43:38	1		107	*SYSGRP	VOL003

```

*****

```

STEP: Recover BRMS Related Media Information

Now you need to recover the BRMS media information which contains updates to the BRMS database files that contain the latest media information about your last save. The media information in the QUSRBRM library assists BRMS in recovering the remainder of your data. When you perform this step, use the file sequence numbers to ensure that you restore the correct objects; there may be more than one QUSRBRM item on that tape. Using the sequence number also improves the performance of the restore.

```

*****
STEP: Recover BRMS related media information

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You must recover this information for the BRMS product to
accurately guide you through the remaining recovery steps.

Run the following command for each of the libraries listed below
specifying the saved-item, volume-identifier, and sequence-number
listed:

RSTOBJ OBJ(*ALL) SAVLIB(saved-item)
VOL(volume-identifier) SEQNBR(sequence-number)
DEV(device-name)

Saved      Type      Name      Number      Save      Save      Objects  Sequence  Control  Volume
Item       Type      Name      Number      Date      Time      Omit     Number    Group    Identifier
-----
QUSRBRM   *QBRM *SYSBAS   00001  7/25/02  15:58:26   11       108    *SYSGRP  VOL003
*****

```

STEP: Initialize BRMS functional authority information

BRMS uses functional authority to manage use of its functions and policies. These functions and policies need to be registered with the operating system and QSECOFR must be authorized to use all functions before recovery can continue. BRMS functional authorities will not be fully operational until after completion of STEP: Recover Authorization Information.

```

*****
STEP: Initialize BRMS functional authority information

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You must perform this step to initialize BRMS functional authorities.

Use the following command to register all BRMS functional authority
resources with the OS/400 functional authority manager.

INZBRM OPTION(*SETAUT)

Use the following command to assure the QSECOFR user profile has
authority to use the managed functional authority resources.

SETUSRBRM USER(QSECOFR) USAGE(*ADMIN)
*****

```

STEP: Update system name in BRMS media information

When you save objects on a system to media, BRMS assigns the system name to the saved objects and to the media. If you are recovering to a system or logical partition that has a system name different from the saved system name, you must change the "owning" system name in the BRMS database in order for you to view the saved history when using the STRRCYBRM command. If you use this command and see no items in the list, you probably need to change the name of the system in the media and history information to the current system name. You can view the current system name using the DSPNETA command.

```

*****
STEP: Update system name in BRMS media information

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You must update the system name in the saved BRMS media information
if you are recovering to a system or logical partition with a system
name that is different from the system name of the save.

To do so, run the following command:

      INZBRM OPTION(*CHGSYSNAM) PRVSYSNAM(previous-name) NEWSYSNAM(new-name)
*****

```

STEP: Initialize BRMS device and media library information

If you used values other than default values on the BRMS device and media library information displays, you should verify that your changes are still in effect. You can do this using the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) command. Some of the values revert to the defaults when you use the INZBRM OPTION(*DEVICE) command.

Note: In some full system recovery scenarios, the WRKMLBBRM command will not run successfully because of dependencies on files saved in library QUSRSYS. You should defer using the WRKMLBBRM command until STEP: Reset BRMS Device and Media Library Information.

```

*****
STEP: Initialize BRMS device and media library information

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You must initialize the BRMS device and media library information
Use the following command to clear and initialize the BRMS device
and media library information with the tape and media library devices
currently configured on the system:

      INZBRM OPTION(*DEVICE)

INZBRM OPTION(*DEVICE) resets some device information to the BRMS
supplied defaults. Review the BRMS device information using the
following command:

      WRKDEVBRM

Update the BRMS device information with any changes necessary to
continue with your recovery.
*****

```

STEP: Recover User Profiles

It is time to recover the user profiles. When you restore the user profiles, you restore all the attributes of the profile and the system builds a working table that holds the private authorities to objects. Later in the recovery process, you will restore the private authorities to the restored objects.

Before recovering the user profiles, review the implications of setting the *Allow object differences* parameter (ALWOBJDIF) to *ALL in the *Backup and Recovery* book. If there is no data on the system, you can use *ALL when performing a full system recovery. Specifying *ALL when recovering to a different system automatically links the restored information to the authorization lists associated with the object.

If you are restoring to the same system on which BRMS performed the backup, ensure the *system resource management* (SRM) parameter is set to *ALL. However, if you are restoring to a different system, you should set the parameter to *NONE.

If you are using a media library device in random mode to perform automated recovery, you may now select to recover all of your data. An easy way to do this is to use F16 to select all recovery items. After all items are restored, continue with STEP: Recover Spooled Files for all ASPs.

```
*****
STEP: Recover user profiles

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should restore a current version of your user profiles.

To do so, run the following command:

STRRCYBRM OPTION(*SYSTEM) ACTION(*RESTORE)

--- Attention -----
Press F9 (Recovery defaults) on the Select Recovery Items display.
Ensure the tape device name or media library device name that you are
using is correct.
-----

--- Attention -----
If recovering to a different system or recovering a logical partition
to another logical partition, you must specify the following:
  _ *ALL on the Allow object differences (ALWOBJDIF) parameter
  _ *ALL on the Data base member option (MBROPT) parameter
  _ *NONE on the System resource management (SRM) parameter
-----

Select the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery Items"
display using the specified volume(s).
```

Saved Item	Type	ASP Name	Number	Save Date	Save Time	Objects Omit	Sequence Number	Control Group	Volume Identifier
_*SAVSECDTA	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:39:44	102	1	*SYSGRP	VOL003

```
*****
```

STEP: Change QSECOFR user profile password

Having just restored saved user profiles, you may not know the current password for the QSECOFR user profile which you just recovered in the previous step. It is a good idea to change that password now in the event you need to IPL or signoff.

```
*****
STEP: Change QSECOFR user profile password

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

If you do not know the password for the restored QSECOFR user profile,
use the following command to change the password now:

CHGUSRPRF USRPRF(QSECOFR) PASSWORD(new-password)

*****
```

STEP: Recover BRMS Required System Libraries

You must recover three key libraries on the system because BRMS has dependencies on these libraries.

The QUSRSYS library is important to BRMS because it contains the tape exit registration information. The QSYS2 library contains the LAN code for the 3494 media library. You must recover the QGPL library prior to the QUSRSYS library because QGPL contains dependencies that QUSRSYS needs.

```

*****
STEP: Recover BRMS required system libraries

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You must restore specific system libraries before you can use BRMS to
perform other recovery steps.

If the "Select Recovery Items" display is not shown and you are
performing a complete system restore, run the following command:

STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Otherwise, run the following command using media shown below:

STRRCYBRM OPTION(*SYSTEM) ACTION(*RESTORE)

Select the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery Items"
display using the specified volume(s).

Saved      ----- ASP ----- Save   Save   Sequence  Control  Volume
Item       Type  Name  Number Date   Time   Objects Omit  Number  Group   Identifier
-----
___ QGPL      *FULL *SYSBAS  00001 7/25/02 10:06:15 443          39  *BKUGRP  VOL002
___ QUSRSYS   *FULL *SYSBAS  00001 7/25/02 10:06:15 1,520        45  *BKUGRP  VOL002
___ QSYS2     *FULL *SYSBAS  00001 7/25/02 14:43:38 115          99  *SYSGRP  VOL003
*****

```

The difference between the two STRRCYBRM options shown in the this step (and of following steps) is that OPTION(*RESUME) shows only those saved items remaining in the recovery. As each item is recovered by BRMS, it is removed from the recovery candidate file. Thus, as you recover saved items with this option, the number of saved items decreases from step to step. You can restart the procedure by using the *RESUME option if you cancel or end the recovery.

The *SYSTEM option initializes the recovery candidate file with all items to be recovered including any items previously recovered. As you recover saved items with this option, the number of saved items remains constant from step to step and you select the specific saved items to be recovered as defined in the step.

STEP: Recover configuration data

Now you will recover the saved configuration data.

If, after you restore the SRM database, the hardware configuration does not match, review the section dealing with SRM database problems in the *Backup and Recovery* book.

```

*****
STEP: Recover configuration data

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should restore a current version of your system configuration.

If the "Select Recovery Items" display is not shown and you are
performing a complete system restore, run the following command to
continue:

STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Otherwise, run the following command using media shown below:

STRRCYBRM OPTION(*SYSTEM) ACTION(*RESTORE)

Select the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery Items"
display using the specified volume(s).

Saved      ----- ASP ----- Save   Save   Sequence  Control  Volume
Item        Type  Name      Number Date   Time      Number   Group    Identifier
-----
*SAVCFG     *FULL *SYSBAS   00001 7/25/02 14:43:21 82        2 *SYSGRP  VOL003
*****

```

STEP: Reset BRMS Device and Media Library Information

If you are using a 3494 tape library that is attached to a local area network (LAN), you must vary on the LAN line description. Use the WRKCFGSTS *LIN command to vary on the LAN line description. If you attach your 3494 through an RS232 connection, you do not need to vary on the RS232 line description.

If you used values other than default values on the BRMS device and media library information displays, you should verify that your changes are still in effect. You can do this using the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) command. Some of the values revert to the defaults when you use the INZBRM OPTION(*DEVICE) command.

```

*****
STEP: Reset BRMS device and media library information

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You must reset the BRMS device and media library information.

Use the following command to clear and initialize the BRMS device and
media library information with the tape and media library devices
currently configured on the system:

INZBRM OPTION(*DEVICE)

INZBRM OPTION(*DEVICE) resets some device information to the BRMS
supplied defaults. Review the BRMS device information using the
following command:

WRKDEVBRM
*****

```

STEP: Recover All Remaining System and User Data

Using the *RESUME option of the STRRCYBRM command and then using F16 to select all recovery items helps you automate the recovery of all remaining saved data. This step is not shown on the report if the recovery includes objects saved from auxiliary storage pool devices or objects saved to TSM servers. These objects cannot be selected for recovery until after the IPL step.

```

*****
STEP: Recover all remaining system and user data

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You may now select to recover all of the data on your system.
To do so, run the following command:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Press F9 (Recovery defaults) on the Select Recovery Items display.
Ensure the tape device name or media library device name that you are
using is correct.

Press F16 to select all recovery items.

After the saved items are recovered, continue with the step following
"STEP: Recover objects in directories".

Otherwise, continue with the following step.
*****

```

STEP: Recover IBM Product Libraries

This example shows a short list of the IBM libraries you need to recover. Your list may be much longer. Your recovery report will list all of the IBM libraries that you need to restore.

You select the libraries to recover from the Select Recovery Items display, which you access from the STRRCYBRM display.

```

*****
STEP: Recover IBM product libraries

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should restore the current version of your IBM libraries.

If you are performing a complete system restore, run the following
command to continue:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Otherwise, run the following command:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*IBM) ACTION(*RESTORE)

Select and recover the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery
Items" display using the specified volume(s).

```

Saved Item	Type	---- ASP	-----	Save Date	Save Time	Objects	Omit	Sequence Number	Control Group	Volume Identifier
QUSRDIRDB	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	10:06:15	113		42	*BKUGRP	VOL002
#COBLIB	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:43:38	84		4	*SYSGRP	VOL003
QADM	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:43:38	175		5	*SYSGRP	VOL003
QADMDISTP	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:43:38	8		6	*SYSGRP	VOL003
QANE	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	14:43:38	10		7	*SYSGRP	VOL003
.										
.										
.										

```

*****

```

Once at the Select Recovery Items display, you can select just the IBM libraries you need to restore. Or, you can press F16 to select and restore all of the libraries. Unless you are absolutely sure which IBM product libraries you need to omit, you should select all of the IBM product libraries.

Select Recovery Items									
Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.									
1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object									
Opt	Saved Item	Date	Time	Save Type	Volume Serial	File Seq	Expiration Date	Objects Saved	
	#COBLIB	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		4 4/15/05	84	
	QADM	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		5 4/15/05	175	
	QADMDISTP	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		6 4/15/05	8	
	QANE	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		7 4/15/05	10	
	QANERSTLIB	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		8 4/15/05	25	
	QANESAVLIB	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		9 4/15/05	24	
	QANETST	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		10 4/15/05	199	
	QANSAPI	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		11 4/15/05	13	
	QBLDMRIBR1	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		12 4/15/05	4	
	QBLDSYS	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		13 4/15/05	1755	
	QBLDSYSR	7/25/02	14:43:38	*FULL	VOL003		14 4/15/05	493	

STEP: Recover User Libraries

Depending on how you saved the libraries, you can choose STRRCYBRM OPTION (*ALLUSR) or STRRCYBRM OPTION(*CTLGRP) to restore them. The STRRCYBRM OPTION(*CTLGRP) command gives you more control and permits you to start concurrent restores. During complete recovery, BRMS restores both full and incremental saves.

STEP: Recover user libraries

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should restore the current version of your user libraries.

If you are performing a complete system restore, run the following command to continue:

STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Otherwise, run the following command:

STRRCYBRM OPTION(*IBM) ACTION(*RESTORE)

Select and recover the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery Items" display using the specified volume(s).

--- Attention ---

If you have logical file whose based-on physical files are in a different library, you must restore all based-on physical files before you can restore the logical file.

--- Attention ---

If you use journaling, the libraries containing the journals must be restored before restoring the journaled files.

Saved Item	Type	ASP Name	Number	Save Date	Save Time	Objects	Omit	Sequence Number	Control Group	Volume Identifier
— \$D2BSYSCF	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	10:06:15	4		4	*BKUGRP	VOL002
— \$PROD	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	10:06:15	2		5	*BKUGRP	VOL002
— \$BLDBR1	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	10:06:15	1,003		6	*BKUGRP	VOL002
— \$BLDKKA	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	10:06:15	256		7	*BKUGRP	VOL002
— \$BLDSHIP	*FULL	*SYSBAS	00001	7/25/02	10:06:15	113		8	*BKUGRP	VOL002
.										
.										
.										

Chapter 4. Recovering Your Entire System 35

STEP: Recover Document Library Objects

This step recovers any saved document library objects.

```
*****
STEP: Recover document library objects

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should restore the current version of your documents, folders and mail.

If you are performing a complete system restore, run the following
command to continue:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Otherwise, run the following command:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*IBM) ACTION(*RESTORE)

Select and recover the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery
Items" display using the specified volume(s).

--- Attention -----
When you recover Document Library Objects (DLOs), the system updates
the search index database information for these DLOs. If the recovery

To do so, run the following command:

    RCLDLO DLO(*ALL)

After the reclaim, try the DLO recovery again.
-----

Saved   ----- ASP ----- Save   Save   Sequence Control Volume
Item    Type  Name      Number  Date    Time   Objects Omit  Number  Group   Identifier
-----
_ *ALLDLO  *FULL *SYSBAS   00001  7/25/02 11:36:05   119         57 *BKUGRP  VOL002
*****
```

STEP: Recover Objects in Directories

This step recovers any saved directory objects.

```
*****
STEP: Recover objects in directories

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should restore the current version of your objects in directories.

If you are performing a complete system restore, run the following
command to continue:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Otherwise, run the following command:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*IBM) ACTION(*RESTORE)

Select and recover the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery
Items" display using the specified volume(s).

Saved   ----- ASP ----- Save   Save   Sequence Control Volume
Item    Type  Name      Number  Date    Time   Objects Omit  Number  Group   Identifier
-----
_ *LINK    *FULL *SYSBAS   00001  7/25/02 11:36:33  11,788       58 *BKUGRP  VOL002
*****
```

STEP: Recover Spooled Files for all ASPs

To recover spooled files, you need to use the WRKSPLFBRM command.

To save spooled files using BRMS, you must define the spooled files to be saved in a spooled file list, then add the list to a backup control group. You can find more information on how to create backup lists and control groups in Chapter 7, "Tailoring Your Backup" on page 83.

```
*****
STEP: Recover spooled files for all ASPs

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

If spooled files were saved, restore your spooled files using the
following command:

    WRKSPLFBRM

Press F16 to select all recovery items.

Otherwise, select the individual items you need to recover.

Use the media listed on the "Select Recovery Items" display.
*****
```

STEP: Special Recovery Processing — iSeries Integration for Windows® Server

You will need to perform the following special recovery action if your system had iSeries Integration for Windows Server installed and the Integrated Netfinity® Servers were VARIED OFF when the system was last saved.

```
*****
STEP: Special Recovery Processing

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

IBM ISeries Integration for Windows Server (5722-WSV)

If the iSeries Integration for Windows Server was installed when your
system was saved and has been restored to the system, perform the
following steps:

If the Windows Servers were VARIED OFF during the save, perform these
recovery steps:

__ a. Add the links for each server description using the following
command:

    ADDNWSSTGL NWSSTG(network-server-storage-name)
    NWSN(network-server-description-name)

__ b. Vary on your Windows Servers using the following command:

    WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*NWS)

Select option 1 to vary on each server.

*****
```

STEP: Special Recovery Processing — Recovering Linux servers in a logical partition

You will need to perform the following special recovery step if your system was running Linux servers in a logical partition when the system was saved.

```

*****
STEP: Special Recovery Processing

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

Recovering Linux servers in a logical partition

If Linux servers were running in a logical partition and were
VARIED OFF when your system was saved, perform the following
steps to complete the recovery:

__ a. Add the links for each server description using
the following command:

      ADDNWSSTGL NWSSTG(server-storage-name)
      NWSN(server-description-name)

__ b. Vary on each Linux server using the following command:

      WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*NWS)

      Select option 1 to vary on each server.

*****

```

STEP: Special Recovery Processing — IBM Content Manager onDemand for iSeries

You will need to perform the following special recovery step if your system had IBM Content Manager onDemand for iSeries installed when the system was last saved.

```

*****
STEP: Special Recovery Processing

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

IBM Content Manager for iSeries (5722-RD1)

If Content Manager OnDemand for iSeries was installed when your
system was saved and has been restored to the system,
use the following commands to enable journaling:

__ a. CALL QRDARS/QLCSTRJ PARM('RLC')
__ b. CALL QRDARS/QLCSTRJ PARM('RLR')
__ c. CALL QRDARS/QLCSTRJ PARM('RLO')

*****

```

STEP: Apply Journal Changes

To restore journal information and apply journal changes, use the APYJRNCHG command. The OS/400 operating system correctly establishes the receiver chains during the restore.

```

*****
STEP: Apply journal changes

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

To determine if you need to apply journal changes, refer to the
section "Determining Whether You Need to Apply Journal Changes"
under chapter "Restoring Changed Objects and Applying Journalled
Changes" as detailed in the "Backup and Recovery" book.

*****

```


STEP: Recover Authorization Information

To restore authorities to the restored objects, use the RSTAUTBRM command.

```
*****
STEP: Recover authorization information

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should recover authorization information if user profiles
were recovered in an earlier step.

--- Attention -----
Each of these operations can be a long running process.
-----

--- Attention -----
Some authorities may not be restored if the system is not running in
restricted state.
-----

To restore authorities to all objects, run the following command:

RSTAUT USRPRF(*ALL) RSTASP(*SYSBAS)

To restore authority information saved by BRMS for basic user auxiliary
pools (2-32), run the following command:

RSTAUTBRM USRASP(*ALLUSR)

*****
```

STEP: Verify system information

Retrieve the saved system information reports and compare to the current system information to verify the successful recovery of your system information. Change the system information as required

```
*****
STEP: Verify system information

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should verify your system information.
If you ran either of the following commands after the save, additional
reports were created that enable you to verify your system information:

STRRCYBRM PRSYSINF(*YES)

STRMNTBRM PRSYSINF(*YES)

If you are using distribution media to restore your system, then you
should use these reports to re-create the system information as
as detailed in the "Backup and Recovery" book.

*****
```

STEP: Apply PTFs

This is a good point in the recovery process to apply any PTFs that had been applied since the last save of system data, or any PTFs not yet applied.

```
*****
STEP: Apply PTFs

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

Re-apply PTFs that were applied since your last save of system data.

*****
```

STEP: Print Job Log

After completing the recovery of your entire system, use the job log to identify any items that BRMS did not successfully restore. Check the job log for all error messages, then correct the errors, and restore any missing objects from the media. To print the job log, use the DSPJOBLOG command. BRMS sends a message (CPF3773) to tell you how many objects BRMS restored.

```
*****
STEP: Print joblog

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should print the joblog.
To do so, run the following command:

    DSPJOBLOG JOB(*) OUTPUT(*PRINT)

Review the job logs or output from your recovery processing
to ensure that all recovery steps completed successfully.
*****
```

STEP: Reset system values

Before you signoff or IPL, you should change the system values which we modified in "Step: Recover operating system" to the original values or to values which reflect your desired policies.

```
*****
STEP: Reset system values

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

Use the commands and recorded values in "Step: Recover operating
system" to change the system values to the original setting or to a
new value that meets your desired policy.

*****
```

STEP: Perform IPL

Your system recovery is complete. It's is time to IPL the system.

```
*****
STEP: Perform IPL

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

Return system to normal mode and IPL using the following command:

    PWRDWSYS OPTION(*IMMED) RESTART(*YES)
*****
```

STEP: Special Recovery Processing — iSeries Integration for Windows Server

You will need to perform the following special recovery action if your system had iSeries Integration for Windows Server installed and the Integrated Netfinity Servers were VARIED ON when the system was last saved.

```

*****
STEP: Special Recovery Processing

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

IBM iSeries Integration for Windows Server (5722-WSV)

If iSeries Integration for Windows Server was installed when your
system was saved and has been restored to the system, perform the
following steps:

If the Windows Servers were VARIED ON during the save, perform these
recovery steps:

__ a. Vary off any Windows Servers that are varied on using the
following command:

      WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*NWS)

      Select option 2 to vary off each server.

__ b. Create any needed Network Storages using the following command:

      CRTNWSSTG NWSSTG(storage-name)

__ c. Add the links for each server description using the following
command:

      ADDNWSSTGL NWSSTG(network-server-storage-name)
              NWSN(network-server-description-name)

__ d. Vary on your Windows Servers using the following command:

      WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*NWS)

      Select option 1 to vary on each server.

__ e. Restore Windows Server data using the following command and
the volumes listed in "STEP: Recover objects in directories":

      RST OBJ('/QNTC')
*****

```

Recovery Tips

When preparing for either a selected or a total recovery, keep the following tips in mind:

- If BRMS cancels or ends the recovery in error, you can restart the recovery by using the STRRCYBRM *RESUME command.
- You can use the OS/400 operating system to assist with selected restores. Before you do so, however, keep the following information in mind:
 - If you save with the option 21 (Save) you must restore with option 21 (Restore).
 - If you save with BRMS, you must restore with BRMS.
 - You cannot mix the two different types of saves and restores.
- It is possible to use BRMS to recover objects saved using the native save commands, or to use the native restore commands to recover BRMS saved objects.
- After designing and implementing your backup operation, you should test your recovery procedures when using your own reports. Try to test your recovery reports on a non-critical system. If do not have one available, contact your IBM representative to set up a practice recovery at an IBM Business Continuity and Recovery Services "hotsite." You can use your own recovery reports at the worksite.

- To ensure that the recovery reports you need are up-to-date, print a new recovery report after each backup, or at least once per day.
- Always follow the steps in the Recovering Your Entire System report as they appear.
- Always keep copies of the reports in easily retrievable locations in case of disaster. Be sure to keep an updated copy of the recovery reports at all of the offsite locations that contain active media.

Part 2. Tailoring Your BRMS Operations

Chapter 5. Working with Devices in BRMS

This chapter provides information on how to add, change, remove, and review stand-alone and media library tape devices in BRMS. During installation, BRMS automatically registers and initializes the devices attached to your iSeries and creates corresponding device information entries. BRMS creates a default device based on the fastest and most automated device attached at that time (if more than one device is attached or registered. Otherwise BRMS uses the sole attachment as the default device). Unless you change it, BRMS sends all of your backup and recovery requests to the default device. In this chapter, you learn how to change or remove device information for existing devices, and also how to add new devices to the system.

BRMS works with all standard iSeries tape devices. IBM continually enhances BRMS to work with new and improved devices. BRMS does not support diskette, optical, unlabeled or non-standard label tape.

Adding New Devices

There are two ways you can register devices with BRMS. You can use the Initialize BRM (INZBRM) command to perform the registration and initialization tasks for you automatically. Or you can perform these tasks yourself using other BRMS commands.

Whenever you add a device, be it manually or through the INZBRM command, you must create new media classes to match. BRMS only creates media classes for you during the installation process. For information on how to create media classes, see Chapter 6, "Setting Up Your Media Management Operation" on page 53.

Adding a New Device Automatically

Procedures for adding a new device are the same for both stand-alone devices and library devices. To add a new device to your iSeries, take the following steps:

1. Attach the device to your system.
2. Type INZBRM OPTION(*DATA) at a command line and press Enter. In addition to creating policy, control group, and other defaults, this command registers and creates new device information entries for the devices currently attached to your system. Device information entries include:
 - Device name (for example, TAP01 or TAPMLB01). This is the device that BRMS uses as the default device.
 - Device type (for example, a 3570 or a 6340).
 - Model type.
3. If your device is a stand-alone that is not shared with other systems, or if it is a media library, **you must vary it on before using it**. You can vary on both stand-alone and media library devices by taking option 8 (Work with status) from the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) display. Alternatively, you can vary on a media library by using the Work with MLB Status (WRKMLBSTS) command. When sharing the device between multiple systems, BRMS varies it on and off for you, according to the jobs that are lined up in the work queue.

The INZBRM command initializes your device automatically.

Note: Should you have difficulty varying on a device, see the *Backup and Recovery* book for assistance.

Adding a New Device Manually

To manually add a device to BRMS, take the following steps:

1. Attach the device to your system. Ensure that the device is configured to the system, either by an I/O processor reset or by an IPL with autoconfiguration.
2. Type `WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*DEV) CFGD(TAP*)` at a command line to view the list of standalone devices and media libraries on the Work with Configuration Status display.
3. At this display find the name of the device you want to add to BRMS.
4. Type `WRKDEVBRM` at a command line and press Enter.
5. At the Work with Devices display, type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* field.
6. Type the name of the device you want to add in the *Device* column.
7. Enter the device type (*TAP for stand-alones or *TAPMLB for tape libraries) in the *Category* column. Then press Enter.
8. At the Add Tape Devices display, fill out the additional parameters as needed. Press Enter to add the device entry to BRMS.
9. If your device is a stand-alone not shared with other systems, or if it is a media library, **you must vary it on before using it to process jobs**. You can vary on both stand-alone and media library devices by taking option 8 (Work with status) from the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) display. Alternatively, you can use the Work with MLB Status (WRKMLBSTS) command. When sharing the device between multiple systems, BRMS varies it on and off for you, according to the jobs that are lined up in the work queue.

Note: If you added a media library to BRMS, use the Work with Media Libraries (WRKMLBBERM) command to release the library when it is ready for use.

Changing an Existing Device

There are slightly different options available when you want to change existing device information, depending on whether the device is a stand-alone or a tape library. This section provides information on how to change device information for both types of devices.

Changing Device Information for Stand-Alone Devices

To change device information for an existing stand-alone device, take the following steps:

1. Type `WRKDEVBRM` at a command line and press Enter.
2. At the Work with Devices display, locate the name of the device you want to work with and type a 2 (Change) in the *Opt* column. This takes you to the Change Tape Device display.

Change Tape Device

Tape device : TAP01

Device type/model : 6382/001

Type changes, press Enter.

Text Entry created by BRM configuration

Location *HOME Name, F4 for list

Use optimum block size *YES *NO, *YES

Next volume message *YES *YES, *NO

Tape mount delay *IMMED *IMMED, 1-999

Auto enroll media *SYSPCY *SYSPCY, *NO, *YES

Shared device *NO *YES, *NO

Shared device wait 30 Seconds

More...

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel

3. Change the parameters as needed. Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on this display:

- The default value in the *Use optimum block size* field is *YES. If you want to use this default value, keep the following restrictions in mind:
 - OS/400 cannot duplicate tape if the output device uses a block size that is smaller than the blocks being read by the input device.
 - If you use the optimum block size, the system does not compress the data.

If these restrictions concern you, set the value to *NO. In that case, BRMS uses the default block size that is supported by your device. It is recommended, however, that you use the default value, *YES, whenever possible because the device performs better when writing larger blocks of data at once.

- The default value in the *Auto enroll media* field is *NO and is established in the system policy (*SYSPCY). If you want BRMS to automatically enroll media into the tape device you want to use, you can specify *YES at this display.
- The default value in the *Shared device* field is *NO. If you want to share a device between multiple systems, change this parameter to *YES, and keep the following information in mind:
 - BRMS manages device availability for shared devices. This means that BRMS varies off the device after use so that it is readily available for use by another system. BRMS varies on all of the devices it needs prior to a save operation. The *Shared device wait* field specifies how long BRMS should wait for a device to become available if it cannot locate any usable devices.
 - **Device pooling** happens when several iSeries servers share a single tape drive or set of tape drives. In this case, OS/400 or BRMS picks an eligible device from a pool of devices that supports the read and write densities you need. This permits several iSeries servers to access the pool at the same time for any eligible device. In this way, you do not have to wait for a specific device to become available or fail the operation due to a busy device. If you are using a tape library, OS/400 manages device pooling for you. If you are using a stand-alone device, BRMS manages device pooling for you.

- In the *Allow densities* field you can indicate the density at which your device can read and write to media. BRMS separates densities into the read and write densities that are allowed by your device. This separation recognizes that some devices can read media to a device but cannot write to it and vice versa. Other devices can read and write the same densities. The ability to specify the densities that a device can read or write is particularly useful when using device pooling. For example, if you are backing up media with a density of 1600 BPI, you can use a 2400-A12 or a 9348-0001 for this operation. BRMS can do this because both devices can write to media at 1600 BPI. You can have multiple devices assigned to a location.
- After you have changed and reviewed these and other parameters as needed, press Enter to return to the Work with Devices display.

Changing the Device Name

You can also use the Work with Devices display to change the name of your device. To change the name of a stand-alone device, take the following steps:

1. At the Work with Devices display, type an 8 (Work with status) in the *Opt* field next to the device you want to rename. Press Enter.
2. At the Work with Configuration Status display, again type an 8 (Work with description) in front of the device you want to rename. Press Enter.
3. At the Work with Device Descriptions display, type a 9 (Rename) in front of the device you want to rename and press Enter.
4. Rename the device at the Rename Object (RNMOBJ) display.
5. Press Enter twice to return to the Work with Devices display.

To change the name of a media library device, take steps 1-5 from the Work with Media Library Status (WRKMLBSTS) command.

Changing Device Configuration Information

There are several types of device configuration information that you can change from the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) display. To do so, type an 8 (Work with Devices) in front of the device you want to work with and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Configuration Status (WRKCFGSTS) display. Alternatively, you can go directly to the Work with Configuration Status display by entering WRKCFGSTS from a command line. On the WRKCFGSTS command, you can change or review the following items:

- Vary on and vary off status (if your device is not shared).
- Device description information.
- Status of the jobs you want the device to process.
- Mode status.
- Recovery requests pertaining to the device.
- LAN adapters and APPN[®] status (when applicable).

The WRKDEVBRM command is the primary command for working with device information for stand-alone devices. Use it to change and remove media information as needed.

Changing Device Information for Media Library Devices

BRMS supports all IBM media libraries (MLB) and has the capability to support third-party library devices. An MLB is an automated tape library. You can store a large number of tapes in an MLB unit and access a specified tape or tapes for read and write operations. BRMS determines which volumes reside in the MLB, and when needed, issues the proper command to mount the volume.

Tape libraries enable BRMS to provide the following support:

- Perform save and restore operations automatically.
- Perform file retrieve automatically.
- Can migrate infrequently used data from DASD to less expensive storage media while maintaining the ability to access it automatically.
- Can archive massive amounts of data, such as in image or spooled archive applications.
- Provide hardware that new applications can use to manage offline storage.
- Manage scratch tapes and tape usage.

Using the WRKMLBBRM Command

While you can make some changes to media library information from the WRKDEVBRM command, the Work with Media Libraries (WRKMLBBRM) command provides more options at a greater level of detail. To get there, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKMLBBRM at a command line and press Enter.

Work with Media Libraries

Position to _____ Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.

2=Change 3=Hold 5=Display 6=Release 8=Work with MLB media
9=Display MLB media 10=Display MLB status 11=Add MLB media

Opt	Library	Status	Location	Text
-	MLB01	Released	VAULT	Entry created by BRM configuration
-	TAPMLB03	Released	TAPMLB03	Entry created by BRM configuration

2. From this display, you can access a variety of MLB-related displays and perform the following tasks:
 - Change location, optimum block size, compaction, read and write densities, and other device-related information.
 - Change or review device description information, including renaming the device.
 - Hold and release a library for specified purposes.
 - Work with media library media, including adding, initializing, removing, mounting, and dismounting.
 - Display library status information.
 - Display media library media status information.
3. After completing your changes, press Enter to return to the Work with Media Libraries display.

Setting Up an MLB as a Shared Device

To set up an MLB as a shared device, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKMLBSTS at a command line and press Enter.
2. Type a 5 (Allocate unprotected) in front of the MLB you want to use as a shared device, and press Enter. A message appears at the bottom of the display that indicates that you changed the status of this device.
3. To remove an MLB from shared status, type a 6 (Deallocate resource) in front of the device you want to deallocate and press Enter. A message appears that indicates that you have changed the status of this device.

OS/400 determines how best to utilize the drives within the tape library. When finished with the volume, BRMS issues the corresponding command to remove the volume. For instance, when an output operation calls for a scratch volume mount, BRMS determines an eligible scratch volume and mounts the volume. After the operation completes, the MLB unloads the volume (if specified in the command), and returns the volume to its correct media inventory location.

Working with Third Party Media Libraries

BRMS can support some third party (non-IBM) media libraries. To add third-party media libraries to BRMS, take the following steps:

1. Attach the device to your system.
2. Type `WRKCFGSTS CFGTYPE(*DEV) CFGD(TAP*)` at a command line to view the list of standalone devices and media libraries on the Work with Configuration Status display.
3. At this display find the name of the third-party device you want to add to BRMS.
4. Type `WRKDEVBRM` at a command line and press Enter.
5. At the Work with Devices display, type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* field.
6. Type the name of the device you want to add in the *Device* column.
7. Enter the device type `*USRMLB` (for user-defined MLB) in the *Category* column. Then press Enter.
8. At the Add User Media Device display, type in the third-party commands responsible for the following activities:
 - Location (this must be the same location as the `*USRMLB` devices)
 - Text description
 - Mount or eject media
 - Insert and add media
 - Work with and display media
 - Work with and display status
 - Allocate and de-allocate media
 - Start and End media movement
 - Work with and display status

The customer or media library manufacturer must provide commands and the program interface to BRMS and the MLB.

9. Fill out the additional parameters as needed.
10. Press Enter to add the device entry to BRMS.

Customers or manufacturers can use the following variables with each of the MLB commands. The tape exit supplies the values for these variables.

- `DEVICE`: the tape device name.
- `VOLUME`: the volume identifier.
- `MLBNAME`: the BRMS name of the third party MLB.

BRMS supplies the following messages for users of third-party media libraries. You can find them in message file `Q1AMSGF` in library `QBRM`.

- `BRM1990`: User exit retry operation message.
- `BRM1991`: User exit failure operation message.

If BRMS issues these messages as escape messages, then BRMS retries (BRM1990) or fails (BRM1991) the job as appropriate. Use the Work with Registration Information (WRKREGINF) command to add and register a program to an exit point.

Last Active Device

BRMS always continues any subsequent saves within a control group on the device that was last active. This allows you to completely fill all volumes and allows for better utilization of available devices. You can use the *LOAD special value for a backup item entry in a backup control group to force subsequent saves (saves following the *LOAD entry) to a different volume which may be mounted on a different standalone device or resource in a media library.

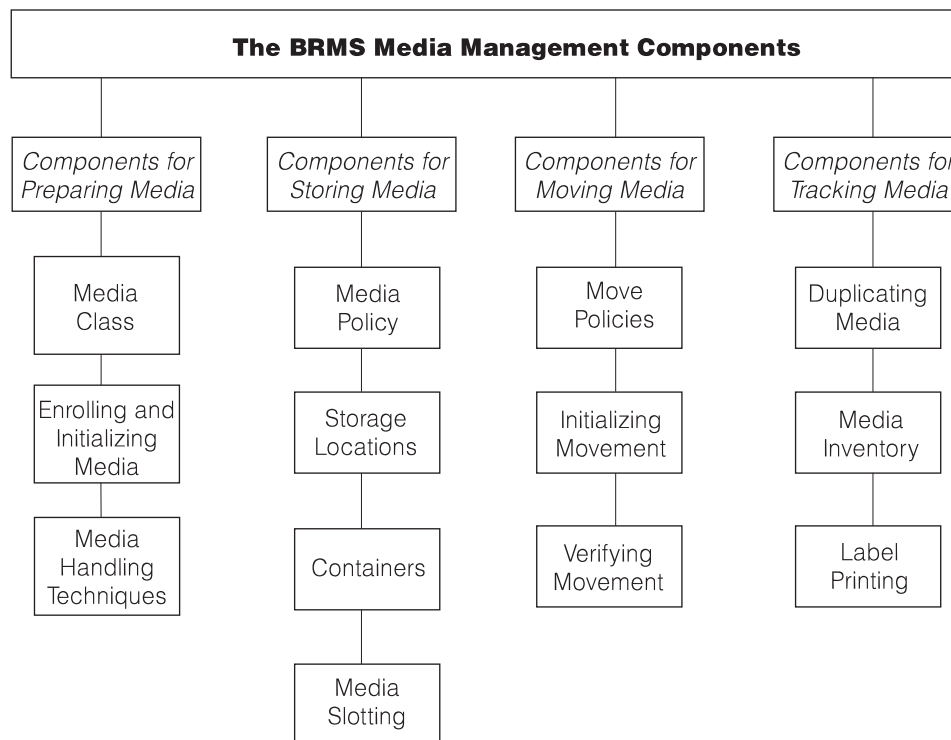
Chapter 6. Setting Up Your Media Management Operation

Use the BRMS Media Management service to set up an automated system that tracks your media through its entire lifecycle from tape creation through expiration and return to scratch pool availability.

The BRMS media management service consists of a variety of components that can assist you in performing the following tasks:

- Preparing your media for use.
- Setting up storage locations for your media.
- Tracking the movement of your media to and from the storage locations.
- Tracking the enrollment, use, and expiration of your media.

Figure 6 illustrates the components that can assist you in these tasks.



RV4N387-2

Figure 6. The BRMS Media Management Components

For convenience and ease of use and understanding, the BRMS media management components have been grouped into the work sets that are shown in Figure 6. You can set up your media management system by following the structure of this chapter from preparation through tracking. Or you can select the components that are most useful for managing your specific operation. Though you do not have to use all of the components that are discussed in this chapter, your media does need to be properly prepared before you can use it for backup purposes.

You can access all of the components that BRMS provides through commands or through the Media Management menu. The sections that follow provide CL commands for each component that is discussed. To get to the Media Management menu, do the following:

1. Type GO BRMMED at a command line and press Enter. Alternatively, you can select option 1 (Media Management) from the main BRMS menu.

```
BRMMED                               Media Management                               RCHAS400

Select one of the following:

1. Work with media classes
2. Work with media
3. Move management
4. Work with storage locations
5. Container management
6. Media activity
7. Confirm media label print
8. Work with devices
9. Work with media libraries
```

You can access all of the primary media management components through the Media Management menu or by using the commands that are associated with each component.

Many of the functions described in this chapter are also available as part of a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

Preparing Your Media

This section provides information on the steps you need to take to prepare your media for BRMS to use in performing backups. Before BRMS can use media, it needs to be correctly classed by type, initialized, and enrolled into BRMS. You should also design a media inventory system that can assist you and BRMS in tracking the availability and use of your media. This section provides instruction on how you can perform all of these tasks.

Working with Media Classes

Media classes define the types of physical media that are enrolled in BRMS. The characteristics of a media class include tape density, capacity, label information, number of errors allowed, and shared status. During installation, BRMS automatically creates media classes that are based on the types of devices attached to your system. As you enroll media, BRMS assigns it to the appropriate media class. For example, if you have a 3490 tape device attached to your system, the media class might be CART3490E. In this case, the class prefix (CART) signifies a half-inch tape cartridge that is read by a 3490 device. BRMS creates media classes for all media types that are supported by your tape device.

Though BRMS does a thorough job of creating the media classes you need, there may be times when you want to create a unique media class. For example, whenever you add a new device type, you must create new media classes that are compatible with the tape device you are adding. For example, you may want to create a unique media class when you back up data that belongs to user X, Y, or Z. Or, you might create a new media class for use by developers.

To add a new media class, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKCLSBRM from a command line. Press Enter.
2. At the Work with Media Classes display, type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* column. In the *Class* column, type a unique name for the media class you want to create. For example, CART3490 or USERDOE. Press Enter.

Add Media Class

Type choices, press Enter.

Media class	USERDOE	Name
Density		F4 for list
Media capacity	*DENSITY	*DENSITY, Number nnnnn.nn
Unit of measure		1=KB, 2=MB, 3=GB
Mark for label print	*NONE	*NONE, *MOVE, *WRITE
Label size	1	1=6 LPI, 2=8 LPI, 3=9 LPI
Label output queue	*SYSPCY	Name, *SYSPCY, *PRTF
Library		Name, *LIBL
Shared media	*YES	*YES, *NO
Text		

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel

3. At the Add Media Class display, review and change the parameters as needed. Following are brief summaries of the key fields on this display:
 - The default *Shared media* value of *YES instructs BRMS to share media as applicable with all systems in a network. However, you need to change this value to *NO before performing a SAVSYS backup, even if your system is not in a network. This means that you need to use a separate, unshared media class to save your operating system and licensed internal code. Because only one system needs to use these tapes, overwriting by another system is acceptable. BRMS immediately registers volume activity on all systems in the network so you can easily track volume activity.
 - BRMS flags labels for printing at the *Label output queue* parameter. You can mark specific volumes for label printing by selecting option 11 on the Work with Media display. You can activate the label print request by selecting option 7 (Confirm Media Label Print) from the Media Management menu.
 - Make the class description in the *Text* field a meaningful one. This allows you to view and identify the media class entry at a glance when you get to the Work with Media Classes display.
4. Press Enter to save your changes and to return to the Work with Media Classes display.

Use the Work with Media Classes (WRKCLSBRM) display any time you want to add, change or remove a media class. You can also access the Work with Media (WRKMEDBRM) display from the Work with Media Classes display to review volume information that is associated with media of a particular class. Use the Print Media Exceptions for BRM (PRTMEDBRM) display to review or print media usage statistics. BRMS bases these statistics on the characteristics you specify on the WRKCLSBRM command.

Enrolling Media

This section provides information on how to enroll and initialize volumes under a variety of circumstances. You can find instruction on how to enroll *individual* volumes into BRMS for use by stand-alone and tape library devices in "Chapter 3. Backing Up Your Entire System."

Enrolling Multiple Volumes for Use by Stand-alone Devices

You can enroll multiple volumes into BRMS for use by a stand-alone device by using a single command. To do so, take the following steps:

1. Type ADDMEDBRM at a command line and press Enter.

Add Media to BRM (ADDMEDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Volume identifier	VOL01	Character value
Media class	CART3490E	CART3490E, FMT3480, FMT3570...
Number to add	1	1-999
Initialize tape	*NO	*NO, *YES
Text	*NONE	

Bottom

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F10=Additional parameters F12=Cancel
F13=How to use this display F24=More keys

2. At the Add Media to BRM display, enter a unique six-character name into the *Volume Identifier* field. To add multiples, the last characters of the volumes that you specify must be numeric (for example, TAP01).
3. At the *Media Class* field, enter the media class name of the volume you want to enroll. To select from a list of available media classes, press F4.
4. Enter the total number of volumes you want to add in the *Number to add* field. Though the *Number to add* field is large enough to contain five digits, you can only enroll a maximum of 999 volumes at one time.
5. Press F10 to review and change additional parameters as needed.
6. Press Enter to enroll the volumes.

BRMS provides the capability to automatically enroll media detected by BRMS but not found in the media inventory. You can specify the use of this capability at the *Auto enroll media* parameter on the Change System Policy display. You can specify automatic enrollment for individual, stand-alone devices on the WRKDEVBRM command.

Enrolling Multiple Volumes for Use by Media Libraries

You can enroll multiple volumes into BRMS for use by media libraries by using a single command. To do so, take the following steps:

1. Type ADDMLMBRM at a command line and press Enter.
2. At the Add Media Library Media display, type the name of the media library into which you want to enroll the media in the *Media Library* field.
3. The default value for the *Volume identifier* field is *INSERT. Use this default value to instruct BRMS to add all of the tapes that are physically in the library to the appropriate media class.
4. Press Enter twice to prompt, review, and change the other parameters as necessary.
5. Press Enter to save and exit.

Enrolling Existing Volumes

If you want to add active volumes to the BRMS media inventory, use the default value of *NO at the *Initialize Tape* field on the ADDMEDBRM display. This allows

you to add volume serial information and a future expiration date without initializing the volume. If you change the value to *YES, you risk deleting existing data.

Adding Media Contents to the History File from an Enrolled Volume

BRMS uses the volume information it saves in its media history files to recover data lost due to accident or disaster. You can review or change media history information from the Work with Media Information (WRKMEDIBRM) display. See “Working with the BRMS Media Inventory” on page 77 for more information on how to use the WRKMEDIBRM display.

BRMS records content information only for media that is already part of the BRMS media inventory.

You can use the Add Media Information (ADDMEDIBRM) command to add media content information to the BRMS database. You might add this information for saves performed prior to installation of BRMS, or to add information about saves performed on other systems which you want to move to the current system which is managed by BRMS. You would use the ADDMEDIBRM command if there are only a few number of entries to add to the database. For more information about the ADDMEDIBRM command, see the online help. The advantage of ADDMEDIBRM over EXTMEDIBRM is the degree of information that can be specified about the saved items.

You can also use the Extract Media Information (EXTMEDIBRM) command to add media information to the BRMS database using information retrieved from the actual save media. You would use the EXTMEDIBRM command if you have many entries to add to the database. The information added to the database using EXTMEDIBRM contains less information than can be added using ADDMEDIBRM because the media does not provide some of this information. The advantage of EXTMEDIBRM over ADDMEDIBRM is the automation.

Note: When doing EXTMEDIBRM on a volume containing heterogenous file sequences (a volume with both SAVLIB and SAVOBJ file sequences on it), EXTMEDIBRM can only account for one type. It is possible to load a SAVLIB database entry for objects saved using SAVOBJ causing these entries to be incorrect and unrestorable. For example, if you specify *SAVLIB on the FILE parameter on the EXTMEDIBRM command, a non-SAVLIB file sequence will cause incorrect SAVLIB entry to be added to the database and any attempts to restore from this entry will fail because BRMS will try to use a RSTLIB command to restore the objects.

To use the Extract Media Information display, take the following steps:

1. Type EXTMEDIBRM at a command line and press Enter.

Extract Media Information (EXTMEDIBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Device	TAP01	Name
Volume identifier	*MOUNTED	Character value, *MOUNTED
File origin	*FILE	*FILE, *SAVLIB, *SAVOBJ...
End of tape option	*UNLOAD	*LEAVE, *REWIND, *UNLOAD

Bottom

F3=Exit
F4=Prompt
F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel
F13=How to use this display

F24=More keys

2. The key parameters on this command are:
 - In the *Device* field, specify the name of the device on which the tape is mounted.
 - In the *Volume ID* field, you can enter a specific volume name, or you can use the default value of *MOUNTED. If you use *MOUNTED, BRMS attempts to add content information for the volume that is currently in the tape device. When a volume is part of a multi-volume set, BRMS adds content information for each of the volumes in the set. You must mount the media set in the same order in which BRMS performed the save. That is, the first volume of the set must be the volume that you initially mount on the specified tape device.
 - You must use the default value of *UNLOAD in the *End of tape option* field. BRMS prompts you to mount the subsequent volumes when needed and in set order.

Note: You cannot use the *MOUNTED value for a tape existing in a tape library device. Instead you need to enter the specific volume name.

3. Review and change the remaining parameter as needed.
4. Press Enter to issue the command.

Initializing Volumes

In BRMS you usually need to initialize a volume only once in its lifetime. BRMS keeps track of whether the volume has active data on it, and prevents you from overwriting the active data. In addition, it allows you to overwrite expired data. This single initialize concept means that volume error statistics can be kept for the life of the tape. BRMS associates these statistics with the volume ID. If you were to reinitialize a volume and give it a different volume serial, the statistics would be lost. Keeping lifetime statistics for volumes is effective media management. When the error rate for a particular volume is too high, remove the volume from service.

You can use either the ADDMEDBRM or the INZMEDBRM (Initialize Media using BRM) command to initialize your media. Using the ADDMEDBRM command allows you to initialize the media and also to add the initialized media to the BRMS media inventory at the same time. The ADDMEDBRM command also allows you to specify additional BRMS media management information such as location and media statistics, whereas the INZMEDBRM command only initializes media.

Note: Use the ADDMLMBRM command to initialize media for use by media libraries.

To initialize a volume from the ADDMEDBRM display, simply change the *Initialize tape* field from *NO to *YES and press Enter. Then type a valid device name into the *Device* field and press Enter (you can access the *Device* field by pressing F10, Additional Parameters).

Note: BRMS cannot initialize the volumes unless the tape device is varied on.

If you do not initialize volumes through the ADDMEDBRM display, use the BRMS INZMEDBRM command instead of the OS/400 INZTAP command. To use the INZMEDBRM command to initialize your media, take the following steps:

1. Ensure that your tape device is varied on.
2. Type INZMEDBRM at a command line and press Enter.
3. The key fields on this command are:
 - In the *Device* field, specify the name of the device that you want to use to initialize the tape, for example, TAP01.
 - In the *New volume ID* field, type in the name of the volume you want to initialize, for example, VOL02.
 - In the *Media class* field, indicate the media class you need to use for this volume, for example CART3490E.
 - To assure the protection of media on an iSeries that is using BRMS media, BRMS disables the CHECK(*NO) value on the INZTAP command. This affects users without *SAVSYS, *SERVICE, or *ALLOBJ authority. Users do not need any specific authority to use this parameter on the BRMS INZMEDBRM command.
4. Review and change the remaining parameters as needed.
5. Press Enter to apply your changes.

How Many Volumes to Initialize

It is important that you have sufficient volumes initialized in the scratch pool before performing a save operation. If, during a save operation, you require more volumes than are available in your media scratch pool, a potential exposure can occur. After using your last enrolled volume, OS/400 prompts you to insert the next volume into the media device. If you insert an unenrolled or uninitialized volume, OS/400 issues an inquiry message with an option to initialize that volume. If you do not take this option and instead take C (for cancel) then BRMS cannot complete the save. If you take the initialize option, OS/400 assigns an arbitrary volume ID that you cannot find in the BRMS media inventory. After the save completes, enroll this volume by using BRMS. Otherwise, BRMS cannot protect the data on this volume, and may overwrite it.

To support the single initialize concept, the tape file labels belonging to volumes show the date of *PERM. This assures that you cannot write over a tape on any iSeries without receiving a message. BRMS keeps track of whether the data on the tape has actually expired, and does not overwrite the data with other BRMS save operations.

Setting Up Your Media Inventory System

Before you begin using media for backups, you need to set up a media inventory from which BRMS can draw available media. There are primarily two ways to set up your media inventory: you can create sets of media and rotate the sets, or you can use a media pool.

This section provides information on the media set rotation method primarily because it is currently in use by some IBM customers. Because BRMS provides greater automation for tracking your media, it is recommended that you use the more flexible media pooling method.

Media Set Rotation

Media set rotation works by grouping and rotating sets of volumes by color or another identifying code. For example, if you want to rotate three sets of media, you might code the first one blue, the second red, and the third, green. You might use the blue set to back up your data one week, and the red set to back up the same data the next week. Then you might use the third (green) set to back up the same data during the third week. Once you create the coding method and the rotation time period, the set begins rotating. Media sets allow you to view the volume sequence, expiration dates, current storage location, current container, and last move dates for each volume in the set.

If you want to use the media rotation method, you need to create media classes that match your code. For example, if you use a code system with the colors red, green, and blue as identifiers, you need to set up media classes to match. In this case, you need to set up a media class for each of the colors: red, blue, and green. You would then assign each color class to a different save period, for example, week 1 for red, week 2 for blue, and so on.

Before you implement the media set rotation method, however, consider the following limitations:

- BRMS may not need all of the media in each set, which can be both wasteful and expensive.
- Unused volumes can move from location to location, which wastes time, space, and often money.
- This method requires more operator intervention. Operators must ensure that BRMS uses the correct set for each backup in the cycle.
- It limits your ability to specify different media retention periods.

Media sets are active in the media inventory as long as they contain active data.

The Media Scratch Pool Method

In a media pool, all of the media share the same media class. To create a media pool, simply create a unique media class name for the pool (such as SMPPOOL). Then add each volume you want to include in the scratch pool to this media class.

The benefits of using the media pooling method are:

- A group needs fewer volumes and so fewer are wasted.
- You need less operator intervention because the media pool contains fewer volumes to track.

BRMS includes all expired media in the media pool. A media mount request initiates the use of any available volumes, regardless of the volume serial number. BRMS tracks all media, including media currently in use and media available for use.

To change from the rotation to the pooling method, change the media class names. Then make sure that you enroll the volumes into the media class or classes that are allowed in the pool.

Setting Up the Next Volume Message Prompt

BRMS can send the operator a message to mount a volume when the device needs one. This message provides the operator with a list of available media in the required media class. BRMS calls this procedure *Next volume message*, and it comes ready to use with the standard BRMS product. You can find the *Next volume message* prompt on the add and change options on the WRKDEVBRM command.

During the backup process, BRMS checks all volumes that it uses for save operations to ensure that you enrolled them into the media inventory. If they are not, BRMS issues a message that informs the operator and continues the operation. However, if you try to use a mix of enrolled and unenrolled media to perform a save, then BRMS stops the operation. BRMS then sends an error message and waits for instruction to continue or cancel the job. BRMS cannot update the media information records with information on this save because the volumes are not enrolled in BRMS. Consequently, BRMS cannot protect the data against overwriting. BRMS does not automatically enroll the volume unless you change the *Auto enroll media* field in the system policy to *YES. Good media management relies on specific enrollment of media volumes to the media inventory.

You can find the *Next volume message* prompt on the Change Tape Device display, which you can access from the Work with Devices display. If you do not want BRMS to send a message to insert the next volume, change the value in this field to *NO.

Note: You can use the *Next volume message* prompt only with stand-alone devices, not media libraries. Media libraries automatically do this for you.

Storing Your Media

This section provides information on the steps you need to take to store your media. In it, you can find instruction on how to use and design the media policies that define the retention periods for your media. You can also find instruction on how to set up storage locations for your media. In addition, you can find information on a couple of other techniques you may want to use to store your media.

Media Policies

Media policies are essential for the successful implementation of BRMS. The media policy defines the type and length of media retention. It also defines the media class and move policy you want to use for the save. In this way, the media policy ties together many of the most important media management and save elements in BRMS.

The standard BRMS product provides these predefined media policies:

1. The FULL media policy instructs BRMS to retain media for 35 days. You can use this policy for full backups.

2. The INCR media policy instructs BRMS to retain media for 14 days. You can use this policy for incremental backups.
3. The SAVSYS media policy instructs BRMS to retain media that is used for system saves for 1725 days (five years).
4. The SYSTEM media policy instructs BRMS to retain media that is used for system saves for 90 days (3 months).
5. The SAVF media policy instructs BRMS to use save files instead of media and to retain the save files for 35 days.

You can use the BRMS-configured media policies, or you can create your own media policies to suit specific purposes. You can also use a combination of BRMS-configured policies and ones you create. Unless you change them, BRMS uses the default media policies when performing backups.

You can create, change, copy, display, or delete a media policy from the Work with Media Policies display. To get there, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKPCYBRM *MED at a command line and press Enter.

Work with Media Policies
RCHAS400

Position to
Starting characters

Type options, press Enter
 1=Create 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Delete 5=Display

Opt	Policy	Text
1	SAMPLE	
	FULL	Entry created by BRM configuration
	INCR	Entry created by BRM configuration
	SAVF	Entry created by BRM configuration
	SAVSYS	Entry created by BRM configuration
	SYSTEM	Entry created by BRM configuration

Bottom

F3=Exit
F5=Refresh
F9=System policy
F12=Cancel

2. Type a 1 (Create) in the *Opt* column and the name of the media policy you want to create in the *Policy* field. Press Enter. This takes you to the Create Media Policy display.

Create Media Policy

Type choices, press Enter.

Media policy	SAMPLE	Name
Retention type	2	1=Date, 2=Days, 3=Versions, 4=Permanent
Retain media	35	Date, Number
Move policy	*NONE	Name, *NONE, *ADSM, F4
Media class	*SYSPCY	Name, *SYSPCY, *ADSM, F4
Storage location	*ANY	Name, *ANY, F4 for list
Save to save file	*NO	*YES, *NO
ASP for save files	*SYSTEM	Name, *SYSTEM, 1-32
Save file retention type	4	1=Date, 2=Days, 3=Permanent, 4=None
Retain save files	*NONE	Date, Number, *NONE
ASP storage limit	*SYS	*SYS, 1-99
Secure media	*NO	*YES, *NO, *ADSM
Text	*NONE	

More...

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel

Specifying Retention Periods in the Media Policy

The primary purpose of a media policy is to specify retention periods for your media. A retention period consists of the length of time that BRMS protects media from rewrite before expiring and returning it to the scratch pool. BRMS protects media from rewrite through the end of the specified retention period.

There are multiple prompts on the media policy display that pertain specifically to retention:

- The *Retention type* field specifies the type of retention method you want to use. For example, BRMS can hold media until a specified date or for a specified number of days. BRMS can also hold media through different save versions or on a permanent basis.
- The *Retain media* field specifies the time period through which you want media protected from rewrite.

BRMS designed these elements to work together. For example, when you specify a value of 2 (days) in the *Retention type* field, you must specify an actual **number** of days in the *Retain media* field, for example, 25. BRMS expires the media after the date or number of days has passed, or the number of versions exceeded.

Overlapping Retention Periods: When defining retention periods, you should leave an overlap in the retention periods you assign to media. The length of time you enter should be long enough to assure that BRMS holds a copy until or beyond the next save. There should be no time gaps in the retention cycles.

Full and Incremental Retention Periods: Retention periods can be different for full (all object) and incremental (changed objects) backups. During a recovery, BRMS uses the latest full backup and any subsequent incremental backups to restore that control group or backup item to its most current status.

BRMS allows you to specify the type of incremental backup that you want to use. A cumulative (*CUMUL) type of incremental backup specifies a backup that includes all changed objects and new objects since the last full backup. An incremental (*INCR) backup type specifies that incremental backups include all changed objects and new objects since the last incremental or full backup. You can specify the type

of incremental backup (*CUMUL or *INCR) in the backup policy. You also can specify the type individually in each backup control group.

Note: Although incremental backups can reduce your backup window, they can also increase your recovery time. Because BRMS first restores the entire library, then restores the changed objects, some objects may be restored multiple times.

It is important that the retention period for incremental backups be synchronized between each other as well as with full backups. This assures full system recovery in case of system failure. BRMS uses its media content information, and media inventory, to determine the most important information to recover. BRMS bases its recovery process on the media and media information that you keep.

Media Policies and Save Commands

Though created for BRMS, you can also use media policies with OS/400 save commands. For example, if you submit the SAVLIB command with a job name that is identical to a BRMS media policy name, then BRMS applies the values of that policy to the save information created from the save command.

Storage Locations

Storage locations define where media resides during its lifecycle. Common locations include computer room tape racks, fireproof vaults, and offsite storage locations. You are likely to store media at several locations during its lifecycle.

BRMS provides two default storage locations:

- *HOME is the default onsite storage location
- VAULT is the default offsite storage location

You should leave these default locations unchanged and create additional storage location entries as needed. In addition, you should store at least one copy of your backups offsite in case of fire, flood, or other site disaster.

The Uses of Storage Locations in BRMS

Generally speaking, BRMS refers to locations in two ways. First, BRMS uses a **home location** from which to draw and return available media. Then BRMS uses a **storage location** as a place where media is kept when not at home. Definitions of each are as follows:

Home location

The home location is where you store media available for backup use. The home location exists as a pool from which BRMS can draw and return media. After completing a move sequence, you should return media to the home location. After expiring media, you should return it to a home location. The physical location of your home location might be a computer room or an office or any location you define. If you use a single tape device, that can be your home location. However, if you use multiple tape libraries, you **must** create a unique home location name for each library. You can base these unique names on media class or another attribute.

Storage locations

Storage locations are where you keep media that contains active data. Typically, you would keep media that contains active data in a vault or other safe storage location for a specified period of time. You do this so that copies of your system and user data are available in case of accident or disaster. You may have numerous storage locations depending on your

needs. You should have at least one safe offsite storage location, but you may want more. Or you might want a temporary storage location for certain tapes at certain points in their lifecycles.

There are several BRMS displays that refer to locations. Following are brief summaries of how BRMS uses location information.

The *system policy* sets the default **home location** for your media. If you are using a stand-alone device, the default name for your home location is *HOME. You can use this default name or create your own home location name. **If you are using a media library, you must rename the home location. You cannot use *HOME as a home location name for media that is stored in a media library. When establishing home location names for media libraries, consider using the same name as the device name.** The names must be unique. If you use *HOME as the location name for an MLB, BRMS will try to reinsert ejected tapes.

The *move policy* has different location parameters: a home location parameter and multiple storage location parameters that you specify. The primary purpose of the move policy is to establish the move pattern of media from one location to another. For example, during a typical save cycle, media moves from its home location to the location where BRMS performs the save, and then to a vault or other safe location. After the move sequence completes, BRMS expires the media and tracks its return to the home location for future use. You define the move sequence in the move policy. The default value in the home location field in the move policy refers to the home location that is defined in the system policy, which is *HOME. You can find information on how to use the move policies later in this chapter.

The default value in the *Storage location* field on the *media policy* is *ANY. This instructs BRMS to draw media for backups from any location at which media is available. Generally speaking, this is likely to be the scratch pool if you are using a stand-alone device. If you specify *ANY while using an MLB device, BRMS may try to mount a volume that is not in library. To avoid this, do not use the *ANY value with media library devices. In addition, you should review this parameter occasionally, especially if you permit media to expire in other than the home location. Otherwise, BRMS might request the mount of a tape that is not at the home site.

The default value in the *Location* field on the Work with Devices display is *HOME. This location name signifies **the location of the device** that is specified in the *Tape device* field (the *Media library* field if the device is an MLB). For example, the location name for a stand-alone device would typically be COMPROOM. The location name for a library device is likely to be the same as the name of the device (for example, TAPMLB01).

Note: If you want to use more than one tape device, you need to ensure that neither uses media that belongs to another system. You should also update the device description field for each device to make sure that the correct locations are specified. You can get to the device description display by entering Work with Device Descriptions (WRKDEVD) from a command line.

Using the Work with Storage Locations Display

Use the Work with Storage Locations (WRKLOCBRM) display to add, change, display, or remove storage locations (including home locations). To add a storage location, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKLOCBRM at a command line and press Enter.

2. Type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* column and a location name in the *Location* column. Press Enter.

Add Storage Location

Type choices, press Enter.

Storage location	COMPROOM	Name
Address line 1	Lab 3, parent location.	
Address line 2		
Address line 3		
Address line 4		
Address line 5		
Contact name	Jennie Doe	
Contact telephone number.		
Retrieval time0	Hours
Allow volumes to expire	*NO	*YES, *NO
Media slotting	*NO	*YES, *NO
Text	New storage location for user data.	

F3=Exit F12=Cancel

3. Use the *Address* fields to describe the location you are creating. For example, Computer lab, Building XYZ.
4. Review and change the other parameters as needed, paying particular attention to the following fields:
 - Change the value in the *Allow volumes to expire* field to *NO for offsite locations. This instructs BRMS not to expire media at this location. Use the default value of *YES if you store the media nearby, for example, in a computer lab or a tape library.
 - The default value for the *Media slotting* field is *NO. If you want to use the media slotting technique, you need to change this value to *YES. You can find more information on this topic later in this chapter.
5. Press Enter to save your changes and exit.

Following is a list of sample location names you can use when creating a new location:

- COMPROOM: A tape rack in your computer room (if you do not store your media in a tape library).
- TAPMLB01: Media in a tape library.
- TAPMLB02: Media in another tape library.
- VAULT: Secure offsite storage.
- DONOTUSE: At this location you can store damaged tapes or tapes you no longer want available for use.

Containers and Container Classes

Container use is optional and adds an additional level of complexity to your storage management system. The container option specifies that you want to store media in physical containers at specified locations, and to use the containers to move the media.

A **container class** refers to the type of container used to store or move media, for example, a box or a bin. You must create container classes if you intend to use

containers. You can base your class definition on the storage capacity of the container. For example, you might create a container class that is called CONT8MM20 to house 20 8mm tapes.

Creating a Container Class

Before you can add a container, you must create a container class. To get to the Work with Container Classes display, take the following steps:

1. Type GO BRMCNR at a command line and press Enter.
2. At the Container Management menu, select option 1 (Work with container classes). This takes you to the Work with Container Classes display.
3. Type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* column and the name of the new container class in the *Class* column. Press Enter.

Add Container Class

Type choices, press Enter.

Container class	QICCASE	Name
Container capacity.	20	Number
Media classes	QIC120	Class, *ANY, F4 for list
Different expiration dates	*NO	*YES, *NO
Automatic unpack	*NO	*YES, *NO
Text	QUARTER INCH	TAPE CAPACITY

4. Review and change the parameters as needed, paying particular attention to the following fields:
 - In the *Media class* field, specify the name of the media class that you want to store in the container. You can keep volumes with different media classes in the container, or you can keep volumes of only one media class in the container. You can also specify *ANY to indicate that the container can hold volumes of any media class in the container.
 - The value in the *Different expiration dates* field specifies whether media held in the container can have different expiration dates. The default value for this parameter is *NO.
 - The default value in the *Automatically unpack* field is *YES. *YES instructs BRMS to remove information about the association between media and container after the media expires. If you change the value to *NO, BRMS holds this association information in the media information inventory. In this case, the volumes remain assigned to the container, even though BRMS cannot use them because they have expired.
5. Press Enter to save your changes and exit.

Working with Containers

After creating the container class, you can use the Work with Containers display to add a container and to perform a number of container-related tasks. To get there, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKCNBRBM at a command line and press Enter.
2. From the Work with Containers (WRKCNBRBM) display you can perform the following tasks:
 - Add a new container.
 - Change an existing container.
 - Remove a container.
 - Move a container.
 - Unpack a container.

- Work with the media that is associated with the container.
3. After completing your work at an associated container display, press Enter to save your changes and exit. This returns you to the main Work with Containers display.

Managing Container Movement

You must assign move policies to containers. Use the move policy display to specify container use and container movement. After creating a container, go to the move policy that you want to use for that container, and change the *Use container* parameter to *YES. To review or change a move policy, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKPCYBRM at a command line and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Move Policy display.
2. Type a 1 (Change) in front of the policy you want to work with and press Enter.

Change Move Policy
RSHCAS400

```

Move policy . . . . . : OFFSITE
Home location . . . . . *SYSPCY      Name, *SYSPCY, *ORIGIN, F4 list
Use container . . . . . *YES          *YES, *NO
Verify moves . . . . . *YES          *YES, *NO
Calendar for working days . . . *ALLDAYS      Name, *ALLDAYS, F4 for list
Calendar for move days . . . . *ALLDAYS      Name, *ALLDAYS, F4 for list
Text . . . . . Entry created by BRM configuration

Type choices, press Enter.

Seq      Location      Duration
  10     VAULT         *EXP

Bottom

F3=Exit   F4=Prompt   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel

```

3. To instruct BRMS to track container use and movement, change the value in the *Use container* field to *YES.
4. Make any additional changes as needed.
5. Press Enter to save and exit.

All of the volumes in a container must have the same move policy. BRMS will not process a request to hold volumes with different move policies in the same container.

If you indicated *YES in the *Verify moves* field in the move policy, BRMS links the volume to the container at verification time. For non-verified moves, the link between volumes and container is automatic when you issue the Move Media using BRM (MOVMEDBRM) command. You can find more information on the MOVMEDBRM command later in this chapter.

When tracking media movement to containers, BRMS selects the next available container. This container supports the appropriate media class. It also selects the container with the ID that is next in ascending alphabetical sequence. Whenever possible, BRMS uses the container that is already at the location from which the media is moving.

For example, suppose that you have two containers that are members of the QIC120 container class and contain 10 QIC120 format tapes. The container labels are QICAA and QICAB. BRMS selects QICAA over QICAB if both are available. However, assume that you have another container class that holds 20 QIC120 cartridges (QIC120BIG), and that a container (QICAC) in this class is available. Even if the save uses 20 cartridges, BRMS still selects QICAA first even though QICAC seems more appropriate.

Media Slotting

Use the media slotting technique when you want to file and track media by slot number. You can use this technique at all of your storage locations, at selected ones, or not at all. You can indicate media slotting use on the Add or Change Storage Location displays.

The default value in the *Media slotting* field is *NO. If you want BRMS to track volumes in a media slotting system, you must change the value in the *Media slotting* field to *YES.

BRMS automatically updates the slot number at storage locations that use the media slotting technique. When BRMS moves media to that location, it assigns it a slot number. You must ensure that you move the volumes to the allocated slot.

BRMS automatically updates the slot numbers for containers that are processed through a move command. If you want to use the media slotting technique for volumes in a container, BRMS assigns the media in the container and the container itself the same slot number.

Note: A volume and a container take one slot each.

Moving Your Media

This section provides information on how you can use BRMS to track the movement of your media from one location to another. You can use move policies to create move patterns for selected media. You can then set move-related commands to issue the move patterns that you specify in the move policy. BRMS can also help you to verify that the move patterns took place as scheduled.

To view the move management options available in BRMS, take the following steps:

1. Type GO BRMMEDMOV at a command line and press Enter. This takes you to the Move Management menu.

Move Management

Select one of the following:

- 1. Run media movement
- 2. Verify media to be moved
- 3. Print media movement report
- 1 4. Work with move policies
- 5. Work with calendars

You can find information on each of these options in this section.

Move Policies

The move policy determines the sequence and duration of storage retention and movement for media and containers. Move policies also indicate how you want BRMS to verify media movement activities.

Use move policies to create move patterns for volumes that contain active media. Each move policy is tied to a media policy which, in its turn, is tied to a save item such as a library or control group. You can initiate the move pattern by using either the Move Media using BRM (MOVMEDBRM) or the Start Maintenance using BRM (STRMNTBRM) command. You can process both of these commands automatically by using a job scheduler.

BRMS comes with a default move policy called OFFSITE. The OFFSITE policy tracks the movement of media to the VAULT location, where it remains until expiration (*EXP). You can change the OFFSITE move policy and can also create additional move policies to track a variety of move patterns.

To create, change or delete a move policy, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKPCYBRM at a command line and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Move Policy display.
2. To create a move policy, type a 1 (Create) in the *Opt* field and a name for the new policy in the *Policy* field. Then press Enter.

Work with Move Policies

RCHAS400

Position to Starting characters

Type options, press Enter
1=Create 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Delete 5=Display

Opt	Policy	Text
1	0499PAY	April 1999 payroll information
	OFFSITE	Entry created by BRM configuration

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=System policy F12=Cancel

3. This example creates a move policy that is called 0499PAY. This move policy governs the movement of your April, 1999, payroll information throughout its lifecycle.

Create Move Policy		RCHAS400
Move policy	0499PAY	
Home location	*SYSPCY	Name, *SYSPCY, *ORIGIN, F4 list
Use container	*NO	*YES, *NO
Verify moves	*YES	*YES, *NO
Calendar for working days . . .	*ALLDAYS	Name, *ALLDAYS, F4 for list
Calendar for move days	*ALLDAYS	Name, *ALLDAYS, F4 for list
Text		
Type choices, press Enter.		
Seq	Location	Duration
1	COMPROOM	5
2	VAULT	*EXP
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel		

4. To set up a move pattern for this volume, take the following steps:
 - a. In the *Seq* field, specify the order in which you want BRMS to move the media to this location.
 - b. In the *Location* field, indicate the name of the location to which you want BRMS to move the media.
 - c. In the *Duration* field, indicate the length of time you want to store the media in that location. Possible values for this field include number of days, a specific date, *EXP (until expiration), *PERM (permanent), and file groups. You can find more information on file groups later in this section.
 The move pattern in this example instructs BRMS to track the movement of the 0499PAY media from the COMPROOM, where resides for 5 days, to the VAULT, where it remains until it expires. After the volume expires, you should return it to its home location.
 - d. After you design the move pattern, you need to attend to the remaining parameters on the move policy. Following are brief summaries of the key fields that remain on the Create Move Policy display:
 - The *Home location* parameter specifies the location where BRMS returns media after its move cycle completes. Typically, this is your onsite media inventory location. The default value for this parameter is *SYSPCY, which instructs BRMS to look at the system policy for the home location. The default home location in the system policy is *HOME, which you can change if needed.
 In addition, you can now use a new value (*ORIGIN) that was created especially for the move process. *ORIGIN instructs BRMS to return expired volumes backup to the location at which the backup occurred. You can also press F4 to select from a list of different locations.
 - In the *Verify moves* field, specify whether you want BRMS to verify media movement activities or whether you want to perform this task yourself. The default value for this field is *YES, which means that you want to verify media movement yourself. BRMS supplies you with the Verify Media Movement display, which assists you in determining whether the move schedule created in the move policy completed successfully. You can access the Verify Media Moves display from the Move Management menu. *NO means that BRMS bypasses move verification and updates location information immediately. It is recommended that you use the default value (*YES), especially if you use media libraries.

- Use the *Calendar for working days* parameter to specify which days you want to use to calculate the amount of time that media stays at each location.
 - Use the *Calendar for move days* parameter to specify the days of week that you can move media from one location to another.
- e. After you review and change the remaining parameters as needed, press Enter to store the move policy with BRMS.
 - f. Then press Enter to apply your changes.

Note: If you specify APPEND(*YES) in your backup policy, be sure that the move policy keeps the tape onsite for a sufficient number of days.

Movement by File Groups

The previous example shows duration that is specified in days. Another method of utilizing move policies is by using file groups.

A file group consists of all of the volumes that belong to a control group. For example, suppose that BRMS processes a control group that is called MAINBKU on Monday and uses 10 tapes. The media policy associated with the control group contains a move policy that is called VERSION. This move policy uses file group version support. BRMS considers the 10 tapes a file group and moves them together as specified by the move policy VERSION. Each time you process the MAINBKU group, BRMS creates a new file group.

Control Group	File Group Relative Number	Creation Date	
MAINBKU	1	5/1/99	(newest)
MAINBKU	2	4/1/99	
MAINBKU	3	3/1/99	
MAINBKU	4	2/1/99	
MAINBKU	5	1/1/99	(oldest)

As you can see, the lowest numbered file group corresponds to the most recent creation date. The highest numbered file group corresponds to oldest creation date.

BRMS cannot predict when a volume that exists as a file group will move next. File group movement depends on when BRMS creates the next file group, not on a specific date. For this reason, you cannot use file group movement with specific date, or days type of duration in the same move policy.

The following display shows a sample move policy that is called VERSION.

```

                                Display Move Policy

Move Policy . . . . . : VERSION
Home location . . . . . : TAPELIBR
Use container . . . . . : *NO
Verify moves . . . . . : *NO
Calendar for working days : *ALLDAYS
Calendar for move days   : *ALLDAYS
Text . . . . . : User created move policy using file groups

      Seq      Location      Duration
      10      REMOTE A      *GRP 001
      20      REMOTE B      *GRP 002
      30      REMOTE C      *GRP 003

Press Enter to continue.
```

This move policy tracks the file group by file through a number of storage locations.

Movement by Control Group

You can also move media by control group. Control groups consist of groups of libraries, objects, folders, spooled files, and other types of data that share common characteristics. You can create move patterns for control groups in the move policy that is associated with the media policy for that control group. You can find more detailed information on control groups in Chapter 7, “Tailoring Your Backup”.

To use a move policy with a control group, take the following steps:

1. Create the move policy, including the move pattern, that you want to use with the control group.
2. Go to the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display that is associated with the control group you want to move. Note the name of the media policy you use in the control group.
3. Use the WRKPCYBRM *MED command to get to the Work with Media Policies display.
4. Type a 2 (Change) in front of the media policy that is associated with the control group you want to move and press Enter.
5. Put your cursor in the field next to the *Move policy* parameter. Press F4 for a list of available move policies.
6. Select the move policy you just created for the control group you want to move.
7. Press Enter to save your changes and to return to the Work with Media Policies display.

BRMS tracks the movement of the media on which it saved the control group through the move pattern you created in the move policy.

Working with the Move Management Calendars

Use calendars to define groups of days or dates to use in conjunction with the move pattern that is established in your move policy. There are two calendar parameters on the move policy display: the *Calendar for working days* and the *Calendar for move days*. Together, these calendars determine the days of week that you allow media to move.

You can add, change, remove, display, or copy a calendar from the Work with Calendars display. To get there, take the following steps:

1. Type GO BRMMEDMOV at a command line and press Enter.
2. Select option 5 (Work with Calendars).

Work with Calendars

Position to _____ Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
1=Add 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Remove 5=Display

Opt	Calendar	Text
—	HOLIDAY	Holiday calendar
—	WORKING	Working day calendar

Establishing a Calendar for Working Days: Working days might be Monday through Friday or any specific day designation you want to make. Suppose that,

on a move policy, you indicate M-F as working days, and that you indicate 10 days as the duration period for the move. In this case, the media actually stays in that location for 14 days. That is because BRMS does not include the weekend days as working days.

Establishing a Calendar for Move Days: Once you establish the working days, you can then establish a calendar for move days. Move days are days on which you allow media to move. For example, suppose that the calendar for working days is Monday through Friday. A tape arrives in a location on Wednesday and will remain there for 9 days. You scheduled the tape to move to its next location on a Tuesday. However, if the move calendar allows for media movement only on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, then BRMS indicates that the move happened on the second Wednesday. This process assumes that the Wednesday scheduled for media movement is not an exception day in a reference calendar. It also assumes that BRMS processes the STRMNTBRM command on that Wednesday. You can find more information on how to use the STRMNTBRM command in the following section.

Defining Exceptions to Another Calendar: You can use also calendars to define exceptions to another calendar, which BRMS calls a reference calendar. For example, you could define a holiday calendar as a reference calendar to a working day calendar. The holiday calendar defines holidays on which media movement would not occur, even if the day of the week is a working day.

Specifying Calendar Dates: When you add a calendar, you can specify dates in the following manner:

- A specific date such as 12/25/99 (or 122599).
- A generic date such as 12/25 (or 1225).
- A special value such as *MON, *TUE, and so on.

For each date or day entry that you make, you must select whether to include or exclude this entry from a calendar. BRMS excludes entries unless you specifically include them. For instance, if you set up a calendar with entries *MON, *TUE, *WED, *THU, and *FRI, with each entry included (*INC), then any day is a candidate move day for this calendar. You would exclude Saturday and Sunday. Conversely, if you set up a calendar with entries *SAT and *SUN, specifying *EXC for these entries, you could exclude all of the other days of the week.

Note: Calendar names are user-defined, can be up to 10 characters in length, and must adhere to iSeries naming conventions.

Initiating Movement

There are several ways to initiate movement in BRMS. To process media movement automatically, and as specified in the move policy, use Move Media using BRM (MOVMEDBRM) command or Start Maintenance for BRM (STRMNTBRM) command. If you want to move an individual volume, take option 8 (Move) from the WRKMEDBRM display.

Initiating Movement with the MOVMEDBRM Command

The MOVMEDBRM command processes the move patterns that you set up in the move policy. You can place the MOVMEDBRM command on a job scheduler to process scheduled movement automatically, or you can process the command manually, on an individual or as needed basis. To process media movement by using the MOVMEDBRM command, take the following steps:

1. Type MOVMEDBRM at a command line and press Enter.

Move Media using BRM (MOVMEDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Move policy	*PAYROLL	*ALL, OFFSITE, TEST
From location	*ALL	Name, *ALL, *HOME
Container	*ALL	Name, *ALL
Media class	*ALL	Name, *ALL
System name	*ALL	
File group	*ALL	*ALL, *NONE, *BKUGRP, *ARCG...
File group type	*ALL	*ALL, *NONE, *BKU, *ARC

F3=Exit

F4=Prompt

F5=Refresh

F12=Cancel

F13=How to use this display

F24=More keys

Bottom

- Indicate the move policy whose pattern you want to process through this command. If you do not know the name of the policy you want to process, press F4 to prompt a list of available move policies.
- Review and change the other parameters as needed.
- Press Enter to process the command.

Initiating Movement with the STRMNTBRM Command

Another way you can process media movement automatically is by using the Start Maintenance for BRM (STRMNTBRM) command. The STRMNTBRM command performs a variety of cleanup tasks that enable your operations to run more efficiently. You should schedule this command to run daily after all of your backups have completed. If you change the *Run media movement* parameter on the STRMNTBRM command to *YES, the STRMNTBRM command processes the MOVMEDBRM command after it completes its cleanup tasks. By running the MOVMEDBRM command through the STRMNTBRM command you save yourself an extra scheduling task.

To process media movement through the STRMNTBRM command, take the following steps:

- Type STRMNTBRM at a command line and press Enter.

```

Start Maintenance for BRM (STRMNTBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Expire media . . . . . *YES          *YES, *NO
Remove media information:
  Media contents . . . . . *EXP        *EXP, *REUSE, *NONE
  Object level detail . . . . *MEDCON  1-9999, *MEDCON
Remove migration information . . 180     1-9999, *NONE
Run media movement . . . . . *NO       *NO, *YES
Remove log entries:
  Type . . . . . *ALL          *ALL, *NONE, *ARC, *BKU, *M...
  From date . . . . . *BEGIN    Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
  To date . . . . . 90         Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
Run cleanup operations . . . . *YES    *YES, *NO
Retrieve volume statistics . . . *YES    *YES, *NO
Audit system media . . . . . *NETGRP
+ for more values
Change BRM journal receivers . . *YES    *YES, *NO
Print expired media report . . . *YES    *YES, *NO
More...

F3=Exit   F4=Prompt   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel   F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

```

2. At the *Run media movement* parameter, change the value to *YES. This instructs BRMS to run the Move Media using BRM (MOVMEDBRM) command.
3. Review and change the other parameters as needed.
4. Press Enter to process the command.

For more information on how to use the STRMNTBRM command, see Chapter 9, “Daily Maintenance in BRMS” on page 163.

Verifying Movement

BRMS can verify media movement automatically, or you can verify it manually. You can specify the option you choose at the *Verify Moves* parameter on the Change Move Policy display:

- Specifying *YES at this parameter means that you intend to verify the media movement yourself, using the BRMS Verify Media Moves display to assist you.
- Specifying *NO at this parameter means that BRMS bypasses the verification step. Since BRMS cannot actually see that the media is in the correct location, it instead assumes that the move took place and updates the location information accordingly.

To get to the Verify Media Moves display, from which you can manually verify media movement, take the following steps:

1. Type VFYMOVBRM at a command line and press Enter.

```

Verify Media Moves

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to verify all.
1=Verify  4=Cancel move  9=Verify and work with media

  Opt  Volume  Creation  Expiration  Move  Container
      Serial   Date    Date      Location Date
  ---  ---
1_    T00001  7/06/99  7/30/99   *HOME  7/14/94  CONTBLUE
      BRMST1  7/06/99  7/30/99   *HOME  7/14/94  CONTBLUE
      T00003  7/06/99  7/30/99   *HOME  7/14/94  CONTGREEN
      T00004  7/06/99  7/30/99   *HOME  7/14/94  CONTGREEN
      T00005  7/06/99  7/08/99   *HOME  7/14/94  CONTGREEN

```

2. Type a 1 (verify) in front of the volume whose movement you want to verify and press Enter. This takes you to the next Verify Media Moves display.

Verify Media Moves RCHAS400

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to verify all.
1=Verify 4=Cancel move 9=Verify and work with media

Opt	Volume Serial	Creation Date	Expiration Date	Location	Move Date	Container
1	BRMST1	11/03/99	*VER 002	MLD02	10/21/98	*NONE

More...

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F16=Verify all

3. Review the information on this display that pertains to the media whose movement you want to verify. If the location and move date information are correct, type a 1 (Verify) next to the volume.
4. Press Enter to process the verification information.
5. Press F3 to exit and save your changes.

You should verify media movement manually until you are certain that the move patterns are completing successfully.

Printing Movement-related Reports

Following are brief summaries of the movement-related reports you can run through BRMS. You can access these reports by entering the command name at a command line, or through the Move Management menu.

- *Option 1: Run Media Movement (MOVMEDBRM)* creates a Volume Movement Report that lists all media volumes currently eligible for movement. This report also displays the current move schedule for these volumes.
- *Option 3: Print Media Movement (PRTMOVBRM)* creates the Media Movement Report, which serves as a picking list for volumes to be moved from one storage location to another. PRTMOVBRM allows you to print the Media Movement Report based on a specified date range. You can also print the reports by verification status and storage location. The report shows all volumes that have moved, the "to" and "from" locations, the move policy for each volume, and the move date. Although this report is optional, it is recommended because it provides additional detail.

Tracking Your Media

BRMS provides several methods for tracking the status of your media. The most comprehensive of these is an online media inventory that manages and tracks volumes and volume information. You can also generate status reports based on the media inventory contents. Another way is to duplicate the volumes that contain your most critical saves and store them in a safe place. You can also track media by volume label.

Working with the BRMS Media Inventory

The Work with Media (WRKMEDBRM) display is the primary display for viewing and changing your up-to-date media inventory. From this display, you can view

media class, move status, location, duplication status, and volume creation and expiration dates by volume. You can also use this display to add, change or remove media from the media inventory.

BRMS tracks all operations to tape, except Save Storage (SAVSTG). If BRMS uses a volume that is not in the BRMS media inventory, it logs the event, and the tape operation continues. BRMS does not record volume content information for those volumes not in the media inventory.

BRMS can track volume content at the user-specified level of detail. BRMS can track volume content at the library level, object level, or member level for any enrolled volume.

To get to the Work with Media display, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKMEDBRM at a command line and press Enter.
2. The WRKMEDBRM display shows the status of your media by volume ID and includes information such as upcoming move dates and current location information.

Work With Media

System: RCHAS400

Position to Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.

1=Add 2=Change 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Work with serial set 7=Expire

8=Move 10=Reinitialize ...

Opt	Volume Serial	Expired	Creation Date	Expiration Date	Location	Move Date	Media Class	Dup Sts
	DRB001	*YES	12/01/98	*NONE	VAULT	12/01/98	FMT3570	
5	DRB002	*YES	12/01/98	*NONE	VAULT	12/01/98	FMT3570	
	DRB003	*NO	12/15/98	01/01/99	VAULT	12/19/98	FMT3570	
	DRB004	*NO	12/15/98	01/01/99	COMPROOM	12/20/98	FMT3570	

More...

Parameters or command:

==>

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F11=Volume system F12=Cancel F17=Top

F18=Bottom F23=More options

3. In this example, you want to see a more detailed view of volume DRB002. To do that, type a 5 (Display) in front of the volume you want to review and press Enter.

Display Media Attributes

Volume serial	:	DRB003
Media class	:	FMT3570
Expiration date	:	*NONE
Previous location	:	*NONE
Previous slot number	:	0
Current location	:	VAULT
Last moved date	:	12/01/98
Scheduled location	:	*NONE
Scheduled move date	:	*NONE
Container ID	:	*NONE
Move policy	:	*NONE
Creation date	:	12/01/98
Secure volume	:	*NO
Beginning volume	:	DRB003
Slot number	:	000001
System	:	APPN.RCHAS400

More...

Press Enter to continue.

F3=Exit F12=Cancel

4. After completing your review, press Enter to return to the Work with Media display. From that display, you can review and change other volumes as needed.

Printing Media Status Reports

To print a report based on the information contained on the Work with Media display, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKMEDBRM at a command line and press F4 to prompt the display.
2. Change the *Output* parameter to *PRINT and press Enter. This generates a comprehensive media inventory report.

Use the Print Media using BRM (PRTMEDBRM) command to print either of two inventory-related reports that contain information not found in the WRKMEDBRM report.

- The *Media Threshold* report identifies volumes that have equaled or exceeded the usage limits.
- The *Media Statistics* report contains all other volume statistics, such as the create and expiration dates of the current files on the volume. You can specify that the report show all of the volumes including exceptions, or just exceptions.

Duplicating Media

Use the Duplicate Media using BRM (DUPMEDBRM) command to copy the contents of a volume or set of volumes. You can copy a single volume, a list of volumes, or a media set.

Note: The OBJDTL parameter of the DUPMEDBRM command is ignored. Duplicated media will always result in duplicated object detail, if object detail information is available for the duplicated items on the input media. The object detail of the duplicated media is not actually copied, but is "keyed" to the original saved object detail to minimize the storage BRMS requires to maintain the duplicated detail information.

Before you use the DUPMEDBRM command, however, keep the following information in mind:

- You must have two devices to use this command. If the devices are shared non-MLB devices, BRMS varies the devices on for you. If your device is not a shared device, you must vary it on.
- The media or media set that you are copying must be members of the media inventory.
- When you process the DUPMEDBRM command, BRMS does not automatically duplicate the media information to the duplicated volume. To remedy this situation, follow the steps in the Saving Media Information for Duplicate Volumes section of this chapter.
- When supplying volume serial numbers to the DUPMEDBRM commands as values for the *To volume identifier* field, you must provide more expired volume serial numbers to receive output copies. This is in case of any length variations between physical volumes.
- You cannot duplicate saved items saved to TSM servers using the DUPMEDBRM command. Duplication of TSM server media is managed by the TSM administrator using TSM operations.

Notes:

1. The tape devices do not have to support the same media classes. You specify the media policy in the DUPMEDBRM command.
2. To use DUPMEDBRM to copy a file group, the output media assumes the group number of the input media. An exception to this is a SETMEDBRM command that overrides the value for file group and type for the output volumes.
3. The easiest approach to duplicate volumes of a parallel set is to mark the volumes for duplication then use VOL(*SEARCH) on the DUPMEDBRM command.

Copying Volumes with DUPMEDBRM

To use the DUPMEDBRM command, take the following steps:

1. Type DUPMEDBRM at a command line and press F4 to prompt the display.
2. At the Duplicate Media using BRMS (DUPMEDBRM) display, press F9 to prompt the remaining parameters.

Duplicate Media using BRM (DUPMEDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

From volume identifier	VOL001	Character value, *SEARCH...
File group	*ALL	*ALL, *BKUGRP, *ARCGRP, *SY...
File group type	*ALL	*ALL, *BKU, *ARC
From media class	*ALL	*ALL, FMT3570, FMT3570E...
From device		TAPMLBBRM, TAPMLB01, TAPMLB02.
To device		TAPMLBBRM, TAPMLB01, TAPMLB02.
From sequence number:		
Starting file sequence number	*FIRST	1-16777215, *ALL, *FIRST
Ending file sequence number .	*LAST	1-16777215, *ONLY, *LAST
To sequence number	1	1, *END
To media policy	*SYSPCY	*SYSPCY, *NONE, ARCHIVAL...
Input volume list	*VOL	Character value, *VOL, *SET
+ for more values		
From device end option	*REWIND	*REWIND, *UNLOAD
To volume identifier	*MOUNTED	Character value, *MOUNTED
+ for more values		
More...		
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display		
F24=More keys		

3. The *From volume identifier* parameter works in conjunction with the *Input volume list* parameter to identify the volumes to be duplicated.

- To duplicate a single volume, even if it is a member of a set, specify *LIST for the *From volume identifier* prompt, and the volume to be duplicated for the *Input volume list* prompt.
- To duplicate a volume set, specify a volume identifier of any volume in the set for the *From volume identifier* prompt, and either *SET or *VOL for the *Input volume list* prompt.

Note: You must use this method when duplicating the volumes of a media set in a batch job.

An alternative method would be to type the name of any volume in the media set in the *From volume identifier* parameter, then press the Enter key. BRMS will find all other volumes in the set and list these in the *Input volume list* parameter.

- To duplicate a list of volumes, specify *LIST for the *From volume identifier* prompt, and the volumes to be duplicated for the *Input volume list* prompt using the + field to provide the additional fields in which to list the volumes you want BRMS to duplicate.
 - To duplicate all volumes marked for duplication, specify *SEARCH for the *From volume identifier* prompt, and either *SET or *VOL for the *Input volume list* prompt.
4. In the *From device* field, specify the name of the device from which BRMS will make the duplicate. This device contains the original volume.
 5. In the *To device* field, specify the name of the device that contains the volume that will receive the duplicated information.
 6. Review the other parameters carefully and change as needed.
 7. Press Enter to process the command.

Saving Media Information for Duplicate Volumes

Take the following steps to save media information for duplicate volumes:

1. Run the BRMS backup on the original volume and specify that you want to save the media information.
2. Create the duplicate volumes with the DUPMEDBRM command.
3. Run media movement by using the Move Media using BRM (MOVMEDBRM) command so that the two sets of volumes (original and duplicate) go to different locations.
4. Perform another save of the media information by using the Save Media Information using BRM (SAVMEDIBRM) command.
5. Move the volumes that SAVMEDIBRM command creates in the previous step to the same location as the duplicate volumes.
6. Create the recovery report by specifying the location of the duplicate volumes in the STRRCYBRM LOC(duplicate_volume_location).

External Label Printing

BRMS provides the following options for printing and customizing media labels.

How to Specify Label Printing

There are two ways to print external labels:

1. *From the Work with Media Classes display (WRKCLSBRM):* At the *Mark for label print* field on the WRKCLSBRM display, you can instruct BRMS to mark a volume for label printing when a write operation occurs (*WRITE). Or you can instruct BRMS to mark the volume for label printing when media movement occurs (*MOVE). You can specify any one of three label sizes in the media class.

Note: The *Text* field uses the current information in the media information for that volume. The text information in the field reflects the text information from the most recent control group that was processed to create media information for that volume.

2. **From the Work with Media display (WRKMEDBRM):** To mark an individual volume for label printing, select option 11 (Mark for label print) on the Work with Media display.

Note: To create label output for all volumes that BRMS marks for label print, select option 7 (Confirm media label print) on the Media Management menu.

Customizing Label Printing

The source for the three printer files that BRMS uses to create the media labels exists on your system after you install BRMS. The QA1ASRC file in the QUSRBRM library contains the source. There are three members: QP1A1LP, QP1A2LP, and QP1A3LP. These three members can print 6lpi, 8lpi, and 9lpi, respectively.

To change the format of your printer labels, edit the source member that corresponds to the labels that you selected for the media. For example, you can edit with SEU (source entry utility), RLU (report layout utility), or PDM (programming development manager). First you must give the members the correct member type of printer file (PTRF). You can do this within PDM when you are working with members.

When changing the source, do not change the record name, any of the field names, or the order of each field. The print programs depend on these named items being present. You can change the position.

You must add QUSRBRM to your library list and then compile the printer file to the library QBRM. Be sure to specify level check (*NO) on the Create Printer File (CRTPRTF) command.

```
Volume serial . . . . . : ZZZ003
Creation date . . . . . : 3/08/99
Expiration date . . . . : 4/07/99
Location . . . . . : *HOME
Container . . . . . : *NONE
Text . . . . . : Monthly general ledger summary
```

Your customized labels should now print successfully.

Note: OS/400 uses certain volume identifiers for special purposes. You should avoid using these volume identifiers in your volume labeling. Volume identifiers to avoid are:

- TAPXXX
- NLTXXX
- BLKXXX
- CLNXXX
- ERRXXX
- SLTXXX
- IMPXXX

Chapter 7. Tailoring Your Backup

In Chapter 3, you learned how to use BRMS-configured defaults to perform an immediate backup of your entire system. This chapter provides detailed information on how to use a variety of BRMS tools and techniques to design and implement a customized backup strategy your company.

The kind of backup operation you implement has a significant impact on the quality and success of your recovery operations. Therefore, it is important that you plan your backup strategy well. This chapter begins with a section on things to consider when you design your backup strategy. You should also be familiar with the more comprehensive planning recommendations that are presented in the *Backup and Recovery*.

Many of the functions described in this chapter are available as part of a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

Planning Considerations

There are several factors to keep in mind when planning your backup strategy. You need, for example, to have an accurate understanding of the user skill levels at your site. You must also be familiar with the kinds of physical resources that are available. The two most critical factors you need to consider, however, are data and timing: what to save, and when and how to save it. The following questions can assist you in designing an effective backup plan:

- How much data do I need to save on a daily basis? A weekly basis? Monthly?
- What kinds of data do I need to save at these times?
- Given the amount and kinds of data I need to save, what do my save windows look like? How much time do I have available each day and week to perform the necessary backups? At what times of the day and week are those save windows available?
- What kind of saves can I perform that will allow users to continue using the system while the saves process?
- What are my most critical applications, the ones that need to be operational as soon as possible during disaster recovery? How can we save our most critical data and applications in such a way as to be able to recover them quickly and easily?

Think about the questions above as you read through this chapter. Consider the different options available to you and the ways in which you can use them. For example, can you put some of your most critical data in a backup list, thereby effectively separating it from less critical data? When can you effectively use the save-while-active feature, which shortens your save window and allows users back on the system sooner? Does your company have the resources to perform parallel saves, which shorten your save window by processing large objects on multiple devices at the same time? You may want to write down your thoughts on these and other questions as you read through this chapter.

BRMS supports backup and recovery of objects on auxiliary storage pool devices (auxiliary storage pools 33–255). You should review Chapter 15, “Backup and

Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices” on page 227 if you are using auxiliary storage pool devices to assure you are getting a complete backup of your user data on these devices.

When saving directory and files, you should unmount any mounted user-defined file systems (UDFSs) prior to the save to assure the objects in the mounted over directories are saved. UDFSs are automatically unmounted on auxiliary storage pool devices when the system is in restricted state. UDFSs on the system (1) or basic user auxiliary storage pools (2–32) need to be explicitly unmounted. Any unmounted UDFSes need to be remounted after the save.

The BRMS System Policy

While the backup policy contains numerous instructions on how to perform your backups, the system policy also contains several values that bear directly on your backups. The system policy provides process information to BRMS at the highest level of the policy structure that is described in Chapter 1, “Introduction to Backup Recovery and Media Services for iSeries (BRMS)” on page 3. System policy values are particularly important because they establish the default values in several functional areas. Thus, unless you change them in another policy or in a control group, BRMS applies these values to your backup activities. Following is a list of the backup-related fields for which the system policy provides default values:

- Media policy type
- Devices
- Media location
- Media class
- Interactive user status.
- Presentation controls designating backup type (full or incremental) and first day of the week.

Understanding the System Policy

To review system policy parameters, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKPCYBRM *SYS at a command line and press Enter.
2. Select option 1 (Display or change system policy) from the System Policy menu.

Change System Policy

RCHAS400

Type choices, press Enter.

Media policy	FULL	Name, F4 for list
Devices	TAPMLB01	Name, F4 for list
Home location for media	TAPMLB01	Name, F4 for list
Media class	FMT3570	Name, F4 for list
Sign off interactive users	*NO	*YES, *NO
Sign off limit	30	0-999 minutes
Output queue	*PRTF	Name, *PRTF
Library		Name, *LIBL
Day start time	0:00:00	Time
Media monitor	*YES	*YES, *NO
Shared inventory delay	60	30-9999 seconds
Auto enroll media	*NO	*NO, *YES
Trace	*NO	*NO, *YES
Default usage.	*YES	*NO, *YES

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel

Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on the system policy display. These are the parameters that you are most likely to change.

The default *Media policy* that is configured at installation time and used by the system policy is called FULL. The FULL media policy instructs BRMS to use full backups with a 35 day retention period. Another BRMS-configured option is INCR, which instructs BRMS to use incremental backups with a 14 day retention period. You can also use the Save System (SAVSYS) special value, which instructs BRMS to retain media for 1725 days (5 years) after a system save. You can change the default media policy to another BRMS-configured policy or to one that you created. To do so, press F4 from the *Media policy* field and select from the available list.

V4R4M0	Change System Policy	RCHAS400
Type choices, press Enter.		
Media policy	FULL	Name, F4 for list
Devices	TAPMLB01	Name, F4 for list
:: Select Media Policy : st		
Home location for media	:	: st
Media class	Type options, press Enter.	: st
Sign off interactive users	1=Select	:
Sign off limit	Opt Policy	:
Output queue	ARCHIVAL	:
Library	FULL	:
Day start time	INCR	:
Media monitor	SAVSYS	:
Shared inventory delay	TAPMLBS	:
Auto enroll media	:	Bottom :
Trace	F9=Work with media policies	:
Default usage.	F12=Cancel	:
:: F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refre :		

The device name listed in the *Devices* field refers to the default device that is selected by BRMS at the time of installation. If you have more than one device attached to your system, BRMS uses the fastest and most automated one that is attached to your system. If you do not want to use the default device, you can select F4 from this prompt to select from a list of additional devices. The devices in this list include other devices that are attached to your system at time of installation, and any others you add after that.

The *Home location for media* field specifies the onsite home location for media that is managed by BRMS. *HOME is the default value for this prompt. BRMS also provides an offsite default location, called VAULT. To change the default value, place your cursor in the *Home location for media* field and press F4 to prompt a list of locations.

The *Media class* field specifies the default media class that is used by BRMS. BRMS uses media classes to describe different types of media. BRMS bases its definitions on characteristics such as tape density, capacity, label information, error allowance, and shared status. Be sure that the media class you use is compatible with the device in the same policy. If you do not want to use the BRMS default location, you can select from a list of locations by pressing F4 from this parameter.

The default value for the *Sign off interactive users* parameter is *NO. If you select *YES, BRMS sends warning messages at the following intervals:

- If the time left is 60 minutes, the message appears every 10 minutes.

- If the time left is 10 minutes, the message appears every 2 minutes.
- If the time left is 1 minute, the message appears as the minute begins.

However, there is no signal that indicates when users have signed back on the system. If this is a problem, you might want to consider stopping the subsystems. It is recommended that you keep the value set to *NO at this parameter and manage signoff of the interactive users from the backup control group attributes .

You will want to exempt specific users from being signed off, specifically the user signed onto the console monitor. For more information on the console monitor refer to Console Monitoring. You would use option 2 from the BRMSYSPCY menu to specify any signoff exceptions.

Changing the Presentation Controls

In addition to the parameters on the system policy, you can find other system-related prompts on the additional displays available from the System Policy menu display. For example, you may want to change the first day of the week designation in the Change Presentation Controls display. To get there, select option 5 (Change presentation controls) from the System Policy menu.

Change Presentation Controls
RCHAS400

Type choices, press Enter.

Character representing		
full backup	F	Character
Character representing		
incremental backup	I	Character
Character representing		
general activity	*	Character
First day of week	SUN	SUN, MON, TUE...

F3=Exit
F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

The default value for the *First day of week* parameter is SUN. You may want to change this value to MON, or to another value that better reflects the start of your work week.

The BRMS Backup Policy

The backup policy contains the most numerous and important instructions on how BRMS will perform your backups. The key parameters on this display provide BRMS with the following information:

- Type of backup (full or incremental).
- Days on which to perform full or incremental backups.
- Type of incremental backup (cumulative or noncumulative).
- Whether BRMS should save your access paths during save processing.
- Ability to append data to the end of existing files or begin a new volume as needed.

Changing the Backup Policy

Perform the following steps to get to the Backup Policy display:

1. Type GO WRKPCYBRM *BKU at a command line and press Enter.

2. Take option 1 (Display or change backup policy) from the Backup Policy menu.

Change Backup Policy		RCHAS400
Type choices, press Enter.		
Media policy for full backups	*SYSPCY	Name, F4 for list
Media policy for incremental backups	*SYSPCY	Name, F4 for list
Backup devices	*SYSPCY	Name, F4 for list
Default weekly activity	FFFFFFF	SMTWTF(S/I)
Incremental type	*CUML	*CUML, *INCR
Sign off interactive users	*SYSPCY	*YES, *NO, *SYSPCY
Sign off limit	*SYSPCY	0-999 minutes, *SYSPCY
Save journal files when saving changed objects	*NO	*YES, *NO
Automatically backup media information	*LIB	*LIB, *OBJ, *NONE
		More...
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F9=System policy		
F12=Cancel		

Change Backup Policy		RCHAS400
Type choices, press Enter.		
Save access paths	*YES	*YES, *NO
Save contents of save files	*YES	*YES, *NO
Data compression	*DEV	*DEV, *YES, *NO
Data compaction	*DEV	*DEV, *NO
Target release	*CURRENT	*CURRENT, *PRV
Clear	*NONE	*NONE, *ALL, *AFTER
Object pre-check	*NO	*YES, *NO
Append to media	*NO	*YES, *NO
End of tape option	*UNLOAD	*UNLOAD, *REWIND, *LEAVE
Use optimum block size	*DEV	*DEV, *YES, *NO
IPL after backup	*SYSPCY	*YES, *NO, *SYSPCY
How to end	*SYSPCY	*CNTRL, *IMMED, *SYSPCY
Delay time, if *CNTRL	*SYSPCY	Seconds, *NOLIMIT
Restart after power down	*SYSPCY	*YES, *NO, *SYSPCY
IPL source	*SYSPCY	*PANEL, A, B, *SYSPCY
		Bottom
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=System policy F12=Cancel		

As you can see, the backup policy shares several parameters with the system policy. You can override the shared prompts on an as-needed basis or to customize your backups as desired.

Following are brief descriptions of the parameters you are most likely to change:

The *Default weekly activity* value specifies the type of backup you want to perform each day of a seven-day week. For example, you might want BRMS to perform a full backup (F) on a Friday, and an incremental backup (I) on the other nights of the week. Or BRMS could perform a full backup every night. Leaving one of the days blank indicates that you do not want any backups performed on that day.

The *Incremental type* field allows you to specify the type of incremental backup you want BRMS to perform. To save all changes since the last full backup, specify *CUML in this field. To save changes since the last time BRMS performed an incremental save, specify *INCR. CUML saves make recovery activities easier and

shorter, while INCR saves can make your save windows shorter. IBM recommends that you keep the default (*CUML) to provide better protection for important data.

The *Save journal files while saving changed objects* field specifies whether to save changes to objects that you entered in a journal. The default for this value is *NO, which indicates reliance on journaled receivers to retrieve changes during the recovery. IBM recommends that you change this default to *YES for ease of use, and to reduce the number of recovery steps. You should be aware, however, that using *YES increases your save time. If *YES is specified, all journaled objects are saved, not just journaled files.

The *Automatically backup media information* parameter specifies the level at which you want BRMS to save media information. BRMS uses the media information to assist in the restore process. The default level is *LIB. Other options are *OBJ and *NONE. To retain media information at the object level, you should indicate that preference at this field, and also at the *Retain Object Detail* parameter (change value to *YES). The *Retain Object Detail* parameter is on the Edit Control Group Entries display. If you do not specify *OBJ in the *Automatically backup media information* field, and *YES in the *Retain object detail* field, BRMS may not save the information at *OBJ level for that job.

Note: Retaining object level detail can considerably increase your disk space, and your save and restore times. Keep in mind that you can restore an individual object without object level information if you know the name of the object. You can search your save history for the library using the Work with Media Information (WRKMEDIBRM) command. Normally, the default value, *LIB, is satisfactory for most customers.

The *Save access paths* field allows you to save the access paths associated with your logical and physical files. The value in this field indicates whether to save the logical file access paths that are dependent on the physical files BRMS saves. BRMS saves access paths only if you also save all of the members on which the access paths are built. BRMS sends informational messages that indicate the number of logical access paths that were saved with each physical file. All physical files on which the access paths are built must be in the same library. This parameter does not save logical objects; it only controls the saving of the access paths.

The default value established for the *Save access paths* field in the backup policy is *YES. You can use the save access paths default that is established here for a backup control group. Or you can override the value at the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display. IBM recommends that you save the access paths, even when it time-consuming. If you do not, you run the risk of lost system availability if you need to recover the file or the system after a disaster. Saving the access paths increases the save time, but decreases your recovery time, thereby increasing system availability. See the *Backup and Recovery* book for more information on the restoration of saved paths.

Note: If BRMS performs both full and incremental saves, it restores the full saves first, then the incremental. If you do not save your access paths, they will likely be rebuilt twice, once during the restore from the full backup and then again during the restore of the incremental saves. Use the Edit Rebuild Access Path command (EDTRBDAP) to perform the rebuild right after the restoration of the full save has completed. You can then restore the incremental saves and use the EDTRBDAP command to change the sequence number.

The *Append to media* value specifies whether to add files on current media with active files or to begin a new volume. If you specify *YES, BRMS writes the files to the volume that immediately follows the last active file. This allows you to maximize media usage. However, if you want to separate data on separate tapes, you should specify *NO.

When you select *YES at the *Append to media* prompt, BRMS takes the following steps to select the volumes to append:

- When selecting volumes for media libraries, BRMS determines if the last volume that is used can also be used for the append operation. The media class is the determining factor. When selecting volumes for stand-alone drives, BRMS issues message BRM1472, which nominates suitable candidate volumes.
- BRMS selects an active volume with attributes that match those in the appropriate media policy. BRMS uses the following to check if the volume is available for appending:
 - Same media class
 - Same storage location
 - Same expiration date
 - Owned by the requesting system
 - Same move policy
 - Same secure attribute
- If BRMS cannot find a volume that meets the criteria above, it selects a volume with an earlier expiration date, starting with the earliest.
- If BRMS cannot select a volume with an earlier expiration date, it selects an expired volume from the system.
- If BRMS fails to find a volume up to this point, it will try to select an expired volume from another system.
- BRMS will never select a volume that has been flagged in error (expiration of volume is *ERR).

While these are the parameters you are most likely to use, you should also be familiar with the other parameters and values on the backup policy display.

Note: In addition to the backup policy itself, you can also access the Work with items to omit from backup display from the Backup Policy menu. Because the items you are likely to omit are in control groups, you can find information on how to use this display in the following section.

Backup Control Groups

Control groups consist of groups of libraries, objects, folders, spooled files, and other types of data that share common characteristics. They also specify what kind of backup you want BRMS to perform, such as full, incremental, or cumulative-incremental. In addition, control groups specify the days on which the data will be processed, and the order in which the processing occurs. As such, control groups are the most important and useful element in the BRMS tailoring process.

Control groups can also provide flexibility in starting and stopping subsystems and holding job queues. Perhaps most importantly, control groups allow you to separate and save your most critical applications, which, in turn, allows you to more easily recover them. After you recover your most critical applications and data, you can recover the rest of your system. Your save strategy is likely to consist

of multiple backup control groups. “Sample Backup Scenarios: Working with Multiple Control Groups and Shared Devices” on page 122 provides specific information on how to design a backup strategy that uses multiple control groups.

The default control groups described in Chapter 3, “Backing Up Your Entire System” on page 15 do an excellent job of backing up your entire system. IBM recommends that you use these default backup groups, called *SYSTEM, or *SYSGRP and *BKUGRP, to perform your first backup and that, afterward, you leave them unchanged and use them on an as-needed basis. In addition, you can create some of your own control groups to better control related types of data.

Control groups often refer to, and work with, information contained in the function policies, for example, in the system and backup policies. Later in this section, you learn how to set control group attributes to override policy decisions.

Content of Control Groups

Consider grouping the following items together in a control group:

- All of the libraries that belong to a particular application.
- Selected objects, such as those that change on a regular basis (instead of using an *INCR save for the objects, which must identify the changed objects).
- Libraries that comprise a database network.
- Bytestream files that form part of the application data.
- Spooled files that you may need later (for example, invoices or pay slips).
- Items with similar retention periods.
- Critical applications that you need to restore before others.
- Non-critical applications or libraries that you can restore at a later time.

A backup control group can contain just one item or a group of items. Figure 8 provides an overview of the items you can place in a control group:

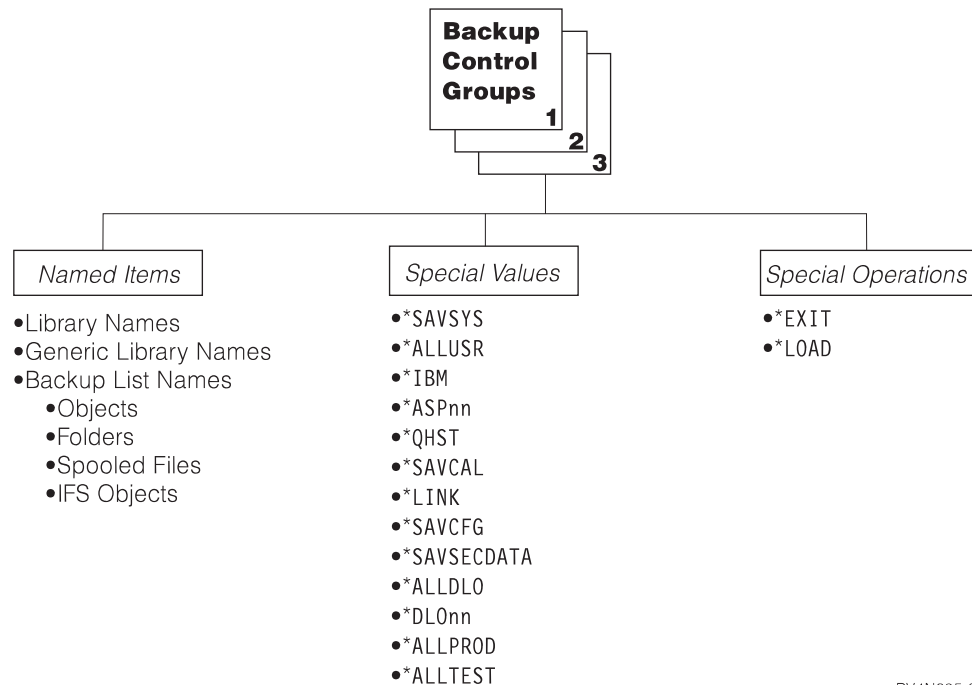


Figure 7. Items that can be saved in control groups

A control group might contain one library or several; one special value or several; configuration and security data; or special operations such as *LOAD or *EXIT. In short, you can save any of the items that are listed in Figure 8 in a control group. Grouped items may be of the same type (all libraries or all special values), or they may be of different types (for example, libraries, special values, and special operations).

Use special operations and special values as backup items to call system functions. They direct BRMS to perform pre-defined actions or to assume pre-defined values in a field. You can also use a backup list as an entry in a control group. Backup lists are particularly useful for separating critical data and applications for easier recovery. They also make it easier to manage groups of data. You can find detailed information on designing backup lists in a later section of this chapter.

The following list provides a short description of the special operations and special values that can be used as Backup Item entries in control groups. Please refer to the online help information for more information about these items.

Special Operations

***EXIT** Perform user command processing

***LOAD**
Begin a new tape

Special Values

***ALLDLO**
Saves all folders, documents, and mail in all ASPs

Note: *MAIL data is backed up as a separate item whenever a cumulative or incremental save of *ALLDLO is performed. BRMS issues a SAVDLO DLO(*MAIL) SAVTYPE(*FULL) for the *ALLDLO.

- *DLOnn**
Saves all folders, documents, and mail in a specified ASP
- *ALLUSR**
Save all user libraries
- *ALLPROD**
Save all *PROD type libraries
- *ALLTEST**
Save all *TEST type libraries
- *ASPnn**
Save a specified ASP (library type objects only)
- *IBM** Save all IBM libraries
- *LINK**
Save all objects not in /QSYS.LIB and /QDLS directories
- *QHST**
Save history information
- *SAVCAL**
Save calendar information
- *SAVCFG**
Save configuration
- *SAVSECDTA**
Save security data
- *SAVSYS**
Save the operating system

Using the *SAVSYS Special Value

To use *SAVSYS in a control group, you must first set up a media class using the Add Media Class display. Specify a value of *NO in the **Shared media** field. You must then add this media class to a new media policy. You can then change the attributes of the control group to use the new media policy that does not allow shared volumes. You must enroll media by using this media class so that you can perform the *SAVSYS operation. These considerations are important for the single system environment as well as the networked environment.

Note: The *SAVSYS special value processes the SAVSYS command. You should check the parameters that are set in BRMS as well as the default parameters in the SAVSYS command to assure that you save the proper information.

Special Considerations for Using *SAVSYS as a Backup Item

When the *SAVSYS (Save System) special value is included in the backup items list of a backup control group, a copy of the QSYS library is saved in a format compatible with the installation process. It does not save objects from any other library. The *SAVSYS special value saves all object types that are shown on the **Object types** field (OBJTYPE parameter) in the Save Object (SAVOBJ) command. In addition, it saves security and configuration objects.

Note: You can perform a save of the operating system by processing the SAVSYSBRM command from the console. Refer to the online help for more information about the SAVSYSBRM command.

Restrictions

- You must perform a *SAVSYS backup interactively from the system console. You must exclude the user profile from signoff using the Work with Sign off Exceptions display (option 2 in the System Policy). BRMS will end all active subsystems before performing the system save function. Refer to “Scheduling a Backup with *SAVSYS” for a complete system save.
- You must have *SAVSYS special authority to perform a backup with *SAVSYS special value.
- Tapes created using this command that are used for installation should be initialized with a density that is supported by the current alternate IPL device. If this is not done, the current alternate IPL device has to be changed to a media device that supports the density of the created *SAVSYS tapes before installation begins during a recovery.
- You cannot use tapes created by using the *SAVSYS special value for automatic installation.
- A backup control group with the *SAVSYS special value must specify *NO in the **Shared media** field of the media class.

Scheduling a Backup with *SAVSYS

To schedule a backup control group that uses the special value *SAVSYS, use the Start Backup using BRM (STRBKUBRM) command. Specify a schedule time you want the backup to begin on the SCDTIME parameter, and specify *NO on the SBMJOB parameter. You should be aware that after submitting the STRBKUBRM from the console, the console will be unavailable until the backup has completed. It is also very important to ensure that messages being sent to the console do not interrupt the STRBKUBRM command that has been submitted. To prevent the interruption by messages to the console, specify the following Change Message Queue (CHGMSGQ) command prior to submitting the STRBKUBRM command or in the backup control group that you are using:

```
CHGMSGQ MSGQ(QSYSOPR) DLVRY(*NOTIFY) SEV(99)
```

Ending and Starting Subsystems with *SAVSYS

Note: If you need to reply to messages on a nonprogrammable workstation, press Shift, System Attention, and Enter. You see the System Request display where you can select Option 6 (Display system operator messages).

If a backup control group contains a *SAVSYS special value or you issue the SAVSYSBRM command, you end all subsystems before the save commences. This ensures that no other activity can occur on the system during the save. The controlling subsystem is started after processing the last backup item in the backup control group. If you specify in your backup control group attributes that an IPL is to occur after the control group has finished processing, the controlling subsystem is not started as this is done as part of the IPL process.

By default, BRMS will restart the controlling subsystem. It is possible to prevent the controlling subsystem from starting after a *SAVSYS has been run. If you are using the SAVSYSBRM command, use STRCTLBS(*NO). If you are using *SAVSYS in a backup control group, select option 9 from the Work with Backup Control Groups menu (WRKCTLGBRM) to work with Subsystems to process and enter the following entry.

Subsystems to Process				RCHAS400	
Use : *BKU					
Control group : *SYSTEM					
Type choices, press Enter.					
Seq	Subsystem	Library	End Option	Delay	Restart
10	*ALL	*ALL	*IMMED		*NO

Using Console Monitoring to Schedule an *SAVSYS

Use the console monitoring function in BRMS to enhance your ability to schedule a system save. Console monitoring allows you to put the system console in a monitored state. Refer to Console Monitoring for more information on this topic.

Contents of the Default Control Groups

This section shows the entries provided in the default control groups which BRMS provides for you. It is recommended that you do not modify the entries in these control groups should you need to tailor what is backed up. You should copy the default control group into a new control group which you would use to perform the customized backup.

Note: None of the default control groups back up spooled file data.

*SYSTEM Default Control Group

The purpose of this control group is to back up your entire system. Using this control group to backup your system may increase your backup time (because you are backing up all system and user data), but it provides the simplest recovery scenario.

Display Backup Control Group Entries				RCHAS400			
Group : *SYSTEM							
Default activity : *BKUPCY							
Text : Backs up the entire system							
Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*DFTACT			
20	*SAVSYS			*DFTACT			
30	*IBM			*DFTACT	*NO	*NO	
40	*ALLUSR			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
50	*ALLDLO			*DFTACT	*NO	*NO	
60	*LINK			*DFTACT	*YES	*NO	
70	*EXIT			*DFTACT			
							Bottom
Press Enter to continue.							
F3=Exit F11=Display exits F12=Cancel							

*SYSGRP Default Control Group

The purpose of this control group is to back up only the system data on the system. The system data backed up by this control group includes:

- Licenced Internal Code
- Operating System
- Configuration Data

- Security Data
- IBM supplied libraries

This control group is used in conjunction with the *BKUGRP to assure you have backed up your entire system. However, because the system data does not change often, this control group might be run less frequently than the *BKUGRP. You should always make sure you have backed up all system and user data to ensure complete recovery of the system in the event of a disaster. Schedule this control group to run periodically as determined by your backup strategy.

Display Backup Control Group Entries
RCHAS400

```

Group . . . . . : *SYSGRP
Default activity . . . . : *BKUPCY
Text . . . . . : Backs up all system data
  
```

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*DFTACT			
20	*SAVSYS			*DFTACT			
30	*IBM			*DFTACT	*NO	*NO	
40	*EXIT			*DFTACT			

Bottom

Press Enter to continue.

F3=Exit F11=Display exits F12=Cancel

*BKUGRP Default Control Group

The purpose of this control group is to back up only the user data on the system. Backing up only the user data reduces the time it takes to backup your system. You would consider backing up only the user data if the system data does not change often. If neither your configuration nor security data changes frequently and you are running regular full system backups, you could consider removing the *SAVSECDTA and *SAVCFG special value entries. These entries are included in this control group because the data is considered user data which is apt to change frequently.

Display Backup Control Group Entries

RCHAS400

Group : *BKUGRP
Default activity : *BKUPCY
Text : Backs up all user data

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*DFTACT			
20	*SAVSECDTA			*DFTACT	*NO		
30	*SAVCFG			*DFTACT	*NO		
40	*ALLUSR			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
50	*ALLDLO			*DFTACT	*NO	*NO	
60	*LINK			*DFTACT	*YES	*NO	
70	*EXIT			*DFTACT			

Bottom

Press Enter to continue.

F3=Exit F11=Display exits F12=Cancel

How to Work with Backup Control Groups

The BRMS backup control group feature consists of several displays that contain numerous parameters that you can use to create and edit control groups. This section describes the displays and parameters that you can use to set up a basic control group strategy.

- The **Work with Backup Control Groups (WRKCTLGBRM)** display is the central control group display. From this display, you can create, edit, change, delete, or display a control group. You can also select subsystems and job queues to process when a control group runs. In addition, you can place a control group on a job scheduler from this display.
- The **Edit Backup Control Group Entries** display shares the same parameters as the Create Backup Control Group Entries display. At this display, you can edit the values on an existing control group.
- The **Change Backup Control Group Attributes** display shares several parameters with the system and function policies. This display allows you to tailor each control group to meet the specific backup requirements of each save.

Creating a Control Group

In the example that follows, you learn how to create a SAMPLE control group that contains three libraries: LIBA, LIBB, and LIBC.

To create a control group, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKCTLGBRM at a command line and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Backup Control Groups display.

Work with Backup Control Groups					RCHAS400
Position to			Starting characters		
Type options, press Enter					
1=Create		2=Edit entries		3=Copy	4=Delete 5=Display
6=Add to schedule		8=Change attributes		9=Subsystems to process ...	
	Control	Full	Incr	Weekly	
	Media	Media	Media	Activity	
Opt Group	Policy	Policy	Policy	SMTWTF5	Text
1	SAMPLE				
	*BKUGRP	*BKUPCY	*BKUPCY	*BKUPCY	Entry created by BRM configuration
	*SYSGRP	SAVSYS	SAVSYS	*BKUPCY	Entry created by BRM configuration
	*SYSTEM	SYSTEM	SYSTEM	*BKUPCY	Entry created by BRM configuration
					Bottom
F3=Exit		F5=Refresh	F7=Work with BRM scheduled jobs		
F9=Change backup policy		F23=More options	F24=More keys		

2. To create a control group, type a 1 (Create) in the *Opt* column and a name for the control group in the *Control Group* field. In this case, the name of the control group is SAMPLE.
3. Press Enter. This takes you to the Create Backup Control Group Entries display.

Create Backup Control Group Entries							RCHAS400
Group : SAMPLE							
Default activity *BKUPCY							
Text Sample backup control group for related libraries.							
Type information, press Enter.							
	Backup	List	Auxiliary	Weekly	Retain	Save	SWA
Seq	Items	Type	Storage	Activity	Object	While	Message
			Pool Device	SMTWTF5	Detail	Active	Queue
10	LIBA			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
20	LIBB			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
30	LIBC			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
							Bottom
F3=Exit		F5=Refresh		F10=Change item			
F11=Display exits		F12=Cancel		F24=More keys			

4. At the Create Backup Control Group Entries display, type the name of the first library you want to save in the *Backup Items* field. Press Enter. Because BRMS numbers the save sequence for you, you need to enter the library or object name in the order in which you want them to process. However, you can change the order by specifying a sequence number in between the two entries. BRMS notifies you if the library does not exist. If you do not know the name of the library you want to save, use F19 to get to the Select Libraries display. Press Enter at the Select Libraries display to get a list of libraries.

Note: You can still create a control group with a library that does not exist. Pressing Enter a second time overrides the *Library does not exist* warning message. Press F3 to exit and take option 1 to save at the Create Backup Control Group Entries display.

5. Following are brief summaries of the other key parameters on this display.

- The *Weekly Activities* field has seven single character fields available to designate the seven days of the week. You can use the default value for this field, which is *DFTACT, or you can set your own weekly activity schedule. *DFTACT specifies a full save (FFFFFFF) on all seven days. You can also tailor a daily mix of full (F) and incremental saves (I) to better suit your business needs, for example: IIFFIIF.
 - In the *Retain Object Detail* field, you can specify whether you want BRMS to save historical information about the control group item at the object level. In this example, we did not specify anything in the *Retain Object Detail* field, which subsequently resorts to the default *ERR (for error). Other values for this field are *YES, *NO, *OBJ, and *MBR. If you want to specify *OBJ at this prompt, you should also specify *OBJ at the *Automatically backup media information* parameter. BRMS establishes the default value for the *Automatically backup media information* field on the backup policy. You can change it at either the backup policy display or at the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display.
 - The value in the *Save-while-active* field specifies whether users can change an object during save processing. More specifically, the *Save-while-active* (SWA) feature allows users to change an object after BRMS reaches a certain checkpoint during the save process. SWA performs the save on a transaction boundary. By using the SWA feature, you can decrease your save window. You can find more detailed information on how to use the Save-while-active feature later in this chapter.
6. Review and change the remaining parameters as needed.
 7. When you have finished, press Enter to save your new control group.

Note: BRMS might group objects together, which could cause OS/400 to issue a save command. This will happen as long as the objects do not exceed the limits (for example, for library size) set by the OS/400 command. If this had happened in the preceeding example, the system would have issued one SAVLIB command for all three of the libraries. This process is called bundling.

Editing a Control Group

Use the Edit Backup Control Group Entries option to revise any existing control group, including BRMS-configured control groups, and those you create. To get there from the Work with Backup Control Groups display, take the following steps:

1. Place a 2 (Edit entries) next to the control group you want to edit.
2. Press Enter.

Edit Backup Control Group Entries						RCHAS400	
Group : SAMPLE							
Default activity *BKUPCY							
Text *NONE							
Type information, press Enter.							
Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	LIBA			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
20	LIBB			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
30	LIBC			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
Bottom							
F3=Exit		F5=Refresh		F10=Change item			
F11=Display exits		F12=Cancel		F24=More keys			

At this display, you can delete a backup item from an existing control group by spacing over the sequence number of the entry that you want to delete. You can also change the weekly activity schedule, or any of the other values on this display as needed.

Changing Control Group Attributes

You can use the Change Backup Control Group Attributes option to tailor each control group to suit the specific needs of each job. To get there from the Work with Backup Control Groups display, take the following steps:

1. Place an 8 (Change attributes) next to the control group you want to change.
2. Press Enter.

Change Backup Control Group Attributes			
Group : SAMPLE			
Type information, press Enter.			
Media policy for:			
Full backups	*BKUPCY	Name, F4 for list	
Incremental backups	*BKUPCY	Name, F4 for list	
Backup devices	*BKUPCY	Name, F4 for list	
Parallel device resources:			
Minimum resources	*NONE	1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL	
Maximum resources		1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN	
Sign off interactive users	*BKUPCY	*YES, *NO, *BKUPCY	
Sign off limit	*BKUPCY	0-999 minutes, *BKUPCY	
Default weekly activity	*BKUPCY	SMTWTFSS(F/I), *BKUPCY	
Incremental type	*BKUPCY	*CUMUL, *INCR, *BKUPCY	
			More...
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel			

All of the attributes on the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display default to values that BRMS establishes in the backup policy (*BKUPCY) except one. You can override any of the shared default values by changing the shared parameters on this display.

The *Parallel device resources* parameter on the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display is the only parameter that is not shared by the backup policy. Parallel device resource capability allows you to save data to multiple devices from the same job at the same time, thereby shortening your save window. To use the parallel device resource feature you need to have multiple tape devices attached to your system. You can find more detailed information on parallel processing in the Additional Options for Processing Control Groups section of this chapter.

Special Considerations When Saving Selected Libraries in a Control Group

The QUSRSYS library contains three important files that are used during a save operation:

- QATADEV contains a list of MLBs.
- QATAMID contains a list of volume identifiers that are used during a save operation.
- QATACGY contains a list of tape library device categories.

When planning to save the QUSRSYS library, you need to understand the end of volume implications when saving in a non-restricted state. For example, if the system is unable to save all of QUSRSYS on the current tape, BRMS requests that you mount another volume. When locked, the IBM Operating System/400 (OS/400) cannot ready and update the required QUSRSYS files. The save fails with a message identifier of CPA37A0.

To minimize the chance of spanning QUSRSYS across multiple volumes and to create a separate control group to save QUSRSYS. Save this control group before saving the *ALLUSR control groups. If you do not omit this library through the backup policy, BRMS saves it twice. These recommendations assume that you are performing the save in a restricted state and that the QUSRSYS library can fit on the mounted volume.

When performing saves using *ALLUSR, or *ALLPROD, ensure that you understand which Q libraries are saved and which are not saved. Refer to table *Special Values* table for the Save Library (SAVLIB) Command in the *Saving Libraries* section of the *Backup and Recovery* book to determine what libraries are considered user libraries. User libraries QGPL, QUSRSYS and QUSRBRM can never be saved to TSM servers.

Omitting Libraries from Backup: It is also important to understand the recovery implications for saving user data. For example, suppose that you plan to perform an *ALLUSR save in your control group. Before you perform this *ALLUSR save, you need to save libraries QGPL and QUSRSYS ahead of other libraries. When you set up your control group, be sure to define the libraries to omit in your backup policy. You may also want to omit libraries from control groups by using the *IBM, *SAVSYS, *ALLDLO, and ASPnn special values.

Take the following steps to get to the Work with Items to Omit from Backup display:

1. Type WRKPCYBRM *BKU at a command line and press Enter.
2. Take option 2 (Work with Items to Omit from Backup) from the Backup Policy menu.

Work with Items to Omit from Backup		RCHAS400
Type options, press Enter.		
1=Add 4=Remove		
Opt	Type	Backup item
1	*ALLUSR	TEMP*
1	*IBM	Q1ABRMSF*
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel		

3. Review or change the following parameters on this display.
 - In the *Opt* field, type a 1 (Add) to add the item to a list of items to omit.
 - In the *Type* field, specify the type of backup you want to perform, which in this case will be *ALLUSR.
 - In the *Backup item* field, type the name of the item you want to omit, which in this case is a TEMP library.
4. Press Enter to process the request.

In this example, BRMS omits all libraries that begin with TEMP from the *ALLUSR backups. To save data to save files, BRMS places the files in a library that is called Q1ABRMSFxx. The xx indicates the ASP number into which the library is placed. Typically, you would use the Save Save File with BRM (SAVSFVBRM) command to save the save files, which can be quite large and time-consuming to save.

In addition to the special values *IBM, *ALLUSR, *SAVSYS, *ALLDLO, and *ASPnn, you can also specify *ALL in the *Type* field. *ALL instructs BRMS not to save a library when you specify a special or generic value in a control group or a SAVLIBBRM command. Other things to consider when using the Work with Items to Omit option are:

- You cannot include the special values *ALLPROD and *ALLTEST in a list of items to omit. If you omit a library from an *ALLUSR group, then BRMS automatically omits it from an *ALLPROD group if it uses a PROD type. Similarly, BRMS also omits the library from an *ALLTEST group if it uses a TEST type.
- The *SYSTEM backup control group ignores any *Items to omit from backup* that may be specified in the backup policy. If you need to omit libraries from your backup you need to use an alternate backup control group.
- You can specify the *SECDATA, *USRASPAUT, and *CFG special values as items to omit with the *SAVSYS special value in the *Type* field.
- You can specify the *USRASPAUT special value as an item to omit with the *SECDATA special value in the *Type* field.
- If your backup device is an TSM server, you should omit the QUSRADSM library from an *ALLUSR backup.
- You can omit up to a maximum of 300 items.
- Be aware that if you omit a library from a control group, BRMS will omit that library from all control groups with the same name until you reenter it into the control group. For example, if you omit a library from the *ALLUSR control group, BRMS will omit that library from all saves of that control group, even from the *BKUGRP control group, until you reenter it. To avoid this situation, you may want to save the library in a different control group.

Note: If you perform a restore operation exclusive of BRMS (for example, with the OS/400 RSTLIB command), BRMS cannot recover the QGPL and QUSRSYS libraries. In this case, you must restore them separately.

Using the Subsystems to Process Display

You can specify subsystem information by control group from the Work with Backup Control Groups display. Use the Subsystems to Process display to add or remove subsystems that you want to start or end automatically before and after control group processing. In the following example, BRMS ends the subsystems at the start of one control group (SAMPLE) and restarts them after saving another control group (SAMPLE2).

To get to the Subsystems to process display, take the following steps:

1. On the Work with Backup Control Groups display, place a 9 (Subsystems to process) next to the control group you want to work with. Press Enter.

Subsystems to Process RCHAS400

Use : *BKU
 Control group : SAMPLE2

Type choices, press Enter.

Seq	Subsystem	Library	End Option	Delay	Restart
10	QBATCH	*LIBL	*NONE		*YES
20	QCMN	*LIB3	*CNTRL	300	*YES

Bottom

2. Type a number that reflects the order in which you want the subsystem job processed in the *Seq* field.
3. Type the name of the subsystem you want to process in the *Subsystem* field.
4. Type the name of the library that contains the subsystem in the *Library* field.
5. Specify whether you want BRMS to automatically restart the subsystem after control group processing in the *Restart* field.

Note: If you do not specify an IPL, BRMS automatically restarts the subsystems after save processing completes. If you do specify an IPL, BRMS restarts subsystems after the IPL. You can specify an IPL on the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display.

6. Review and change the other parameters as needed.
7. Press Enter to save and return to the Work with Backup Control Groups display (if you press F3, you exit without saving).

To delete an entry from the Subsystems to Process display, position the cursor on the item you want to delete. Then space through the sequence number, and press Enter.

Before processing your subsystem requests, you need to ensure that the media policy for the control groups you want to process is appropriate for this request.

Notes:

1. You can run multiple control groups serially (one after another) when using the subsystems to process feature. The first control group ends the subsystems, and the last one restarts them.

2. If you specify *ALL as the subsystem to process, and also request a restart (*YES), BRMS restarts the controlling subsystem that is defined by system value QCTL SBS. To verify the system value, go to the Work with System Values (WRKSYSVAL) display.

Using the Job Queues to Process Display

Use the Job Queues to Process display to add or remove job queue items from a list of job queues. These are job queues you want to hold or release before and after control group processing. Take the following steps to get to the Job Queues to Process display:

1. Select F23 (More options) from the Work with Backup Control Groups display.
2. Place an option 10 (Job queues to process) next to the control group you want to work with and press Enter.

In this example, the *SAMPLE control group specifies one job queue to process.

Job Queues to Process					RCHAS400
Use : *BKU					
Control group : SAMPLE					
Type choices, press Enter.					
Seq	Job queue	Library	Hold	Release	
10	QBATCH	*LIBL	*YES	*YES	
Bottom					
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel					

3. In the *Seq* field list the order in which you want BRMS to hold or release the job queues.
4. Type the job queue name in the *Job queue* field.
5. At the *Library* field, you can specify the library in which the job queue resides or use the default library, *LIBL.
6. Specify whether you want BRMS to hold or release the job. In this case, BRMS holds the QBATCH job queue during backups. BRMS automatically releases the job queue after the backup or IPL (if you specify IPL in the control group) completes.
7. Press Enter to save and return to the Work with Backup Control Groups display.

To delete a job queue, position the cursor on that entry, space through the sequence number, and press Enter. Press Enter again to return to the Work with Backup Control Groups display.

Control Group Processing Order

BRMS performs actions before processing the control group entries and additional actions after the control group entries are processed. The following outlines the general order in which backup control group actions are performed.

Processing Before the Save

BRMS performs the following operations in the indicated order when you run a backup control group.

1. Process the first control group entry if it is *EXIT.
2. Sign off interactive users if requested.
3. Hold job queues if requested.
4. End subsystems if requested.
5. Shutdown Windows Integrated servers if requested.
6. Shutdown hosted logical partitions if requested.
7. Process each control group backup item in sequence.

Processing After the Save (without IPL and *SAVSYS)

BRMS performs the following operations in the indicated order after processing the backup control group when the entries do not include a *SAVSYS and when an IPL has not been requested.

1. Save the media information if requested.
2. Start subsystems if requested.
3. Start Windows Integrated servers if requested.
4. Start hosted logical partitions if requested.
5. Release job queues if requested.
6. Process the last control group entry if it is *EXIT.

Processing After the Save (with IPL)

BRMS performs the following operations in the indicated order after processing the backup control group items when an IPL has not been requested.

1. Save the media information if requested.
2. Process the last control group entry if it is *EXIT.
3. Perform the IPL.

Processing After the Save (with *SAVSYS and no IPL)

BRMS performs the following operations in the indicated order after processing the backup control group items when the entries included a *SAVSYS and an IPL has not been requested.

1. Save the media information if requested.
2. Start the controlling subsystem. (if no inhibited by Subsystems to Process)
3. Start Windows Integrated servers if requested.
4. Start hosted logical partitions if requested.
5. Release job queues if requested.
6. Process the last control group entry if it is *EXIT.

Creating Backup Lists in a Control Group

Backup lists consist of items that are grouped together for processing in a backup control group. The primary benefit of using a backup list is the flexibility it provides when restoring selected items during a recovery. It is also the only way you can save a spooled file. There are four types of backup lists you can create:

- Folder lists (*FLR)
- Object lists (*OBJ)
- Spooled file lists (*SPL)
- Integrated File System objects (*LNK)

You can create backup lists and add them to a control group by using the Edit Control Group Entries display.

Creating a Folder List

To create a folder list for an existing control group, take the following steps from the Work with Backup Control Groups display:

1. Place a 2 (Edit entries) next to the control group to which you want to add the list, and press Enter.
2. At the Edit Control Group Entries display, type a sequence number at the top of the *Opt* column and press F23. This takes you to the Work with Backup Lists display.

Work with Backup Lists					RCHAS400
Position to			Starting characters		
Type options, press Enter.					
1=Add 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Print					
Opt	List Name	Use	Type	Text	
1	SAMPFLR	*BKU	*FLR		
Bottom					

3. Type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* column.
4. Type the name of the folder you want to create in the *List name* field.
5. Type *BKU in the *Use* column.
6. Name the list type, *FLR, in the *Type* column.
7. Then press Enter. This takes you to the Add Folder List display.

Add Folder List		RCHAS400
Use	: *BKU	
List name	SAMPFLR	
Text	Create folder list.	
Type choices, press Enter.		
Seq	Folder	Se1
		*INC/
		*EXC
10	SAMPFLR	*INC
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel		

8. Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on this display:
 - In the *Seq* field, place a number that reflects the order in which you want to save the item.
 - In the *Folder* field, specify the name of the folder or subfolder that you want to save in the list. You can specify actual or generic folder names.
 - In the **INC/*EXC* field, specify *INC to include the folder or subfolder during backup processing, or *EXC to exclude the folder or subfolder. .
9. After changing the parameters as needed, **press Enter twice** to save and to return to the Work with Backup Lists display. You can now see the name of your folder list in list of backup items.

10. Press Enter again to return to the Edit Backup Control Group Entries display. Type the name of the list in the *Backup items* column, the list type in the *List type* column, and press Enter. BRMS saves the new list in the control group you specified, in this case, the SAMPLE control group.
11. Press Enter to return to the Work with Control Groups display.

Creating an Object List

To create an object list for an existing control group, take the following steps from the Work with Backup Control Groups display:

1. Place a 2 (Edit entries) next to the control group to which you want to add the list.
2. At the Edit Control Group Entries display, type a sequence number at the top of the *Opt* column and press F23. This takes you to the Work with Backup lists display.
3. At the Work with Backup Lists display, type in the name of the list you want to create, in this case, an object list called TESTOBJ.
4. Type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* column.
5. Type the name of the object you want to create in the *List name* field.
6. Type *BKU in the *Use* column.
7. Name the list type, *OBJ, in the *Type* column.
8. Then press Enter. This takes you to the Add Object List display.

Add Object List RCHAS400

Use : *BKU
 List name TESTOBJ
 Text Create object list.

Type choices, press Enter.

Seq	Library	Object	Type	Member
10	LIB3	*ALL	*ALL	*ALL
20	LIB4	P*	*ALL	

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel

9. Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on this display:
 - In the *Seq* field, place a number which reflects the order in which you want to save the item.
 - In the *Library* field, specify the name of the library that contains the objects you want to save in the list.
 - In the *Object* field type the name of the object you want to save in the list. The possible values include:
 - The actual name of the object.
 - A generic name.
 - *ALL.
 - The *Type* field specifies the type of object you want to save in the list. You can use the name of any permitted system object type. Or you can use *ALL to indicate that all objects apply to the object type specified in the list you want to save.

- The *Member* field identifies the name of the database member you want to save in the object list. You cannot designate a member name if you use *ALL or generic as the object name. Otherwise, you can name specific member names, generic ones, or indicate *ALL to include all available members.

Note: If you specify OBJECT=*ALL, TYPE=*ALL, MEMBER=*ALL, BRMS runs a SAVLIB command rather than multiple SAVOBJ commands. However, BRMS does not group multiple libraries onto a single SAVLIB command. If you want to save entire libraries, you should name the library as a control group entry rather than as a list item.

10. After changing the parameters as needed, **press Enter twice** to save and to return to the Work with Backup Lists display. You can now see the name of your list in the list of backup items.
11. Press Enter again to return to the Edit Backup Control Group Entries display. Type the name of the list in the *Backup items* field, the name of the list type in the *List type* column and press Enter. BRMS saves the new list in the control group you specified, in this case, the SAMPLE control group.
12. Press Enter to return to the Work with Control Groups display.

Creating a Spooled File List

With a single spooled file list, you can add multiple output queues that you want to save by selecting multiple sequence numbers. When you add the output queues, you can select the type of spooled file names, job names, or user names that you want to save.

To create a spooled file list for an existing control group, take the following steps from the Work with Backup Control Groups display:

1. Place a 2 (Edit entries) next to the control group to which you want to add the list.
2. At the Edit Control Group Entries display, type a sequence number at the top of the *Opt* column and press F23. This takes you to the Work with Backup lists display.
3. At the Work with Backup Lists display, type in the name of the list you want to create, in this case, a spooled file list called SAVESPOOL.
4. Type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* column.
5. Type the name of the spooled file you want to create in the *List name* field.
6. Type *BKU in the *Use* column.
7. Name the list type, *SPL, in the *Type* column.
8. Then press Enter. This takes you to the Add Spooled File List display.

Add Spooled File List						RCHAS400
Use : *BKU						
List name SAVESPOOL						
Text Sample to save spooled files.						
Type choices, press Enter.						
Seq Library	Outq	File	Job	User	User data	*INC/ *EXC
10 *ALL	QPRINT	*ALL	*ALL	*ALL	*ALL	*INC
						Bottom
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel						

9. Review and change the additional parameters on this display as needed.
10. **Press Enter twice** to save and to return to the Work with Backup Lists display. You can now see the name of your list in the list of backup items.
11. Press Enter again to return to the Edit Backup Control Group Entries display. Type the name of the list in the *Backup items* field, the name of the list type in the *List type* column and press Enter. BRMS saves the new list in the control group you specified, in this case, the SAMPLE control group.
12. Press Enter to return to the Work with Control Groups display.

Internally, BRMS saves the spooled files as a single folder, with multiple documents within that folder. During the restore, it reads the tape label for the folder and restores all of the documents. If your spooled file save spans multiple volumes, BRMS prompts you to read the label information before restoring the documents on subsequent tapes. To avoid possible confusion, you can save your spooled files on a separate tape by using the *LOAD exit in the control group. Or you can split your spooled file saves so that you use only one tape at a time. Either approach can make the recovery easier for you.

Note: BRMS does not support the incremental saves of spooled files. If you accidentally specify an incremental save for an *SPL list, BRMS saves all of the spooled files. BRMS does not automatically clear the output queue after the save. You must manage how you want BRMS to clear data from your output queues. You can use an *EXIT special value in your control group to do this. See “Processing User Exits in a Control Group” on page 111 for more information. IBM recommends that you obtain a hardcopy of your output queue immediately after the save has completed for audit purposes. To print the output queue, use the Work with Output Queue (WRKOUTQ) command with the OUTPUT(*PRINT) option specified.

BRMS provides a spooled file list named QALLSPLF which you can use to save all spooled files on your system. If you want to save spooled files using this list, simply added the list to your current backup control group.

Add Spooled File List						RCHAS400
Use : *BKU						
List name QALLSPLF						
Text All printed output						
Type choices, press Enter.						
Seq	Library	Outq	File	Job	User	*INC/ *EXC
10	*ALL	*ALL	*ALL	*ALL	*ALL	*INC
Bottom						
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel						

Note: To save spooled files, BRMS first retrieves the names of the spooled files using a system API which stores the spooled file names in a user space. User spaces are restricted to a limited size. If you have a lot of spooled files, the returned names may exceed the size of the user space. In this case, the backup of the spooled files will fail with a CPF34C4 exception. You can correct the problem by breaking up the current spooled file list entries into more granular entries.

Creating a Link List

To create a list of Integrated File System objects for an existing control group, take the following steps from the Work with Backup Control Groups display:

1. Place a 2 (Edit entries) next to the control group to which you want to add the list.
2. At the Edit Control Group Entries display, type a sequence number at the top of the *Opt* column and press F23. This takes you to the Work with Backup lists display.
3. At the Work with Backup Lists display, type in the name of the list you want to create, in this case, a link list called LNKLIST.
4. Type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* column.
5. Type the name of the link list you want to create in the *List name* field.
6. Type *BKU in the *Use* column.
7. Name the list type, *LNK, in the *Type* column.
8. Then press Enter. This takes you to the Add Link List display.

Add Link List		RCHAS400
Use : *BKU		
Type choices, press Enter.		
List name LNKLIST		
Text Test link list.		
F3=Exit F12=Cancel		

9. At the Add Link List display, type in a short sentence describing the items in the list on the *Text* line and press Enter. This returns you to the Work with Backup Lists display, where the name of the new link list appears.

RCHAS400

Work with Backup Lists

Position to
Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
1=Add 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Print

Opt	List Name	Use	Type	Text
2	LNKLIST	*BKU	*LNK	Test link list.
	SAVESPOOL	*BKU	*SPL	Sample to save all spool files in QPRINT.

Bottom

F3=Exit
F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

List LNKLIST of type *LNK is added.

10. To list the Integrated File System objects you want to save, place a 2 (Change item) next to the new list and press Enter. This takes you to the Change Link List display.

Change Link List (CHGLNKLB RM)

Type choices, press Enter.

List > LNKLIST
Character value

Usage type > *BKU

Objects:

Name > '/*'

Include or omit
*INCLUDE
*INCLUDE, *OMIT

+ for more values
+

Directory subtree
*ALL
*ALL, *DIR, *NONE, *OBJ

Text
Sample link list entry.

Bottom

F3=Exit
F4=Prompt
F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel
F13=How to use this display

F24=More keys

11. Type the name of the object you want to save in the *Name* field. If you want to add more objects, type a + on the short line next to the + *for more values field*, and press Enter. This takes you to the Specify More Values for Parameter OBJ display. Type the names of the additional objects you want to add to the list.
12. In the *Include or omit* field, specify whether you want to include an item in the list or omit it from the save. You can also use a /* symbol in this field to instruct BRMS to save all available Integrated File System objects.

Specify More Values for Parameter OBJ

Type choices, press Enter.

Objects:

Name	> '/'*		
Include or omit	*INCLUDE	*INCLUDE, *OMIT	
Name	/QSYS.LIB		
Include or omit	*OMIT	*INCLUDE, *OMIT	
Name	/QDLS		
Include or omit	*OMIT	*INCLUDE, *OMIT	
Name			
Include or omit	*INCLUDE	*INCLUDE, *OMIT	

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

13. After completing your additions to the link list, press Enter to return to the Change Link List display. This display shows the changes you made to the link list.
14. Press Enter to return to the Work with Backup Lists display, and then again to return to the Edit Backup Control Entries display. BRMS saves the new link list in the control group you specified earlier, in this case, the SAMPLE control group.

Processing User Exits in a Control Group

A **user exit** (the *EXIT special value) is a user-defined CL command that permits automatic processing of predefined user routines. Users place an *EXIT special value inside a control group in the sequence order in which they want BRMS to process the request. Use the *EXIT value to send messages or to call applications.

To create a user exit command, take the following steps:

1. At the Create/Edit Backup Control Group Entries display, treat the *EXIT special value as a backup item and place it in the order in which you want BRMS to process it. Then press Enter. In this example, we use the *EXIT special value to call an application in between the processing of two libraries.

Note: It is recommended that you never run a BRMS or native save command from a *EXIT entry in a backup control group.

Create Backup Control Group Entries							RCHAS400
Group : ETEST2							
Default activity : *BKUPCY							
Text : *NONE							
Type information, press Enter.							
Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	LIBA			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
20	*EXIT			*DFTACT			
30	LIBB			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F10=Change item F11=Display exits F12=Cancel F24=More keys							Bottom

- Place your cursor on the *EXIT special value and press F10. This takes you to the User Exit Maintenance display.

User Exit Maintenance		System: RCHAS400
Type command, press Enter.		
Sequence number	20	
Where used	*EXIT	
Weekly activity	*DFTACT SMTWTFSS	
Command	CALL QGPL/STARTAPP	

- Type the command you want BRMS to process in the *Command* field. To call the STARTAPP application, type the CALL QGPL/STARTAPP command in the *Command* field.
- Press Enter to return to the Create Backup Control Group Entries display. Then press F3 to exit the display and save the control group. BRMS calls STARTAPP application after the first backup item completes processing and before the second control group begins processing.

If the first entry in a control group is *EXIT, BRMS processes it before performing any **pre-processing** activities (such as ending subsystems or holding job queues). If the last entry in the control group is *EXIT, processes it before performing any **post-processing** activities (such as starting subsystems and releasing job queues). If the last entry in the control group is *EXIT, BRMS processes this exit after performing any **post-processing** activities (such as starting subsystems and releasing job queues).

Backing Up Your Control Group

Use the Start Backup using BRM (STRBKUBRM) command to backup your control group.

- Type STRBKUBRM at a command line and press Enter. This takes you to the Start Backup using BRM display.
- At the STRBKUBRM display, place your cursor in the *Control group* field and type in the name of the control group you want to process. If you do not know the name of the control group, press F4 to prompt a list of control groups. Type in the name of the control group you want to save.

3. Review and change the other parameters on this command as needed, then press Enter to see the remaining parameters:
 - The text in the *Job description* field describes the job you want to submit. You can base the job description on the user profile or you can create your own description.
 - The value in the *Job queue name* field specifies the location of the job in the queue.
4. Press Enter to begin processing the backup.

After your backup completes, you should check the job log to make sure that it completed successfully. You can use the Backup Analysis display to review your save history. You can access the backup analysis displays from the Backup Planning menu. After you have designed your backup strategy, you can review the contents of your control groups at the Display Backup Plan display. You can also access this display from the Backup Planning menu.

How to Resume a Backup

If you canceled the backup of a control group, you can restart it using the STRBKUBRM command. Type the name of the control group (for example, *MYLIBS) that contains the user profiles in the *Control group* field. Use the Display BRM Log Information (DSPLOGBRM) command to see which items were saved. If BRMS saved items 10, 20, and 30, but not items 40, 50, and 60, you can restart *MYLIBS by typing 40 in the *Starting sequence* field. Then BRMS can save the rest of the items in the control group.

Additional Options for Processing Control Groups

Using the Save-While-Active Feature

The save-while-active (SWA) feature allows users to resume activity after save processing reaches a certain point. OS/400 refers to this point as the synchronization checkpoint. By using the SWA feature, you can reduce application downtime and increase user access to selected data or applications.

To use the SWA feature with a save that does not use journaling or commitment control, you need to prevent user access until BRMS reaches the synchronization point. Once the system reaches the checkpoint, the system releases the exclusive locks on the library, and users can resume normal activity. Meanwhile, BRMS continues to save the data.

If you have large libraries with single member physical files, it may take less time to reach the checkpoint than it takes to save the data to tape. For example, suppose you have a library that contains single member physical files and that it takes an hour to save. During regular save processing, the system locks the library, which prevents user access to any file in that library until the save completes. By using the save-while-active feature, users can access library files after BRMS reaches the checkpoint. Suppose, in this example, that BRMS reaches the checkpoint in 20 minutes. In this example, the SWA feature increased your application availability by nearly 40 minutes. IBM cannot determine the exact time at which BRMS reaches the checkpoint. The exact time depends on the size of the library or application to which you are applying SWA. Under most circumstances, however, the time it takes to reach the checkpoint is notably shorter than the time it takes to save the entire library or application.

This section provides several examples of how you can apply SWA to your save strategy. However, this section does not cover every topic associated with SWA. Therefore, you should review Backing up your system topic in the iSeries Information Center for more information before implementing SWA.

Note: It is not recommended that you use *ALLUSR or *ALLPROD special values in a SWA operation.

Activating Save-while-active in BRMS

To activate the SWA feature, take the following steps:

- 1. Go to Edit Backup Control Group Entries display. In this example, we use the SWA feature while processing the LIBB and LINKLIST backup items.

Edit Backup Control Group Entries

RCHAS400

Group : SAMPLE
Default activity *BKUPCY
Text *NONE

Type information, press Enter.

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	LIBA			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
20	LIBB			*DFTACT	*YES	*YES	*LIB
30	LINKLIST	*LNK		*DFTACT	*NO	*YES	*LIB

F3=Exit
F11=Display exits

F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

F10=Change item
F24=More keys

Bottom

- 2. To activate SWA, type *YES in the *Save-while-active* field. Additional values for this field are:

***LIB** This value indicates that library objects can be saved while in use by another job. Because all of the library objects reach checkpoint together, BRMS saves them in a consistent state in relationship to each other. If you specify multiple libraries in the control group, BRMS performs the checkpoint processing individually for the objects within each specified library. For example, to save LIBA and LIBB, the system performs two separate SAVLIB commands and establishes two checkpoints.

Note: Physical files with members have the same save active date and time stamp. Libraries with thousands of objects may be too large for this option.

***SYNCLIB**
This value also specifies that objects in a library can be saved while in use by another job. However, in this case, all of the objects *and* all of the libraries reach a checkpoint together. BRMS saves them in a consistent state in relationship to one another. Before you use the *SYNCLIB value to save data to a save file, keep the following in mind:

- OS/400 restricts you to save single libraries to save files. BRMS adopts the same restriction.
- The control group must use the *LIB level synchronization instead of *SYNCLIB.

- If you specify a message queue in the *SWA Message Queue* field in the Edit Control Group Entries display, BRMS sends the synchronization message for every library.
- BRMS completes the save processing without any warning or error messages. BRMS does not warn you if it adopts *LIB level of synchronization.

Note: Different items (including libraries, backup lists, and special values) have different effects on save-while-active processing. See “Using the Monitor Save While Active for BRM (MONSWABRM) Command” for more information.

***SYSDFN**

This value also indicates that library objects can be saved while in use by another job. In this case, however, library objects can reach checkpoints at different times and may not exist in a consistent state in relationship to one another. You should not specify the *SYSDFN value if you plan to use the Monitor Save While Active for BRM (MONSWABRM) command. Nor should you use it to perform operations when a checkpoint has been reached. In these situations, the *SYSDFN values makes it more difficult to release the library.

If you specify a value other than *NO in the Save-while-active field, an entry appears next to it in the *SWA Message Queue* field. The default value for this field is *LIB, which instructs BRMS to use the message queue that matches the name of the library you want to save. You can also specify the name of the message queue that contains the checkpoint messages.

3. Press Enter to save. This returns you to the Work with Backup Control Groups display. BRMS uses the SWA feature as instructed during the next save of that control group.

Using the Monitor Save While Active for BRM (MONSWABRM) Command

The Monitor Save While Active for BRM command (MONSWABRM) monitors BRMS for system messages CPI3710 and CPI3712, which indicate that the synchronization checkpoint has been reached. You can process the MONSWABRM command through an *EXIT operation in your backup control group or by entering the MONSWABRM command from a command line. Use the MONSWABRM command inside an *EXIT for better control over the monitoring function. *EXIT entries that contain the MONSWABRM command must precede the control group entry for the item you want to monitor or the command fails.

To use the MONSWABRM command in an *EXIT, take the following steps:

1. Follow the steps listed in the Processing User Exits in a Control Group section of this chapter to create an *EXIT that contains the MONSWABRM command.
2. In the following example, we use the MONSWABRM command to monitor the SWA status of LIBB and LNKLIST. If the control group entry types differ, which in this case they do, then a MONSWABRM *EXIT must precede each entry. Therefore, you need to create two separate exits containing the MONSWABRM command. Place each *EXIT before each control group entry you want the MONSWABRM command to monitor for synchronization.

Edit Backup Control Group Entries							RCHAS400
Group : SAMPLE							
Default activity *BKUPCY							
Text *NONE							
Type information, press Enter.							
Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	LIBA			*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
20	*EXIT						
30	LIBB			*DFTACT	*YES	*YES	*LIB
40	*EXIT						
50	LINKLIST	*LNK		*DFTACT	*NO	*YES	*LIB
							Bottom
F3=Exit		F5=Refresh		F10=Change item			
F11=Display exits		F12=Cancel		F24=More keys			

3. Press Enter to return to the Work with Backup Control Groups display.
4. Press F3 to exit and save the control group.

If the control group entries are of the same type, you can use one *EXIT special value to monitor messages for all entries. If all of the entries are the same type (all libraries, for example, or lists of the same type), place the exit before the first entry.

Note: Though you can use the SWA feature with most special values (such as *ALLTEST and *ALLPROD), you should not use it with *ALLUSR. You cannot use the *SYNCLIB function with the SAVLIB LIB(*ALLUSR) or SAVLIB(*IBM) commands. The OS/400 operating system supports the *ALLUSR value only with the SAVCHGOBJ command.

To synchronize libraries by set rather than by entry, list the libraries in sequence without interruption by special operations such as *EXIT. In this example, LIBA monitors synchronization point messages for the first set, while LIBC monitors them for the second set.

Edit Backup Control Group Entries							RCHAS400
Group : SAMPLE							
Default Weekly Activity *BKUPCY							
Text Create sample backup control group.							
Type information, press Enter.							
Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*DFTACT			
20	LIBA			FFFFFFF	*NO	*SYNCLIB	*LIB
30	LIBB			FFFFFFF	*NO	*SYNCLIB	*LIB
40	*EXIT						
50	LIBC			*DFTACT	*YES	*SYNCLIB	*LIB
60	LIBD			*DFTACT	*YES	*SYNCLIB	*LIB
Synchronizing Multiple Libraries with Save-While-Active							

You must ensure that the values for *Retain object detail*, *Weekly activity*, and the *Save-while-active* fields are the same for each library in each set. However, you can

specify different weekly activity and object detail information for each set. If you use generic names for the libraries such as A*, B*, C*, and specify *SYNCLIB, BRMS groups all of the libraries together. Then BRMS performs a single save operation and you receive a single synchronization message. A single save command supports up to 300 libraries in a list. This is an OS/400 restriction. If you have more than 300 libraries, BRMS issues another save command to process the remaining libraries.

In this example, the SWA message queue value in the control group defaults to *LIB. The SWA message queue name specified in the control group entry **must** match the message queue name in the LIB parameter of the MONSWABRM command. The MONSWABRM automatically creates and deletes the message queue in library QUSRBRM. You cannot place it in a different queue. If you use a name other than the first library name, the MONSWABRM command cannot monitor for the SWA synchronization message. Instead, it continues to run for a default of one hour before it ends. In the meantime, your control group finishes processing without any benefit from the SWA message queue function.

Note: By default, the system issues the synchronization message after 3600 seconds (one hour). Therefore, if your libraries require over an hour to reach synchronization, you need to increase the SWA wait time in the MONSWABRM command.

To use the Monitor Save While Active (MONSWABRM) display to set up a SWA monitoring job, take the following steps:

1. Type MONSWABRM at a command line and press Enter.

Monitor Save While Active (MONSWABRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Saved library	LIB3	Name, *MSGQ
Command to run	STRSBSBRM	
Job description	*USRPRF	Name, *USRPRF
Library		Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
Job queue	*JOBQ	Name, *JOBQ
Library		Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
Time limit in seconds	3600	1-999999, *NOMAX

Bottom

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
 F24=More keys

2. At the Monitor Save While Active display, change the following fields as required:
 - Use the *Saved library* parameter to specify the library or message queue that you want to review for synchronization during the SWA process.
 - Use the *Command to run* parameter to issue a command after the synchronization message arrives. In this example, we ran the Start Subsystem using BRM command (STRSBSBRM) after the libraries reached synchronization. BRMS can quiesce an application only prior to synchronization.
3. Review and change the other parameters as needed.
4. Press F3 to save and exit.

Note: By default, BRMS submits control group jobs and MONSWABRM jobs to the QBATCH subsystem. You must ensure that you have enough activity levels to perform all of your control group saves **and** all of the MONSWABRM commands. You can use another subsystem by specifying the job queue name or the job description name in the STRBKUBRM or the MONSWABRM commands.

Working with the Save-While-Active Message Queue

Instead of using the MONSWABRM command to monitor SWA activity, you can instruct the SWA message queue to send a message when the libraries reach synchronization. It is recommended that you use this approach rather than letting BRMS default to *LIB. This allows better control by monitoring a specific message queue rather than one created according to the name of the first library that BRMS saves. For example, if you want BRMS to save the first entry in the control group on certain days, the message queue would vary from day-to-day.

Edit Backup Control Group Entries

Group SAMPLE
 Default Weekly Activity *BKUPCY
 Text. Edit sample backup control group.

Type information, press Enter.

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFs	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	LIBA			*DFTACT	*NO	*SYNCLIB	OPER01
20	LIBB			*DFTACT	*NO	*SYNCLIB	*LIB
30	LIBC			*DFTACT	*NO	*SYNCLIB	*LIB
40	LIBD			*DFTACT	*NO	*SYNCLIB	*LIB

In this example, the system uses the OPER01 message queue to log the following messages:

- 0 of 4 libraries processed. Started LIBA at 02/03/97 10:20:06.
- 1 of 4 libraries processed. Started LIBB at 02/03/97 10:20:07.
- 2 of 4 libraries processed. Started LIBC at 02/03/97 10:20:078.
- 3 of 4 libraries processed. Started LIBD at 02/03/97 10:20:09.

BRMS uses the first message queue (at LIBA) to monitor for the synchronization. Even if you specify different message queues for each of the other libraries, the SWA synchronization message still goes to message queue OPER01.

If you require synchronization messages to go to different message queues, you must separate the control group entries for libraries with values such as *EXIT or *LOAD. BRMS also separates the library groups if it detects a change of value in the *Retain object detail*, *Weekly activity*, and *Save-while-active* fields.

For more detailed information on the SWA feature, see *Backup and Recovery*.

Console Monitoring

Use the console monitor to perform an unattended save, process a SAVSYS save, or perform a function in a restricted state. Use the *SAVSYS value with the STRBKUBRM command when you want BRMS to save the operating system and related libraries. You can also use the console monitor to monitor selected activities. You can temporarily suspend the monitoring function to enter OS/400 commands and then return the console to a monitored state.

Console monitoring allows users to submit the SAVSYS job to the job scheduler instead of doing it interactively. Previously, the SAVSYS, SAVSYSBRM, or STRBKUBRM with *SAVSYS command required interactive processing. Now you can use the *Submit to batch* parameter on the STRBKUBRM command to enter *CONSOLE as a value, thereby performing your saves in batch mode. Thus, you do not have to be nearby when the system save processes. However, you **must** issue this command from the system console because BRMS runs the job in subsystem QCTL. If you attempt to start the console monitor from your own workstation, BRMS sends a message indicating that you are Not in a correct environment to start the console monitor.

Once you start the console monitor, the console waits for a BRMS command to process. You can suspend the console to process commands. However, if you do so, you must return the console to monitoring status before BRMS can start the console monitor.

Starting the Console Monitor

To start the console monitor, take the following steps from your system console:

1. To get to the BRMS Console Monitor display, select option 20 (Start console monitor) from the BRMS main menu at the system console. You will get message *BRM1947 — Not in correct environment to start console monitor.* if you are not at the system console when you start this function.

BRMS Console Monitor

Press F12 to cancel the monitor operation.
Press F9 to access command line. Control must return to this display
for BRMS activity to be monitored.

2. This starts the console monitor. You need to take no further action at the console monitor at this time.
3. On the job scheduler, submit a job that performs the STRBKUBRM command. Following is an example of an STRBKUBRM job you can submit to the job scheduler.

Start Backup using BRM (STRBKUBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Control group	*SYSGRP	*BKUGRP, *SYSGRP, SAVSYS...
Schedule time	*IMMED	hmm, *IMMED
Submit to batch	*CONSOLE	*CONSOLE, *YES, *NO
Starting sequence:		
Number	*FIRST	1-9999, *FIRST
Library	*FIRST	Name, *FIRST
Append to media	*CTLGRPATR	*CTLGRPATR, *BKUPCY, *YES...
Job description	*USRPRF	Name, *USRPRF
Library		Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
Job queue	*JOBQ	Name, *JOBQ
Library		Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB

Submit a System Save to Batch Using Console Monitor

4. Type the name of the control group you want the console monitor to process in the *Control group* field.
5. Ensure that the *Schedule time* is *IMMED.
6. Type *CONSOLE in the *Submit to batch* field.

7. Review and change the other parameters as needed.
8. Press Enter to process the request.

Interrupting the BRMS Console Monitor

To interrupt the BRMS Console Monitor from the system console, take the following steps:

1. Press F9 from the BRMS Console Monitor display.
2. At the prompt, type the correct pass phrase and press Enter.
3. A pop-up window appears. Type the OS/400 commands you want the system to process and press Enter. The BRMS Console Monitor is now interrupted.

If you interrupt the BRMS Console Monitor, BRMS queues any requests submitted through the console monitor. BRMS does not process the requests until you complete the command and return the system console to console monitoring status.

Monitoring the Console Monitor

BRMS logs the following messages to help you oversee the BRMS Console Monitor usage:

- BRM1948 = 'BRMS Console monitoring is now started' when you start the console monitoring.
- BRM1950 = 'BRMS Console monitoring is inactive' when you use the command line entry (F9).
- BRM1954 = 'BRMS Console monitoring is now ending' when you quit the console monitoring (F3).

Canceling the Console Monitor

To cancel the console monitor, take the following steps from your system console:

1. Take F3 (Exit) or F12 (Cancel) from the BRMS Console Monitor display. This takes you to the BRMS Console Monitor Exit display.
2. Type the correct pass phase at the BRMS Console Monitor Exit display and press Enter to end BRMS Console Monitoring.

Performing Serial, Concurrent, and Parallel Backups

If you use a single tape device, all of your saves are **serial saves**. In a serial save, BRMS processes your saves sequentially, one at a time, one after another. If, however, you have multiple tape devices, BRMS can perform concurrent and parallel saves. Concurrent and parallel saves can considerably reduce your backup window and streamline your backup operations. Following are brief descriptions of each.

Concurrent Backups

If running concurrent backups, it is strongly suggested not to save media information with either backup. It is recommended you run the Save Media Information (SAVMEDIBRM) command after the concurrent backup control groups have completed.

In a concurrent save operation, you send multiple save jobs to multiple tapes devices to process at the same time (concurrently). For example, using a concurrent backup strategy, you might send one library or group of libraries to one tape device, and another set of libraries to a different tape device. Concurrent backup support also allows multiple SAVDLO operations from the same auxiliary storage

pool (ASP). Anything that you can save concurrently, you can restore concurrently, thereby reducing your down time after a system failure by recovering multiple libraries or objects at the same time.

You set up the concurrent operation by specifying different device names inside the individual control groups or save commands that you want BRMS to process concurrently. You must try to evenly balance the contents of each job so that each tape device completes at about the same time. This results in more efficient use of your tape resources. If you want to use *INCR or *CUMML saves, keep in mind that processing time for each varies according to content size.

Parallel Backups

BRMS implements parallel support by utilizing two methods provided by the OS/400. The first method, **parallel save/restore** support, spreads each object across multiple resources. The second method, **multiple-library parallel** support, spreads libraries across multiple resources, such that each library is backed up to a single resource. Using these methods, BRMS will attempt to optimize performance and balance resources. Items saved with the second method will have a sequential restore behavior.

Notes:

1. Full backups of *ALLUSR , generic library names and other special values will be saved using only multiple-library parallel support.
2. See Chapter 8, “Performing Selected Recoveries” for information on how to perform recoveries using parallel support.

Parallel Support Restrictions

Before you set up a backup strategy using parallel support, review the following restrictions:

- OS/400 cannot support parallel saves of DLO or Integrated File System objects at this time.
- BRMS does not support parallel backup of media information. See “Sample Backup Scenarios: Working with Multiple Control Groups and Shared Devices” on page 122 for information on how to save media information when using parallel support.

When to Use Parallel and Concurrent Saves

Due to OS/400 restrictions, you can gain the greatest benefit by designing a strategy that combines concurrent and parallel backup support. You should, if possible, use concurrent backups to reduce backup windows when saving folders, documents, spooled files, and Integrated File System data. Use parallel support when you want to reduce your backup window for large libraries and large objects. You can find more information on performing concurrent and parallel backups in “Sample Backup Scenarios: Working with Multiple Control Groups and Shared Devices” on page 122.

How to Set Up a Parallel Backup

To use parallel support to process an existing control group, take the following steps:

1. At the Work with Backup Control Groups display, type option 8 (Change attributes) in front of the control group you want to work with, and press Enter. This takes you to the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display.

Change Backup Control Group Attributes

Group : SAMPLE

Type information, press Enter.

Media policy for:

Full backups	*BKUPCY	Name, F4 for list
Incremental backups	*BKUPCY	Name, F4 for list
Backup devices	*BKUPCY	Name, F4 for list

Parallel device resources:

Minimum resources	2	1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL
Maximum resources	4	1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN
Sign off interactive users	*BKUPCY	*YES, *NO, *BKUPCY
Sign off limit	*BKUPCY	0-999 minutes, *BKUPCY
Default weekly activity	*BKUPCY	SMTWTF(S/F/I), *BKUPCY
Incremental type	*BKUPCY	*CUMUL, *INCR, *BKUPCY

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F12=Cancel

2. At the *Parallel device resources* parameter, indicate the minimum and maximum number of device resources you want to allocate to the processing of this control group. In this example, we instructed BRMS to save the contents of the SAMPLE control group to a minimum of 2 devices and a maximum of 4 devices.
3. Press Enter to save and return to the Work with Backup Control Groups display.

You can find a more complex example involving the use of parallel and concurrent saves in “Sample Backup Scenarios: Working with Multiple Control Groups and Shared Devices”.

Note: You can also specify a parallel save when using the following commands:

- Save Library using BRM (SAVLIBBRM)
- Save Object using BRM (SAVOBJBRM)
- Save Object List using BRM (SAVOBJLBRM)

Use a job scheduler to assist you in scheduling parallel saves. You can find more information on job scheduling in Chapter 10, “Scheduling Backup and Recovery Jobs” on page 169.

Sample Backup Scenarios: Working with Multiple Control Groups and Shared Devices

As you grow more familiar and comfortable with BRMS, you may decide to create additional control groups or to split larger control groups into smaller ones. This section provides information on the uses and benefits of a multiple control group operation in several different environments. Each scenario assumes a daily backup schedule.

Use multiple control groups to save applications or subsets of applications, and user libraries or subsets of user libraries. A backup strategy that uses multiple control groups can shorten your save window, and make the restore of selected data easier. In Scenario 1, you learn the benefits of using your own control groups rather than BRMS-configured ones such as *ALLUSR. In Scenario 2, you learn how

to shorten your save window still further by processing multiple control groups through concurrent and parallel backups. In Scenario 3, you learn how process a network backup by using shared devices.

Scenario 1: Using Multiple Control Groups in a Serial Backup

In this example, suppose you have only one tape device available, TAP01, available for backup operations. You can use a tape library, such as a 3570 or a 3590 device. For the purposes of this example, however, you are using the device as a stand-alone. You must decide how to save two packaged business applications (one for payroll, the other for inventory), a few company-designed programs, and several user libraries.

In this situation, you could use either of the following strategies to back up your data:

- You could perform an *ALLUSR save on a weekly (*FULL) and daily (*INCR) basis
- You could create multiple control groups containing applications, libraries, or related subsets, again with weekly (*FULL) and daily (*INCR) backups.

Utilizing an *ALLUSR strategy saves all user libraries, but it does not allow specialized recoveries. An *ALLUSR save may also require that you rebuild access paths when restoring the libraries.

Splitting your application and user data into multiple control groups provides the following benefits:

- Makes recovery easier by allowing you to separate and prioritize critical applications for a speedier, more business-efficient recovery. For example, if you use certain applications only on specific days (such as payroll), you might not need to restore that application immediately after a failure on a non-payroll day. Conversely, if the system fails on a heavy payroll day, you want to get the payroll application back on the system as soon as possible. Similarly, some user-specific libraries may be less critical than others or than the day-to-day business applications. If you use the simple *ALLUSR approach, then selective or prioritized recovery is very difficult.

By splitting user libraries and business applications into separate control groups, you can prioritize the order in which BRMS restores your libraries and applications. In addition, a single control group has only one media policy, and one schedule for all the libraries and applications it contains. Multiple control groups, on the other hand, allow you to run different control groups on different days. And, because they use more than one media policy, multiple control groups allow for more flexible retention periods.

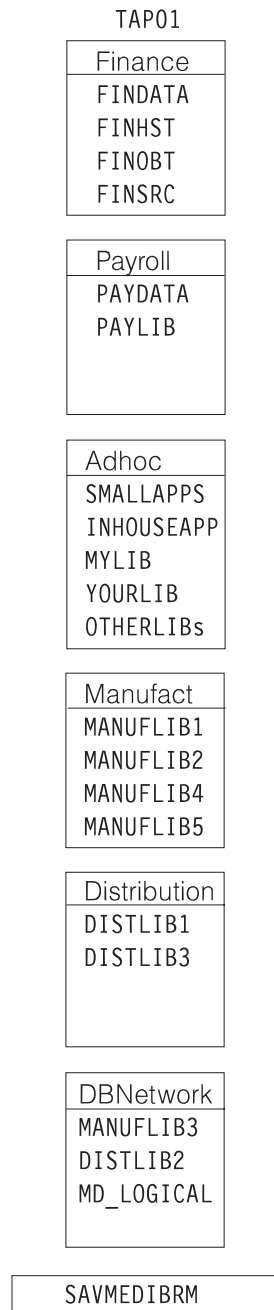
- Avoids access path rebuilds by grouping based-on physical files with their dependent logical files. In some instances, the system holds logical views of data in different libraries than their based-on physical files (this is called a Database Network). The system organizes library files alphabetically, by save time, which can cause a problem if the logical files appear earlier in the list than their counterpart physical files. This problem makes recovery much more difficult. If you use an *ALLUSR save, the system saves access paths for the logical files along with the physical files. However, you might need to perform lengthy access path rebuilds after a restore operation because the system cannot restore the based-on physical file.

To avoid lengthy rebuilds, design your backups so that you do not include database networks in an *ALLUSR or a generic* backup. Separate control groups can save the based-on physical files before their dependent logical files. This

way, BRMS can restore the objects in the correct sequence, thereby avoiding lengthy access path rebuilds. However, you need to make sure that you save the physical and logical files with the same underlying SAVxxx command. If you save the logical and physical files with different SAVxxx commands, BRMS cannot save the access paths , even if you specify ACCPTH(*YES).

You can also consider a compromise between these two strategies, especially if you have smaller systems with fewer libraries. Under these circumstances, you can use a combination of *ALLUSR and your own control groups. Use one or more control groups for specific libraries, and another control group containing the *ALLUSR libraries. If you choose this strategy, you need to omit the libraries in your own control groups. This way, you can restore the items in your control groups selectively, on an as-needed basis. You can save less critical libraries on a less frequent basis.

If you save multiple control groups to single device, BRMS processes them serially, one after another. Figure 8 on page 125 illustrates how you can design a number of control groups to run in sequence.



RV4N405-0

Figure 8. Multiple Control Groups in a Serial Save

The manufacturing application (MANUFACT) consists of libraries MANUFLIB1 through MANUFLIB5, and DISTLIB1 through DISTLIB3. These libraries now exist in three separate control groups. You can find the logical files in library MD_LOGICAL. The logical files were built over physical files in libraries MANUFLIB3 and DISTLIB2. To avoid rebuilding the access paths for these logical files after restore, MANUFLIB3 and DISTLIB2 were omitted from the MANUFACT and DISTRIBUTION control groups. Instead, they were included with library MD_LOGICAL in a separate control group called DBNETWORK. The ADHOC control group contains a few user libraries and a few of the smaller applications. The FINANCE and PAYROLL control groups contain the more critical payroll and finance data.

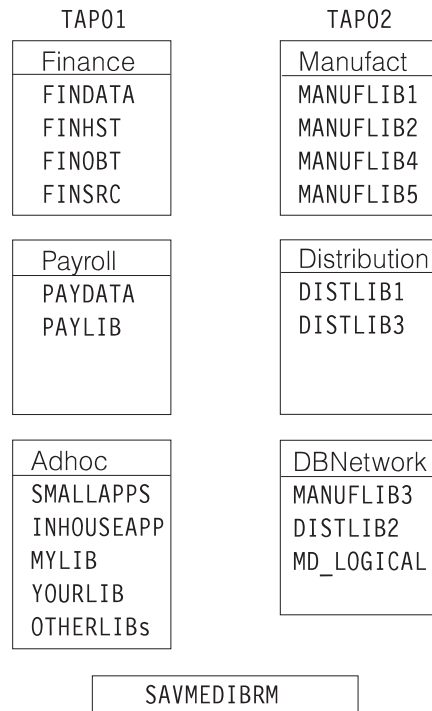
When you process multiple control groups serially, keep the following considerations in mind:

- ***Saving Media Information:*** BRMS usually saves media information at the end of each control group. However, if you are running the control groups serially, BRMS saves the media information files at the end of each control group. While this is not a problem, it can extend the runtime for the control groups. In addition, because BRMS saves the same media information in the last file in each control group, you really need only the last group of media information files. You may find it beneficial, then, not to save the media information at the end of each control group. Instead, you can save it separately by using the SAVMEDIBRM command. Whichever method you choose, you must save this information on a regular basis as BRMS uses it to restore your data. In Figure 9 BRMS processes the SAVMEDIBRM command in a separate job.
- ***Appending to Media:*** By default, BRMS uses an expired tape for each control group. Therefore, during serial operations, BRMS unloads the volume from the previous group and uses a new volume for each subsequent control group. However, you can add the later control groups to the end of the previous tape. To do that, specify ENDOPT(*LEAVE) and APPEND(*NO) on the Change Backup Control Group Attributes display for the first control group. Then specify ENDOPT(*LEAVE) and APPEND(*YES) for the second and subsequent control groups.

Scenario 2: Using Multiple Control Groups in Parallel and Concurrent Backups

In this example, assume that you are using the multiple control group backup strategy discussed in Scenario 1. In this case, however, you want use two tape devices for your backup operation, TAP01 and TAP02.

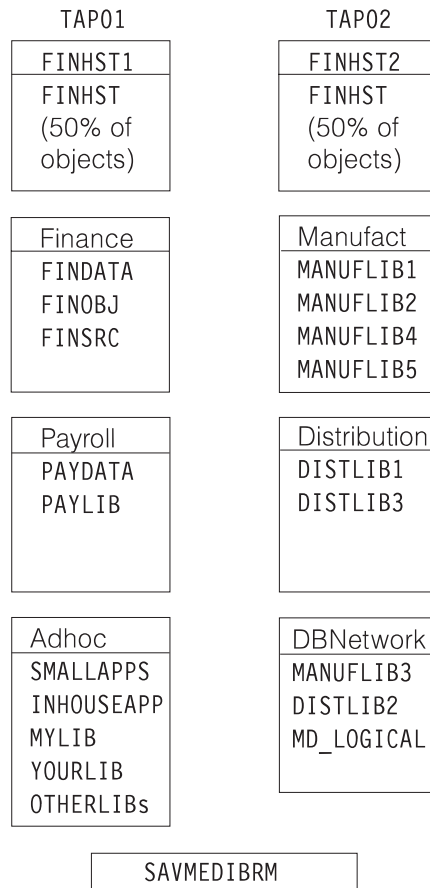
Figure 9 on page 127 shows how you can organize the control groups to run concurrently to two tape devices.



RV4N406-0

Figure 9. Multiple control groups in a concurrent save

Suppose that the FINHST library in the FINANCE group contains 50 small objects and 4 very large objects. At this point, you want to save the FINANCE group to TAP01. Your main concern at this point is to balance the backup window for both tape drives. For example, the size of the objects in the FINHST library might force TAP01 to process longer than TAP02. Thus, the control group processing would not end concurrently. To remedy this, you can split the FINHST library into two control groups of approximately 25 small objects and 2 large objects each, as shown in Figure 10 on page 128. By doing so, you can better balance the save window for both devices.

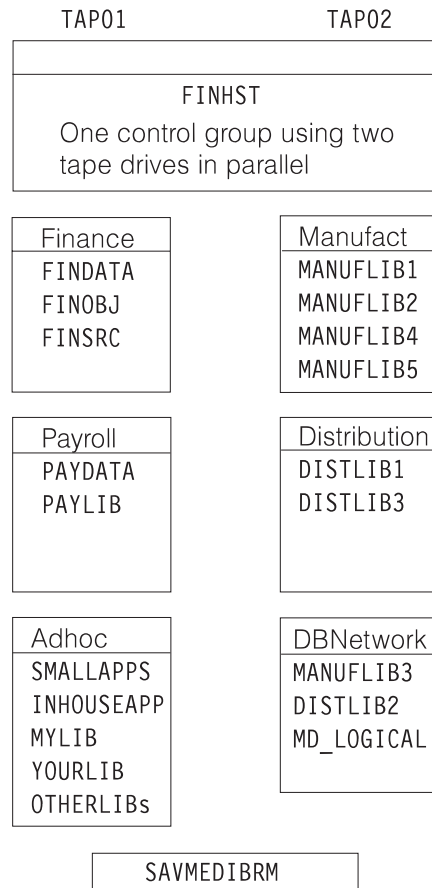


RV4N407-0

Figure 10. Differently weighted control groups in a concurrent save

Next suppose that the two FINHST libraries grow to contain 35 small and 3 large objects each. In this case, you need to change your backup strategy, and continually work to keep these jobs ending at the same time. Alternatively, however, you could return all of the FINHST objects to one control group and process it using a parallel backup. Figure 12 shows how BRMS can do this. The parallel backup support feature makes this job easier because it balances the work load for you, and sends the job to process at all available devices. By using the parallel support feature, you do not need to revise your backup strategy if libraries and objects grow, or if you add another tape drive to your system.

In this case, then, you can run the smaller jobs concurrently to TAP01 and TAP02, while using parallel support to process FINSHT across both devices. Figure 11 on page 129 shows how BRMS can perform concurrently and parallel saves simultaneously.



RV4N408-2

Figure 11. Multiple control groups in concurrent and parallel saves

In this case, the FINHST control group runs first to both TAP01 and TAP02 groups in parallel. Then the FINANCE, PAYROLL, and ADHOC control groups run to TAP01, while the MANUFACT, DISTRIBUTION, and DBNETWORK control groups run concurrently to TAP02.

In addition, if you share tape devices with other systems, sometimes you may have more or less resources available, depending on availability. Parallel backup support makes the best use of available devices when you want to save a large library.

To process multiple control groups by using concurrent and parallel support, keep the following in mind:

- **Control job running time:** In an environment such as described here, the timing of some jobs might be dependent on the outcome of others. For example, to save the media information, you need to run SAVMEDIBRM at the end of control group processing. You do not want this command to run concurrent with the control groups. To achieve this, consider using an advanced job scheduler such as the IBM Job Scheduler for the OS/400 which allows you to define job dependencies.

Scenario 3: Performing a Backup Across a Network with Shared Devices

This example shows you how to use tape automation to perform backups across a network. IBM manufactures several automated tape libraries (ATLs) that you can

attach to your iSeries to provide tape automation. An automated tape library is both a resource to iSeries and a device. A tape library contains one or more tape drives. ATL models available from IBM are:

- Magstar® MP Tape Library (IBM 3570 B and C models)
- 9427 8mm Tape Library
- 3575 Tape Library Dataserver
- 3494 Tape Library Dataserver

You can share any of the IBM tape libraries across multiple iSeries servers. However, due to drive connectivity limitations, you cannot attach individual drives to more than two systems at once. ATLs with more than two drives (3575 and 3494) can attach to more than two systems. When OS/400 uses a tape library, it allocates a drive resource to the job. If a library has more than one drive, OS/400 selects one or more depending on the type of save operation (serial, concurrent or parallel). If a resource is unavailable, OS/400 queues the request until one becomes available or until the device timeout period elapses. You can find more information on how to use devices in Chapter 8 of this manual. You can find more information on ATLs in Automated Tape Library Planning and Management book (SC41-5309).

In this example, assume the use of a 3494 ATL with two 3590 B1A shared between two iSeries servers. You have connected the two tape drives to two iSeries servers, SYSTEMA and SYSTEMB. These two systems exist in a BRMS network, and share a common tape pool. When working with tape libraries, you should have the stand-alone device description varied off, and the library device varied on. The tape drives appear as resources under the library device. With a 3494, although each tape subsystem appears to OS/400 as a library device, all library devices can access the resources for that library type. The OS/400 command Work with Media Library Status (WRKMLBSTS) display illustrates this.

Work with Media Library Status				SYSTEM A
Type options, press Enter.				
1=Vary on		2=Vary off	3=Reset resource	4=Allocate resource
5=Allocate unprotected		6=Deallocate resource		8=Work with description
Opt	Device/ Resource	Status	Allocation	Job name
	TAPMLB01	VARIED ON		
	TAP01	OPERATIONAL	UNPROTECTED	
	TAP02	OPERATIONAL	UNPROTECTED	
	TAPMLB01	VARIED OFF		

This example shows the preferred way to run, which is with one library device varied on and the other varied off. This way, both SYSTEMA and SYSTEMB can run jobs simultaneously. Both would be using library device TAPMLB01. Although only two tape resources (TAP01 and TAP02) are available, each system can run more than two jobs at the same time. The OS/400 resource manager queues requests for resources by allocating them as needed and as they become available. To use one of the resources specifically (as you might in a more complex library setup), you can change the allocation of the non-required resource to DEALLOCATED. This makes the resource unavailable to that system. You can also change the resource allocation manually by using the WRKMLBSTS display. However, if you want to change the allocation dynamically, type the VRYCFG command in an *EXIT command in your control group. For example, if we want OS/400 to select TAPMLB02 to save the PAYROLL application, we could create the following control group items:

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool	Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT				*DFTACT			
20	PAYDATA				*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
30	PAYLIB				*DFTACT	*ERR	*NO	
40	*EXIT				*DFTACT			

Code the *EXIT at sequence number 10 as follows:

```
VRRCFG CFGOBJ(TAPMLB01) CFGTYPE(*MLBRSC) STATUS(*DEALLOCATE)
RSRCNAME(TAP02)
```

The *EXIT at sequence number 40 would change the status to *UNPROTECTED.

Note: You should not use *MEDCLS as the device for a save or restore operation with multiple tape library devices. Instead, you should specifically name the library devices for each save and restore.

Additional BRMS Save Commands

In addition to the control groups that process backups, BRMS provides a variety of commands that allow you to save particular groups of information while using BRMS. These save commands are sometimes similar to the OS/400 save commands. You should, however, use BRMS rather than OS/400 commands because BRMS saves the media content, and library and object detail information that is essential for recovery.

Following is a summary of the other BRMS save commands you can use:

SAVBRM

The Save BRMS command allows you to save BRMS libraries and Integrated File System objects.

SAVDLOBRM

The Save DLO using BRM command allows you to save documents in the document library (QDOC).

SAVFLRLBRM

The Save Folder List command using BRM command allows you to save backup folder lists.

SAVLIBBRM

The Save Library using BRM command allows you to save a copy of one or more libraries.

SAVMEDIBRM

The Save Media Information using BRM command saves a copy of the information compiled by BRMS on each saved item.

SAVOBJBRM

The Save Object using BRM command saves a copy of one or more objects.

SAVOBJLBRM

The Save Object List using BRMS command saves backup object lists.

SAVSAVBRM

The Save Save Files using BRM command saves save files that were created during BRMS processing to tape.

SAVSYSBRM

The Save System using BRM command allows you to save a copy of the operating system library in a format compatible with the installation process. It does not save objects from any other library.

When used to perform backup functions, these commands do not automatically save the recovery data or media information in the QUSRBRM library. After completing one of these commands, you need to save media information with the Save Media Information using BRM (SAVMEDIBRM) command.

Notes:

1. Do not use these commands with an *EXIT in a control group as the results may be unpredictable.
2. If you have processed any backups to save files, you must run the Save Save Files using BRM (SAVSAVFBRM) command with the appropriate control group. Run the SAVMEDIBRM command after the SAVSAVFBRM command and then print new recovery reports.

Chapter 8. Performing Selected Recoveries

In Chapter 4, “Recovering Your Entire System” you learned how to generate and use the Recovering Your Entire System report to recover your entire system. This chapter provides information on how to selectively restore single objects or groups of objects. With BRMS, you can selectively (that is, singly and on an as-needed basis) restore system information, libraries, control groups, Integrated File System objects, and other items. In case of disaster, a selective restore strategy allows you to recover critically needed applications and information prior to restoring the rest of your system.

There are several ways you can selectively recover items by using BRMS. The primary recovery command is the Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM) command. You can use other commands to facilitate the recovery of user profiles, objects, folders, and spooled files.

Many of the functions described in this chapter are available as part of a plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

Recovery Policy

Use the recovery policy to instruct BRMS on how to implement your recovery plan. For example, you can use the recovery policy to select the types of media and devices you want to use for the recovery. You can also use the recovery policy to instruct BRMS to restore objects and libraries in specific ways.

To get to the recovery policy display, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKPCYBRM *RCY at a command line. Press Enter.

Change Recovery Policy

RCHAS400

Type choices, press Enter.

Recovery device. *MEDCLS

Name, F4 for list

Parallel device resources:

Minimum resources. *SAV

Maximum resources.

End of tape option *REWIND

Option *ALL

Data base member option *ALL

Allow object differences *NONE

1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL

1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN

*REWIND, *LEAVE, *UNLOAD

*ALL, *NEW, *OLD, *FREE

*MATCH, *ALL, *NEW, *OLD

*NONE, *ALL, *AUTL, *OWNER

Document name generation *SAME

Restore to library *SAVLIB

Auxiliary storage pool *SAVASP

*SAME, *NEW

Name, *SAVLIB

Name, *SAVASP, 1-32 ...

F3=Exit

F4=Prompt

F5=Refresh

F9=System policy

F12=Cancel

More...

2. Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on this display.

- In the *Recovery devices* field, specify the device or devices that you want to perform the recovery. You can specify a specific device name or *MEDCLS, which instructs BRMS to select any available device that matches the media class you plan to use.

Notes:

- a. If you did not notify BRMS that you recently moved media from an offsite to an onsite location, the *MEDCLS device search may fail. For this reason, it is better to explicitly name the device you want BRMS to use for the recovery.
- b. If BRMS cannot find the media in its specified location and *MEDCLS was specified, BRMS will try to locate the media in the available devices.

Note:

- In the *Parallel device resources* field, specify whether you want to perform parallel recoveries. In a parallel recovery, BRMS allocates multiple devices to process one large job. You need multiple devices (at least two) to use this option. BRMS can only perform parallel restores on information that was saved with the parallel process. You can find more information about parallel and concurrent (multiple jobs to multiple devices) recoveries later in this chapter.
 - Use the *Database member option* field to specify which members of database files you want to restore to the database.
 - In the *Allow object differences* field, you can instruct BRMS to allow differences between saved and restored objects.
 - In the *Restore to library* field, indicate whether to restore library contents to a library different from the one in which they were saved. You should not leave this as *SAVLIB. Instead, either name a specific default library (for example, RESTORES) or use the system-provided QTEMP library. If you leave the value at *SAVLIB, you run the risk of overwriting a production library. To avoid this, you should change the default. If you want to restore the original library at a later time, you can override the name you specify here when you want to perform the recovery operation.
 - In the *Auxiliary storage pool ID* field, indicate whether to restore libraries and objects to the same auxiliary storage pool (ASP) in which they originated.
3. After reviewing and changing the parameters as needed, press Enter to save and exit.

BRMS uses only one recovery policy to cover all of your recovery needs. You should only need to set recovery policy parameters once. However, it is possible to change recovery policy values on an item by item basis by using the Restore Command Defaults display. Later in this chapter, you learn how to access and use this display.

RCHAS400

Select Recovery Items

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.
 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object

Opt	Saved Item	Date	Time	Save Type	Volume Serial	File Seq	Exp Date	Objects Saved
	LIB1	10/15/98	15:12:36	*FULL	000C0D	1	5/19/99	1

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel
 F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all

Working with the STRRCYBRM Command

The Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM) command performs two critical recovery functions:

- Generates the reports that guide your recovery.
- Initiates and processes the restore commands.

This chapter provides instruction on how to use the parameters on the STRRCYBRM command to recover selected saved items. You can use the STRRCYBRM command to selectively recover the following items:

- Control Groups
- Libraries
- Integrated File System data and other LINKLIST items

Understanding the STRRCYBRM Parameters

On the STRRCYBRM display, you can select the items you want to recover and the saves from which you want them restored. The STRRCYBRM command bases its restores on the save date and time entries in the media content information that best match your restore specifications. The STRRCYBRM command always restores from the most recent full save of the specified item that precedes the date and time parameters you specify.

To get to the Start Recovery using BRM display, take the following steps:

1. Type STRRCYBRM from a command line and press F4 to prompt the display. This takes you to the initial STRRCYBRM display.

```

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Option . . . . . *SYSTEM      *SYSTEM, *SYSBAS, *SAVSYS...

F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel  F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys
Bottom

```

2. Press F9 to prompt the remaining parameters.

```

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Option . . . . . *SYSTEM      *SYSTEM, *SYSBAS, *SAVSYS...
Action . . . . . *REPORT      *REPORT, *RESTORE
Time period for recovery:
  Start time and date:
    Beginning time . . . . . *AVAIL      Time, *AVAIL
    Beginning date . . . . . *BEGIN      Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN
  End time and date:
    Ending time . . . . . *AVAIL      Time, *AVAIL
    Ending date . . . . . *END      Date, *CURRENT, *END
Use save files . . . . . *NO      *NO, *YES
Auxiliary storage pool . . . . . *SYSTEM      Name, 1-32, *SYSTEM
Library . . . . .      Name, generic*
List . . . . . *ALL      Name, *ALL

F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel  F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys
More....

```

Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on this display:

- At the *Option* parameter, you need to specify the kind of recovery you want BRMS to perform. The default value for this parameter is *SYSTEM, which instructs BRMS to recover your entire system. You can change this value to specify a number of saved items to recover, including product and user libraries, control groups, and Integrated File System data. Press F1 (Help) to prompt a list of the items you can recover from this parameter.
- At the *Action* parameter, you need to specify whether you want BRMS to generate recovery reports (*REPORT) or perform a restore (*RESTORE). The default value for this parameter is *REPORT, so when you want BRMS to perform a recovery, you need to change this value to *RESTORE.
- At the *Time period for recovery* parameters, specify a range of save dates and times between which BRMS should perform the restore. For example, when you select beginning and ending dates and times, you instruct BRMS to restore items that were saved only during those periods.
- If you are using the BRMS Network feature, you can use the *From system* parameter to create recovery reports for other networked systems, or to view and recover one or more of the saved items from a networked system to the local system. Refer to Chapter 13, "Networking with BRMS" on page 199 for additional information about setting up and using the BRMS Network feature. If you are recovering the local system, use the default value for this field, *LCL, which instructs BRMS to use the system currently in use.

3. Become familiar with the remaining parameters on this command and change them as needed to suit the type of recovery you want to perform.
4. Press Enter to begin the recovery.

Recovering Control Groups with STRRCYBRM

While you cannot use the STRRCYBRM command to recover individual spooled files, document library objects (DLO), or folders, you can use it to recover the control group in which they were saved. To recover a control group with the STRRCYBRM command, take the following steps:

1. Type STRRCYBRM at a command line and press F4 to prompt the display.
2. Press F9 to prompt the remaining parameters.

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Option	*CTLGRP	*SYSTEM, *SYSBAS, *SAVSYS...
Action	*RESTORE	*REPORT, *RESTORE
Time period for recovery:		
Start time and date:		
Beginning time	*AVAIL	Time, *AVAIL
Beginning date	*BEGIN	Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN
End time and date:		
Ending time	*AVAIL	Time, *AVAIL
Ending date	*END	Date, *CURRENT, *END
Use save files	*NO	*NO, *YES
Auxiliary storage pool	*SYSTEM	Name, 1-32, *SYSTEM
Library		Name, generic*
List	*ALL	Name, *ALL

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

3. Type *CTLGRP in the *Option* field.
4. Type *RESTORE in the *Action* field.
5. Change the *Time period for recovery* parameters as needed.
6. If you want to restore the control groups from a save file, change the *Use save file* value to *YES.
7. Scroll down to the second page of the display.

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Control group selection:		
Control group	*SELECT	Name, *SELECT, *BKUGRP...
Sequence number		1-99
+ for more values		
Allow duplicate entries	*NO	*NO, *YES
Use ADSM	*NO	*NO, *YES
Volume location	*ALL	*ALL, *HOME, TAPMLB01...
+ for more values		
Library to omit	*DELETE	*DELETE, *NONE
From system	*LCL	
Print system information	*NO	*NO, *YES

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

8. If you want to restore only one control group and know its name, type it into the *Control group* field. Or you can use the *SELECT value to select from a list of control groups. Since the *SELECT value is the default value for this parameter, simply press Enter once to prompt the list.

Select and Sequence Control Groups

Type sequence number (1-99), press Enter.

Seq	Control Group	Text
	*BKUGRP	Entry created by BRM configuration
	*SYSGRP	Entry created by BRM configuration
1	PAYROLL	Pay schedule for week of 05/05/99.
2	INVENTORY	Warehouse content week of 05/05/99.
	MYLIB	Library belonging to Jane Doe.
	YOURLIB	Library belonging to John Smith

F3=Exit F9=Review backup plan F12=Cancel

9. Place a number in the *Seq* column next to the control groups you want to restore in the order in which you want BRMS to restore them.
10. Press Enter twice to get to the Select Recovery Items display.

Select Recovery Items								RCHAS400
Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.								
1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object								
Opt	Saved Item	Date	Time	Save Type	Volume Serial	File Seq	Exp Date	Objects Saved
1	A/PAYABLE	5/27/99	16:51:56	*FULL	172534	1	6/10/99	1
1	A/REC	5/27/99	13:20:26	*FULL	172534	1	6/10/99	1
1	INV/DISKS	5/30/99	17:00:27	*FULL	1727C0	1	6/10/99	1
1	INV/DRIVES	5/30/99	17:15:10	*FULL	1727C0	1	6/10/99	1
								Bottom
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel								
F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all								

11. A list of the items contained in the control groups you specified appears on this display. Type a 1 (Select) next to the items you want BRMS to recover and press Enter. Press F16 to instruct BRMS to restore all of the items on the display.
12. Press Enter to confirm your selections at the Confirm Recovery Items display. This returns you to the STRRCYBRM display.
13. Review and change the other parameters on the STRRCYBRM display as needed.
14. To override any recovery policy values for this (or any other) specific job, press F9 from this display. This takes you to the Restore Command Default display, which contains most of the parameters and values from the recovery policy display.

Restore Command Defaults	
Type information, press Enter.	
Device	*MEDCLS Name, *MEDCLS
Parallel device resources:	
Minimum resources.	*SAV 1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL
Maximum resources.	1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN
End of tape option	*REWIND, *LEAVE, *UNLOAD
Option	*ALL, *NEW, *OLD, *FREE
Data base member option	*ALL *MATCH, *ALL, *NEW, *OLD
Allow object differences	*NONE
	*NONE, *ALL, *FILELVL...
Document name generation	*SAME, *NEW
Restore to library	Name, *SAVLIB
Auxiliary storage pool	Name, *SAVASP, 1-32...
System resource management	*ALL, *NONE, *HDW, *TRA
F12=Cancel	

At this display, you can override recovery policy values to, for example, specify a particular device or type of restore (for example, a parallel restore). Change the parameters as needed and press Enter to return to the Select Recovery Items display.

- ```

Select Recovery Items RCHAS400
.....
: Display Recovery Items RCHAS400 :
: 17:20:05 :
: Remaining items : 4 :
: Remaining objects . . . : 4 :
: Remaining size : .1475 M 100.0 % :
: :
: Saved Save Volume Exp Objects
: Item Date Time Type Serial File Seq Date Saved :
: 1 A/PAYABLE 5/27/99 16:51:56 *FULL 172534 1 6/10/99 :
: 1 A/REC 5/27/99 13:20:26 *FULL 172534 1 6/10/99 :
: 1 INV/DISKS 5/30/99 17:00:27 *FULL 1727C0 1 6/10/99 :
: 1 INV/DRIVES 5/30/99 17:15:10 *FULL 1727C0 1 6/10/99 :
: :
: :
: :
: :
: :
: :
: :
: Press ATTN key to cancel recovery after current item completes.
: Restoring library LIB1 from volume 172534 sequence number 1.
:

```

```

 Select Recovery Items RCHAS400

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.
 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object

Opt Saved Save Volume Exp Objects
Item Date Time Type Serial File Seq Date Saved
1 A/PAYABLE 5/27/99 16:51:56 *FULL 172534 1 6/10/99
1 A/REC 5/27/99 13:20:26 *FULL 172534 1 6/10/99
1 INV/DISKS 5/30/99 17:00:27 *FULL 1727C0 1 6/10/99
1 INV/DRIVES 5/30/99 17:15:10 *FULL 1727C0 1 6/10/99

 Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel
F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all
4 libraries were restored from library PAYROLL and INVENTORY

```

- 140 Backup, Recovery, and Media Services for iSeries V5R2

CTLGRP((PAYROLL 1) (MANUFACT 2) (FINANCE 3)) instructs BRMS to recover the PAYROLL control group first. BRMS next recovers the manufacturing and finance control groups.

If you prefer using the displays to create the command, you can set up the command specifications as follows:

1. Change the value in the Option field to \*CTLGRP.
2. Change the value in the Action field to \*RESTORE.

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                  |          |                              |
|------------------|----------|------------------------------|
| Option . . . . . | *CTLGRP  | *SYSTEM, *SYSBAS, *SAVSYS... |
| Action . . . . . | *RESTORE | *REPORT, *RESTORE            |

Time period for recovery:

Start time and date:

|                          |        |                        |
|--------------------------|--------|------------------------|
| Beginning time . . . . . | *AVAIL | Time, *AVAIL           |
| Beginning date . . . . . | *BEGIN | Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN |

End time and date:

|                       |        |                      |
|-----------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Ending time . . . . . | *AVAIL | Time, *AVAIL         |
| Ending date . . . . . | *END   | Date, *CURRENT, *END |

Use save files . . . . .
 \*NO | \*NO, \*YES || Auxiliary storage pool . . . . . | \*SYSTEM | Name, 1-32, \*SYSTEM |
| Library . . . . . |  | Name, generic\* |
| List . . . . . | \*ALL | Name, \*ALL |

More...

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display  
F24=More keys

3. Scroll down to the second page of the display. At the "+ for more values" field at the *Control group selection* parameter, press + to add more than one control group to the command request.

Specify More Values for Parameter CTLGRP

Type choices, press Enter.

Control group selection:

|                           |           |                               |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| Control group . . . . .   | PAYROLL   | Name, *SELECT, *BKUGRP...     |
| Sequence number . . . . . | 1         | 1-99                          |
| Control group . . . . .   | MANUFACT  | Name, *BKUGRP, *SYSGRP, *NONE |
| Sequence number . . . . . | 2         | 1-99                          |
| Control group . . . . .   | INVENTORY | Name, *BKUGRP, *SYSGRP, *NONE |
| Sequence number . . . . . | 3         | 1-99                          |
| Control group . . . . .   |           | Name, *BKUGRP, *SYSGRP, *NONE |
| Sequence number . . . . . | 1         | 1-99                          |
| Control group . . . . .   |           | Name, *BKUGRP, *SYSGRP, *NONE |
| Sequence number . . . . . | 1         | 1-99                          |

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display  
F24=More keys

4. Review and change the other parameters as needed, then press Enter to process the command.

## Recovering Libraries with STRRCYBRM

To recover a library with the STRRCYBRM command, take the following steps:

1. Type \*LIB at the *Option* parameter and \*RESTORE at the *Action* parameter.

```

 Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Option > *LIB *SYSTEM, *SYSBAS, *SAVSYS...
Action > *RESTORE *REPORT, *RESTORE
Time period for recovery:
 Start time and date:
 Beginning time *AVAIL Time, *AVAIL
 Beginning date *BEGIN Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN
 End time and date:
 Ending time *AVAIL Time, *AVAIL
 Ending date *END Date, *CURRENT, *END
 Use save files *NO *NO, *YES
 Auxiliary storage pool *SYSTEM Name, 1-32, *SYSTEM
 Library LIB10 Name, generic*
 List *ALL Name, *ALL

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

```

2. Type the name of the library you want BRMS to restore in the *Library* field. You can also recover a string of libraries by using a generic library name. For example, you can restore all libraries that begin with P by specifying P\* at the *Library* parameter. After you have specified the library you want to restore, press Enter. This takes you to the Select Recovery Items display.

```

 Select Recovery Items RCHAS400

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.
 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object

 Saved
Opt Item Date Time Save Volume
 1 LIB10 5/28/99 18:39:05 *FULL 172534 4 5/01/99 1
 1 LIB20 5/28/99 18:55:21 *INCR 172535 5 5/01/99 1

 Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel
F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all

```

3. Select the items you want to recover and press Enter.
4. Press Enter at the Confirm Recovery Items display to confirm your selections.
5. If you want to override any of the recovery policy parameters for this specific job, press F9 to take you to the Restore Command Default display. If you do not want to change any recovery policy parameters, press Enter to begin processing the restore.
6. The Display Recovery Items display appears to inform you of the status of your restore.
7. When the recovery completes, a message appears at the bottom of the Select Recovery Items display. This message tells you the number of objects BRMS restored (for example, 1 object) and from which library (LIBA).



8. Check the job log to ensure that the restore completed successfully.

In addition to recovering selected individual libraries, you can use the STRRCYBRM command to restore all of your IBM libraries or all of your user libraries. To restore all of the \*IBM or \*ALLUSR libraries, specify \*IBM or \*ALLUSR at the *Option* parameter. Leave the *Library* field blank.

## Recovery of Individual Integrated File System Objects

In Chapter 7, you learned how to save your Integrated File System data in a control group by using a linklist. The word link in the word linklist in this case refers to the connection between Integrated File System directories. You can use the STRRCYBRM command to restore an individual linklist, rather than the entire control group that contains the linklist. To do so, take the following steps:

1. At the STRRCYBRM display, type \*LNKLIST in the *Option* field.

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                  |            |                             |
|----------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| Option . . . . .                 | > *LNKLIST | *SYSTEM, SYSBAS, *SAVSYS... |
| Action . . . . .                 | *RESTORE   | *REPORT, *RESTORE           |
| Time period for recovery:        |            |                             |
| Start time and date:             |            |                             |
| Beginning time . . . . .         | *AVAIL     | Time, *AVAIL                |
| Beginning date . . . . .         | *BEGIN     | Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN      |
| End time and date:               |            |                             |
| Ending time . . . . .            | *AVAIL     | Time, *AVAIL                |
| Ending date . . . . .            | *END       | Date, *CURRENT, *END        |
| Use save files . . . . .         | *NO        | *NO, *YES                   |
| Auxiliary storage pool . . . . . | *SYSTEM    | Name, 1-32, *SYSTEM         |
| Library . . . . .                |            | Name, generic*              |
| List . . . . .                   | *ALL       | Name, *ALL                  |

More...

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display  
F24=More keys

The \*LNKLIST special value restores all of the Integrated File System objects that BRMS saved in the list between the start and end times you specify on this display.

2. Change the other parameters as needed.
3. Override recovery policy parameters if needed by pressing F9, which takes you to the Restore Command Defaults display. Or press Enter to process the recovery.
4. Check the job log to make sure that the job completed successfully.

## Restoring Integrated File System Objects to /QLANSrv

Before you attempt to restore an object from /QLANSrv, ensure that you have the proper authority to work with the objects in a LAN server environment. If you do not have sufficient authority, the system sends a message (CPFA09C: Not authorized to object), which causes your command to fail.

Saving and restoring Integrated File System objects to and from LAN servers can be a bit tricky. Therefore, before restoring individual files or directories to /QLANSrv, review the section on Integrated File System data in Chapter 7, "Tailoring Your Backup" on page 83.

Before beginning the restore, you must also ensure that the Integrated PC server is either varied on or in a restricted state. You can restore Integrated File System objects to /QLANSrv by using either the WRKLNKBRM command or the WRKMEDIBRM command.

To get to the Work with Link Information (WRKLNKBRM) display, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKLNKBRM at a command line and press Enter.

```

Work with Link Information RCHAS400

Type options, press Enter.
4=Remove 9=Work with directory information

Opt Directory
___ /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k
___ /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k/ADMSERV
___ /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k/ADMSERV/DLL
___ /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k/ADMSERV/DOC
9 /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k/BRMS
___ /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k/PMSX

```

2. Type a 9 (Work with directory information) in front of the directory you want to restore and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Directory Information display.

```

Work with Directory Information RCHAS400

Directory : /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k/BRMS
Type options, press Enter.
4=Remove 5=Display 7=Restore 9=Work with objects

 Date Time Save Volume Expiration Objects Not
Opt Saved Saved Type Serial Date Saved Saved
___ 06/11/99 23:24:24 *FULL DD0376 05/16/99 11 0
___ 06/12/99 17:04:34 *INCR QRS188 05/17/99 11 0
___ 06/18/99 17:56:27 *FULL ABC130 05/23/99 11 0

```

3. The Work with Directory Information display lists the directory items that BRMS saved in the directory you selected. If you do not want to restore the entire directory, you can continue to drill down to the next level of information. To do this, type a 9 (Work with Objects) next to the directory objects you want to review and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Objects display.

```

Work with Objects RCHAS400

Directory : /QLANSrv/NWS/RCHPID/DSK/K/edel_k/BRMS
Saved date/time . : 06/18/99 17:56:27

Type options, press Enter.
4=Remove 5=Display 7=Restore

Opt Object Volume Size
___ ARC.SH ABC130 263213
___ BACKUP.SH ABC130 220739
___ BRM.EXE ABC130 459040
___ BRM.SH ABC130 688769
1 COST.SH ABC130 537927

```

4. You can remove, display, or restore an Integrated File System object from this display. This example, however, generates the restore from the Work with Directory Information display.
5. This takes you to the Select Recovery Items display.

| Select Recovery Items                               |            |         |          |                                                                                                                            |               |                     |                 |               |  | RCHAS400 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------|---------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|---------------|--|----------|
| Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all. |            |         |          |                                                                                                                            |               |                     |                 |               |  |          |
| 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object        |            |         |          |                                                                                                                            |               |                     |                 |               |  |          |
| Opt                                                 | Saved Item | Date    | Time     | Save Type                                                                                                                  | Volume Serial | File Seq            | Expiration Date | Objects Saved |  |          |
| 1                                                   | DAILYLINK  | 5/18/99 | 17:56:27 | *FULL                                                                                                                      | ABC130        | 1                   | 5/23/99         | 11            |  |          |
| Additional Message Information                      |            |         |          |                                                                                                                            |               |                     |                 |               |  |          |
| Message ID . . . . .                                |            |         |          | CPC370E                                                                                                                    |               | Severity . . . . .  |                 | 00            |  |          |
| Message type . . . . .                              |            |         |          | Completion                                                                                                                 |               |                     |                 |               |  |          |
| Date sent . . . . .                                 |            |         |          | 06/18/99                                                                                                                   |               | Time sent . . . . . |                 | 18:06:17      |  |          |
| Message . . . . .                                   |            |         |          | 11 objects restored.                                                                                                       |               |                     |                 |               |  |          |
| Cause . . . . .                                     |            |         |          | 11 objects were restored from ABC130 sequence number 1 at 06/18/99 18:05:32. The restore operation ended on volume ABC130. |               |                     |                 |               |  |          |

6. After confirming your selection, you can press Enter to process the command.

## Restoring a Storage Space with BRMS

You can use either the Work with Link Information (WRKLNKBRM) or the Work with Media Information in BRM (WRKMEDIBRM) command to restore Integrated File System storage space. Before beginning the restore operation, vary off your Integrated PC server. This example uses the WRKLNKBRM command to restore two storage spaces, DRIVEK and DRIVEL, from the /QFPNWSSTG directory. To restore the storage space by using the WRKLNKBRM display, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKLNKBRM at a command line and press Enter.
2. Type a 9 (Work with directory information) in front of the directory you want to work with and press Enter. This takes you to the Work with objects display.
3. Type a 7 (Restore) in front of the objects you want to restore and press Enter.

| Work with Objects            |        |               |       |  | RCHAS400          |
|------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------|--|-------------------|
| Directory . . . . .          |        |               |       |  | /QFPNWSSTG        |
| Saved date/time . .          |        |               |       |  | 05/12/99 10:37:41 |
| Type options, press Enter.   |        |               |       |  |                   |
| 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Restore |        |               |       |  |                   |
| Opt                          | Object | Volume Serial | Size  |  |                   |
| 7                            | DRIVEK | ABC592        | 34816 |  |                   |
| 7                            | DRIVEL | ABC592        | 29184 |  |                   |

| Select Recovery Items                               |            |         |          |           |               |          |                 |               |  | RCHAS400 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------|---------|----------|-----------|---------------|----------|-----------------|---------------|--|----------|
| Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all. |            |         |          |           |               |          |                 |               |  |          |
| 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object        |            |         |          |           |               |          |                 |               |  |          |
| Opt                                                 | Saved Item | Date    | Time     | Save Type | Volume Serial | File Seq | Expiration Date | Objects Saved |  |          |
| 1                                                   | LANSTGS    | 6/12/99 | 10:37:41 | *FULL     | ABC592        | 1        | 7/17/99         | 3747          |  |          |
| 1                                                   | LANSTGS    | 6/12/99 | 10:37:41 | *FULL     | ABC592        | 1        | 7/17/99         | 3747          |  |          |

4. Select the items you want to recover from the Select Recovery Items display and press Enter.
5. Confirm the items you want to recover at the Confirm Recovery Items display.

6. Type a 9 (Work with objects) in front of the items you want to restore and press Enter. The recovery process begins.
7. After the restore completes, you can vary on the Integrated PC server. This can take several minutes. Once you activate the Integrated PC server, check your LAN Server environment with the WRKLNK command. You should also try out a few options from the Network Server Administration (NWSADM) menu to ensure that everything is working correctly.
8. To verify that BRMS successfully completed the restore, use the Work with Network Server Storage Spaces (WRKNWSSTG) command.

| Work with Network Server Storage Spaces                                  |        |                 |      |        |                 | RCHAS400               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|------|--------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Type options, press Enter.                                               |        |                 |      |        |                 |                        |
| 1=Create   4=Delete   5=Display   6=Print   10=Add link   11=Remove link |        |                 |      |        |                 |                        |
| Opt                                                                      | Name   | Percent<br>Used | Size | Server | Drive<br>Letter | TEXT                   |
| —                                                                        | DRIVEK | 7               | 500  |        |                 | 500 MB Server RCHPID / |
| —                                                                        | DRIVEL | 3               | 500  |        |                 | 500 MB Server RCHPID / |

9. Link the storage names with the appropriate drive letters by using the Add Server Storage Link (ADDNWSSTGL) command. You can also use option 10 from the Work with Network Storage Space (WRKNWSSTG) display to perform the same task.

### A Final Note on Restoring IFS Data Through a LAN Server

In case of system failure, you need to recover the entire system, including the LAN server/400 environment. Use the steps in your latest copy of the Recovering Your Entire System report to assist you through the recovery. In addition, however, when you begin restoring the LAN server connection, keep the following information in mind:

- Keep the Integrated PC server in a varied-off state during the entire recovery.
- Restore Integrated File System information with the default \*LNKLIST in the \*BKUGRP control group.
- After completing all of the recovery steps, vary the Integrated PC server back on with your first IPL after the recovery.
- Check the LAN Server/400 environment by trying out some options from the Network Server Administration menu. To get there, type GO NWSBRM from a command line.
- Use the ADDNWSSTGL command to link your storage spaces to drive letters.
- Vary the Integrated PC server on again.
- Use the WRKLNK command to check the status of data in the /QLANSrv directory.
- Use the WRKLNKBRM command to restore the latest save of individual object data in /QLANSrv.

## Recovering User Profiles

This example assumes that you saved your user profiles in a control group, for example, in the \*SECDATA control group or in a control group created by you. To restore your user profiles, take the following steps:

1. Use the INZBRM \*DEVICE command to clear device information. This also initializes the files for the devices currently attached to your system.
2. Type STRRCYBRM at a command line and press Enter.

3. Type \*CTLGRP in the Option field.
4. Change the value in the *Action* field to \*RESTORE.
5. Type the name of the control group that contains the user profiles into the *Control group selection* field.
6. Make sure that the value in the *Library to omit* field is \*DELETE. Press Enter.
7. Select the items you want to restore at the Select Recovery Items display and press Enter.
8. Press Enter to confirm the items you want to restore at the Confirm Recovery Items display.
9. Press F9 (Recovery defaults) at the Select Recovery Items display.
10. At the Restore Command Defaults display, change the value in the *Allow object differences* field to \*ALL. Then change the value in the *System resource management* field to \*NONE.

Restore Command Defaults

Type information, press Enter.

|                                      |         |                          |
|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------------------|
| Device . . . . .                     | *MEDCLS | Name, *MEDCLS            |
|                                      |         |                          |
| Parallel device resources:           |         |                          |
| Minimum resources. . . . .           | *SAV    | 1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL      |
| Maximum resources. . . . .           |         | 1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN       |
| End of tape option . . . . .         | *REWIND | *REWIND, *LEAVE, *UNLOAD |
| Option . . . . .                     | *ALL    | *ALL, *NEW, *OLD, *FREE  |
| Data base member option . . . . .    | *ALL    | *MATCH, *ALL, *NEW, *OLD |
| Allow object differences . . . . .   | *ALL    |                          |
|                                      |         | *NONE, *ALL, *FILELVL... |
| Document name generation . . . . .   | *SAME   | *SAME, *NEW              |
| Restore to library . . . . .         | *SAVLIB | Name, *SAVLIB            |
| Auxiliary storage pool . . . . .     | *SAVASP | Name, *SAVASP, 1-32...   |
| System resource management . . . . . | *NONE   | *ALL, *NONE, *HDW, *TRA  |

F12=Cancel

11. Press Enter once to return to the Select Recovery Items display and again to process the restore.

You can use the OS/400 command Restore User Profiles (RSTUSRPRF) to restore individual user profiles.

---

## Additional Restore Options in BRMS

This section provides information on how you can restore objects, folders, and spooled files by using other BRMS recovery commands.

### Recovering Objects with Object Detail

Use the Work with Media Information (WRKMEDIBRM) command to restore individual objects for which BRMS saved object detail. To get there, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKMEDIBRM at a command line and press Enter.

RCHAS400

Work with Media Information

Position to Date . . . . .

Type options, press Enter.  
 2=Change 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Work with media 7=Restore  
 9=Work with saved objects

| Opt | Saved Item | Date     | Time     | Save Type | Volume Serial | File Sequence | Expiration Date |
|-----|------------|----------|----------|-----------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 9   | FULL       | 05/01/99 | 8:24:14  | *QBRM     | AN2           | 2             | 05/25/99        |
|     | INCR       | 05/02/99 | 9:24:14  | *FILE     | PRG002        | 1             | 05/15/99        |
|     | MYFILE     | 05/02/99 | 10:24:14 | *FULL     | SAM486        | 1             | 12/01/99        |

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F11=Object detail F12=Cancel

2. Type a 9 (Work with Saved Objects) in front of the saved item from which you want BRMS to perform the restore. If object level detail does not exist for that item, BRMS sends a message stating that object level detail does not exist for that entry.
3. Press Enter. This takes you to the Work with Saved Items display.

RCHAS400

Work with Saved Objects

Position to Object . . .

Type options, press Enter.  
 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Work with media 7=Restore object  
 9=Work with saved members

| Opt | Object | Library | Type  | Save Date | Save Time | Volume | Message ID |
|-----|--------|---------|-------|-----------|-----------|--------|------------|
| 7   | QA1ACN | FULL    | *QBRM | 05/01/99  | 8:24:14   | AN2    |            |
| 7   | QA1ADV | FULL    | *QBRM | 05/01/99  | 8:24:14   | AN2    |            |
| 7   | QA1AHS | FULL    | *QBRM | 05/01/99  | 8:24:14   | AN2    |            |
|     | QA1ALR | FULL    | *QBRM | 05/01/99  | 8:24:14   | AN2    |            |

F3=Exit F12=Cancel

4. Type a 7 (Restore object) in front of the object you want to restore and press Enter.

RCHAS400

Select Recovery Items

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.  
 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display

| Opt | Object | Library | Type  | Save Date | Expiration Date | Volume | Message ID |
|-----|--------|---------|-------|-----------|-----------------|--------|------------|
| 1   | QA1ACN | INCR    | *FILE | 05/02/99  | 05/15/99        | AN2    |            |
| 1   | QA1ADV | INCR    | *FILE | 05/02/99  | 05/15/99        | AN2    |            |
| 1   | QA1AHS | INCR    | *FILE | 05/02/99  | 05/15/99        | AN2    |            |

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel  
 F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all

- At the Select Recovery Items display, type a 1 (Select) in front of the objects you want to restore. To restore all of the objects that are listed on the display, press F16, which selects all of them for you.
- Press Enter to confirm your selections at the Confirm Recovery Items display.
- Press Enter to begin processing the restore. At the completion of the recovery, BRMS sends a message that tells you how many objects it restored.
- Check the job log to ensure that the job completed successfully.

## Recovering Objects without Object Detail

Even if you have not instructed BRMS to retain object detail, you can still restore individual or groups of objects. To do so, use the Work with Media Information (WRKMEDIBRM) command to restore the library that contains the object or objects that you want to restore. To get there, take the following steps:

- Type WRKMEDIBRM at a command line and press Enter.
- Type a 7 (Restore) next to the item that contains the object you want to restore. Press Enter.
- This takes you to the Select Recovery Items display. At this display, type a 7 (Specify object) in front of the item that contains the item you want to restore. Press Enter. This takes you to the Restore Object (RSTOBJ) display.

Restore Object (RSTOBJ)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                             |                   |                              |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Objects . . . . .           | MYFILE            | Name, generic*, *ALL         |
|                             | + for more values |                              |
| Saved library . . . . .     | > QUSRBRM         | Name                         |
| Device . . . . .            | TAP01             | Name, *SAVF                  |
|                             | + for more values |                              |
| Object types . . . . .      | > *ALL            | *ALL, *ALRTBL, *BNDDIR...    |
|                             | + for more values |                              |
| Volume identifier . . . . . | > AN2             | Character value, *MOUNTED... |
| Sequence number . . . . .   | > 0000000002      | 1-16777215, *SEARCH          |

Bottom

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh
F10=Additional parameters F12=Cancel

F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

- At the *Object* parameter, type in the name of the object you want to restore.
- Press Enter to process the restore.

**Note:** You can restore multiple objects from the Restore Objects display.

## Recovering Individual Folders

You can restore folders that BRMS saved in documents by using the \*ALLDLO special value on the STRRCYBRM command. However, you can only restore individual folders by using the Work with Saved Folders (WRKFLRBRM) command. However, you can restore *individual folders* only if BRMS saved them with the *Retain Object Detail* parameter set to \*YES, \*OBJ, or \*MBR.

To restore an individual folder by using BRMS, take the following steps:

- Type WRKFLRBRM at a command line and press Enter.

```

Work with Saved Folders (WRKFLRBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Folder *ALL

Select dates:
 From date *BEGIN Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn
 To date *END Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn
 Save status *ALL *ALL, *NOERROR, *ERROR
 Sequence option *DATE *DATE, *FLR
 From system *LCL
 Output * *, *PRINT

Bottom
F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

```

2. Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on this display:
  - At the *Folder* parameter, indicate the name of the folder or subfolder that you want BRMS to restore. The default for this field is \*ALL. You can also specify the name of an individual folder or a generic name, which indicates a range. You can also prompt a list of saved folders to choose from by pressing F4.
  - At the *Select date* parameter, specify a range of save dates from which BRMS should pull the folders that you want to restore. This instructs BRMS to restore items that were saved during a particular period.
3. Change the other parameters as necessary. Then press Enter to prompt a list of folders from which you can select the items you want to restore.

```

Work with Saved Folders RCHAS400

Position to save date . .

Type options, press Enter.
 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Work with media 7=Restore folder
 9=Work with saved objects

Opt Folder Save Save DLO Not Volume
 Date Time Saved Saved
7 TEST1 5/10/99 14:01:45 1 0 *VOL01
7 TEST2 5/02/99 6:32:28 8 0 *VOL02
 TEST3 5/03/99 11:06:03 19 0 *VOL03

F3=Exit F12=Cancel

```

4. Type a 7 (Restore folders) in front of the folders you want to restore and press Enter. This takes you to the Select Recovery Items display.



RCHAS400

Select Recovery Items

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.  
 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify document

| Opt | Folder | Save Date | Expiration Date | DLO Saved | Not Saved | Volume |
|-----|--------|-----------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| 1   | TEST1  | 5/10/99   | 6/30/99         | 19        | 0         | *VOL01 |
| 1   | TEST2  | 5/02/99   | 7/01/99         | 8         | 0         | *VOL02 |

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel  
 F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all

- Type a 1 (Select) in front of the folders you want to restore and press Enter.
- Press Enter to confirm the items you want to recover at the Confirm Recovery Items display.
- Press Enter again to begin processing the command.
- After the command completes, review the job log to make sure that your restore completed successfully.

**Note:** You can also use the Work with Saved Folders display to remove folder information from the media content information inventory. In addition, you can review folder detail from this display.

## Recovering Spooled Files

You can use either the Work with Saved Spooled Files using BRM (WRKSPLFBRM) display or the WRKMEDIBRM command to restore spooled files. Though both commands work effectively, the WRKSPLFBRM command allows you a little more flexibility when you set up the restore.

To restore a spooled file by using the WRKSPLFBRM command, take the following steps:

- Type WRKSPLFBRM at a command line and press F4.

Work with Saved Spooled Files (WRKSPLFBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                  |       |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| Output queue . . . . .           | *ALL  | Name, *ALL                    |
| Library . . . . .                | *ALL  | Name, *ALL                    |
| Auxiliary storage pool . . . . . | *ALL  | Name, 1-32, *ALL, *SYSTEM     |
| File . . . . .                   | *ALL  | Name, *ALL                    |
| Job name . . . . .               | *ALL  | Name, *ALL                    |
| User . . . . .                   | *ALL  | Name, *ALL                    |
| User data. . . . .               | *ALL  | Name, *ALL                    |
| Select dates:                    |       |                               |
| From date . . . . .              | *ALL  | Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn |
| To date . . . . .                | *ALL  | Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn   |
| Save status . . . . .            | *ALL  | *ALL, *NOERROR, *ERROR        |
| Sequence option . . . . .        | *DATE | *DATE, *JOB, *FILE            |
| From system . . . . .            | *LCL  |                               |
| Output . . . . .                 | *     | *, *PRINT                     |

- Following are brief summaries of the key parameters on this display:

- The *Output queue* has two elements, the *Output queue* field, and the *Library* field. In the *Output queue* field, specify the output queue that you want BRMS to display in the list. In the *Library* field, specify the name of the library that contains the spooled files that you want to review. The default value for each field is \*ALL, though you can also indicate specific or generic names.
  - In the *Auxiliary storage pool* field, indicate the name of the ASP in which you placed the spooled files. The default value is \*ALL, though specific or generic ASPs can be named.
  - In the *File* field, indicate the name of the printer file that contained the spooled file when BRMS saved it. You can use the default value of \*ALL, or you can indicate a specific file name.
  - At the *Job name* parameter, specify the name of the job that created the spooled file you want to list. The default for this field is \*ALL. You can also indicate the name of a specific job.
  - At the *Select date* fields, indicate a range of dates for the saved spooled files you want to review.
3. Change the other parameters as needed. Press Enter to prompt a list of spooled files from which to select the items you want to restore.

```

Work with Saved Spooled Files

Position to date . . . _____

Type Options, press Enter.
 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Work with media 7=Restore spooled file

Opt Library Outq File Job User Date Time
7 QUSRSYS QPRINT Q1AASP Q1ARMM USER1 5/28/99 9:43:32
_ QUSRSYS QPRINT Q1ARMM Q1ARMM USER1 5/28/99 9:48:44

```

4. At the Work with Saved Spooled Files display, type a 7 (Restore spooled file) in front of the spooled file you want to restore and press Enter. This takes you to the Select Recovery Items display

```

Select Recovery Items RCHAS400

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.
 1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display

Opt Library Outq File Job User Volume
1 QUSRSYS QPRINT Q1AASP Q1ARMM USER1 *VOL05

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel
F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all

Bottom

```

5. Type a 1 (Select) in front of the spooled file you want to restore. Press F16 to select all of the spooled files on the display.
6. Press Enter at the Confirm Recovery Items display to confirm the items you want to restore.
7. Press Enter to process the restore.
8. After the restore completes, review the job log to ensure that the job completed successfully.

**Notes:**

1. During the save and restore process, BRMS keeps the spooled file attributes, file name, user name, user data field, and in most cases, the job name. IBM Operating System/400 (OS/400) assigns a new job number, system date, and time of the restore operation. You cannot restore the original time and date. Once you have restored the output queue, you can use the WRKOUTQ OPTION(\*PRINT) to spool the contents of the output queue. You may want to compare this report to the report you generated after the save.
2. Internally, BRMS saves the spooled files as a single folder, with multiple documents (spooled members) within that folder. During the restore, it reads the tape label for the folder, and restores all of the documents. If your spooled file save spans multiple tape volumes, BRMS prompts you to load the first tape to read the label information before restoring the documents on subsequent tapes. Therefore, you should plan to save your spooled files on a separate tape by using the \*LOAD exit in the control group. Or you can split your spooled files saves so that BRMS uses one tape at a time. This approach can help you during the recovery of spooled files.

In addition to its restore capability, the Work with Saved Spooled Files display allows you to remove folder information from the media content information. You can also review save information, and work with the media that contains the saved spooled files from this display.

---

## How to Perform Parallel and Concurrent Recoveries

You can recover data by using serial, concurrent, or parallel restore operations. If BRMS performed your saves as serial or concurrent backups, BRMS can restore them either serially or concurrently. On the other hand, however, you can perform parallel retrieves only if BRMS used a parallel operation to perform the save. Both concurrent and parallel restore operations require multiple tape drives.

Following are brief summaries of the characteristics of, and the differences between, serial, concurrent and parallel recoveries.

### Serial Recovery

This straightforward recovery method is the simplest way to recover data that was saved by multiple control groups. In a serial recovery operation, BRMS issues one recovery job at a time to one tape drive. BRMS performs serial restores in a sequential manner, by restoring one tape and one control group after another. By default, BRMS considers every save and restore a serial operation unless otherwise specified by you.

### Concurrent Recovery

In a concurrent recovery operation, you send multiple recovery jobs to multiple tape drives to process at the same time (concurrently). You, not BRMS, set up the concurrent recovery. To do this, try to evenly balance the size of the jobs so that they end at the same time. Concurrent recovery operations can reduce your down time after a system failure by allowing you to recover multiple libraries or objects at the same time.

### Parallel Recovery

BRMS will restore a saved item sequentially. However, if the saved item was saved using **parallel save/restore** (spreading a single object), BRMS will use the number of resources you specify up to the number of resources used to save the item. A saved item cannot be restored using parallel recovery if the object was not saved using parallel.

To perform a parallel restore of a saved item from fewer resources that were used for the save, a media library is recommended because of the additional media mounts that may be required.

## Recovering Multiple Control Groups with Concurrent Support

To perform a concurrent recovery, you need to run multiple jobs by using the STRRCYBRM command. Each command specifies the one or more items you want BRMS to recover. You must try to evenly balance the contents of the jobs so that they complete at about the same time. If you are using a media library with multiple drives, then BRMS will send the jobs there, as long as you specify that device in the recovery policy.

To process a concurrent restore with two or more stand-alone devices, you need to change the device name from the STRRCYBRM display before you can process the command. To make this change, take the following steps:

1. Set up the parameters on the STRRCYBRM command as needed. Then press Enter to prompt the Select Recovery Items display.

RCHAS400

Select Recovery Items

Type options, press Enter. Press F16 to select all.  
1=Select 4=Remove 5=Display 7=Specify object

| Opt | Saved Item | Date     | Time     | Save Type | Volume Serial | File Seq | Exp Date   | Objects Saved |
|-----|------------|----------|----------|-----------|---------------|----------|------------|---------------|
| 1   | LIB20      | 04/02/99 | 14:31:40 | *FULL     | 1951E1        |          | 1 05/07/99 | 1             |
| 1   | LIB21      | 04/02/99 | 14:31:47 | *FULL     | 1951E1        |          | 2 05/07/99 | 1             |

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F9=Recovery defaults F12=Cancel  
F14=Submit to batch F16=Select all

2. From this display, press F9 (Recovery defaults) to change the device information. This takes you to the Restore Command Defaults display.

Restore Command Defaults

Type information, press Enter.

Device . . . . . TAP01      Name, \*MEDCLS  
                                         TAP02

Parallel device resources:

|                                      |         |                          |
|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------------------|
| Minimum resources. . . . .           | *SAV    | 1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL      |
| Maximum resources. . . . .           |         | 1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN       |
| End of tape option . . . . .         | *REWIND | *REWIND, *LEAVE, *UNLOAD |
| Option . . . . .                     | *ALL    | *ALL, *NEW, *OLD, *FREE  |
| Data base member option . . . . .    | *ALL    | *MATCH, *ALL, *NEW, *OLD |
| Allow object differences . . . . .   | *NONE   |                          |
|                                      |         | *NONE, *ALL, *FILELVL... |
| Document name generation . . . . .   | *SAME   | *SAME, *NEW              |
| Restore to library . . . . .         | *SAVLIB | Name, *SAVLIB            |
| Auxiliary storage pool . . . . .     | *SAVASP | Name, *SAVASP, 1-32...   |
| System resource management . . . . . | *ALL    | *ALL, *NONE, *HDW, *TRA  |

F12=Cancel

3. To concurrently process multiple jobs on different stand-alone devices, you need to type the names of each of the devices you want to use in the *Device* fields. If a stand-alone you specify is unavailable, the job fails because there is no queuing on stand-alone devices.
4. Press Enter to twice process the command.

## Performing Parallel Recoveries

Though you can find the parallel support parameters on the recovery policy display, you probably do not want to select the parallel option from this display. This is because the recovery policy sets the defaults for all of your recoveries, and you cannot perform all of your recoveries with parallel support. Therefore, the best way for you to use the parallel option is to take the following steps:

1. Set the *Option* field on the STRRCYBRM command to \*CTLGRP.
2. Set the *Action* field to \*RESTORE.
3. Indicate the control group you want BRMS to process with parallel support in the *Control group* field.
4. Press Enter to prompt the Select Recovery Items display.
5. Select the items you want BRMS to recover and press F9 to prompt the Restore Command Defaults display.

Restore Command Defaults

Type information, press Enter.

|                        |               |
|------------------------|---------------|
| Device . . . . . TAP02 | Name, *MEDCLS |
|------------------------|---------------|

Parallel device resources:

|                                           |                          |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Minimum resources. . . . . *SAV           | 1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL      |
| Maximum resources. . . . .                | 1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN       |
| End of tape option . . . . . *REWIND      | *REWIND, *LEAVE, *UNLOAD |
| Option . . . . . *ALL                     | *ALL, *NEW, *OLD, *FREE  |
| Data base member option . . . . . *ALL    | *MATCH, *ALL, *NEW, *OLD |
| Allow object differences . . . . . *NONE  |                          |
|                                           | *NONE, *ALL, *FILELVL... |
| Document name generation . . . . . *SAME  | *SAME, *NEW              |
| Restore to library . . . . . *SAVLIB      | Name, *SAVLIB            |
| Auxiliary storage pool . . . . . *SAVASP  | Name, *SAVASP, 1-32...   |
| System resource management . . . . . *ALL | *ALL, *NONE, *HDW, *TRA  |

F12=Cancel

6. Specify the devices you want to use in the *Device* fields.
7. Specify the maximum and minimum devices that you want to allocate to the parallel job at the *Parallel device resources* parameter. The recommended value for this parameter is \*SAV. This value instructs BRMS to use the same number of resources for the parallel restore as it used to perform parallel save. You can specify \*SAV at the *Minimum resources* parameter. In addition to \*SAV, the possible values are:
  - *Minimum device resources* can be \*AVAIL (use any available devices), or any number between 1 and 32.
  - *Maximum device resources* can be \*MIN (the same value specified in the *Minimum device resource* field), \*AVAIL, or any number between 1 and 32.
8. After you review and change the parameters as needed, press Enter twice to process the command.

---

## How to Resume a Recovery

While rare, it is possible that your recovery might fail due to a faulty tape, a tape drive failure, or other error or accident. To resume a recovery that was stopped in progress, take the following steps:

1. Type STRRCYBRM at a command line and press F4 to prompt the display.
2. In the *Option* field, type \*RESUME and press Enter to prompt the next parameter.
3. If you are using the BRMS Network feature, you can use the *From system* parameter to create recovery reports for other networked systems, or to view and recover one or more of the saved items from a networked system to the local system. Refer to Chapter 13, “Networking with BRMS” on page 199 for additional information about setting up and using the BRMS Network feature. If you are recovering the local system, use the default value for this field, \*LCL, which instructs BRMS to use the system currently in use.

Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                       |           |                           |
|-----------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| Option . . . . .      | > *RESUME | *SYSTEM, *SAVSYS, *IBM... |
| From system . . . . . | *LCL      |                           |

Bottom

F3=Exit   F4=Prompt   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel   F13=How to use this display  
F24=More keys

4. Press Enter to resume the recovery.

**Note:** While you can still press F9 to prompt the additional fields for this display, BRMS does not accept changes to the parameters during a resume.

---

## Performing a Recovery without the Recovery Analysis Report

Though you should not try to restore your system without a recovery report to guide you, circumstances may arise that necessitate doing so. This section provides information that can assist you in performing a recovery without the reports. It also tells you how you might be able to generate a report in the event of disaster if you do not have one available. If you cannot locate a recovery report, OS/400 commands can help initiate the recovery process. You can use either BRMS or OS/400 commands to perform the restore.

### Identifying the Tapes you Need

Identifying the tapes you need to make the recovery is more difficult without the reports. You can identify the data on your tapes by taking them to another iSeries and using the Display Tape (DSPTAP) command to review the contents of each tape. You can manually develop a recovery plan with the information shown on the DSPTAP command. At this point, you should consider making a list that prioritizes the items you want BRMS to restore.

## Generating a Recovery Analysis Report after a Failure

If you can locate the tape containing the most up-to-date QUSRBRM data files, you can use this tape to generate a Recovering Your Entire System/Recovery Analysis report. BRMS saves the QUSRBRM recovery at the end of every save operation.

After you obtain the most up-to-date QUSRBRM tape, take the following steps to begin the restoration process:

1. Restore the Licensed Internal Code, operating system, and the required BRMS libraries from your backup tapes. The BRMS libraries you need include QBRM, QUSRBRM, QMSE, and, if applicable, information from save files.
2. Run the RSTOBJ(\*ALL) SAVLIB(QUSRBRM) MBROPT(\*ALL) command with the most up-to-date tapes you can find. Or you can run this command from save files that contain the QUSRBRM recovery files. This is the last QUSRBRM library on the tape. It should contain 14 files.
3. Run the STRRCYBRM command to generate an up-to-date Recovery Analysis report.
4. Run the WRKMEDBRM TYPE(\*ACT) OUTPUT(\*PRINT) command to generate a list of active media and their current status and location.
5. Use these reports to restore your system. You can only use the tapes that are listed on the reports to restore the licensed internal code, operating system data, and the BRMS libraries. If you used different tapes, then you need to restore these items again, this time with the tapes BRMS identifies.

---

## Using the Recovery Planning and Activity Displays

BRMS provides a display that allows you to create a detailed list of the very specific steps your organization may need to take in case of disaster recovery. BRMS also provides a display on which to list the names of the people that are associated with the steps on the list. You must use these displays in conjunction with, rather than in place of, the recovery reports you print after each save.

## Creating a Recovery Contact List

To get to the BRMS recovery planning and activity displays, take the following steps:

1. Type GO BRMRCYPLN at a command line and press Enter. This takes you to the Recovery Planning menu.

BRMRCYPLN

Recovery Planning

RCHAS400

Select one of the following:

1. Work with recovery policy

►2. Work with recovery contacts

3. Work with recovery activities

4. Print recovery activities

5. Print recovery analysis

2. Select option 2 (Work with Recovery contacts) and press Enter.

Work with Recovery Contacts

Position to . . . . . \_\_\_\_\_ Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.  
1=Add 2=Change 4=Remove 5=Display

| Opt | Recovery contact | Telephone number |
|-----|------------------|------------------|
| _1_ | Jane Doe         | 555-6565         |

3. To add a name to the list, type a 1 in the *Opt* column and the contact name in the *Recovery contact* field.
4. Then press Enter to access the remaining contact information.

Add Recovery Contact

Type information, press Enter.

Recovery contact. . . . . Jane Doe \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone number . . . . . \_\_\_\_\_

Contact information . . . . . \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. In the *Contact* information field, the name of the contact you added appears. On the other fields, add additional relevant contact information such as office location, department name, phone number, and title.
6. Press Enter to add the name to the Recovery Contact list. Once you have completed the list, you can access it again at any time to add, change, remove or display contact names as needed.

## Creating a Recovery Activities List

The BRMS recovery activity displays provide a point of reference when performing disaster recovery. The steps you list on the activity displays should be very specific, as in the following example.

**Note:** Before you can create a recovery activities list, BRMS requires that you create the contact list.

To get to the Work with Recovery Activities display, take the following steps:

1. Select option 3 (Work with recovery activities) from the Recovery Planning menu and a blank Work with Recovery Activities display appears.



Work with Recovery Activities

Position to . . . . . \_\_\_\_\_ Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.  
 1=Add 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Remove 5=Display  
 9=Change recovery information

| Opt | Activity | Seq | Text |
|-----|----------|-----|------|
|     |          |     |      |

- To create a list, place a 1 in the *Option* field, followed by an activity name in the *Activity* field. This might be the abbreviation of a department name. Then press Enter to get to the Work with Recovery Activities display.

Work with Recovery Activities

Position to . . . . . \_\_\_\_\_ Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.  
 1=Add 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Remove 5=Display  
 9=Change recovery information

| Opt | Activity      | Seq | Text                                              |
|-----|---------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | P/R           |     |                                                   |
| —   | A/P           | 3   | Accounts Payable related recovery instructions    |
| —   | A/R           | 2   | Accounts Receivable related recovery instructions |
| —   | G/L           | 3   | General Ledger related recovery instructions      |
| —   | H/R           | 7   | Human Resources related recovery instructions     |
| —   | Hardware Fail | 1   | Hardware Failure related recovery instructions    |
| —   | O/E           | 15  | Order Entry related recovery instructions         |
| —   | Power Fail    | 1   | Power failure related recovery instructions       |

- From the Work with Recovery Activities field, you can add, remove, or display activity-related information. You can also change recovery information. In this example, use this display to create a recovery activity list.

List all of the activities you want employees to perform. Then type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* field next to the activity you want to work with and press Enter. This takes you to the Add Recovery Activity display.

Add Recovery Activity

Type information, press Enter.

|                                  |                                       |       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Activity . . . . .               | P/R                                   |       |
| Recovery contact one . . . . .   | John Hernandez                        | F4    |
| Recovery contact two . . . . .   | Michelle Syska                        | F4    |
| Recovery contact three . . . . . | Kristen Taylor                        | F4    |
| Recovery contact four . . . . .  | Print-Rite Business Forms             | F4    |
| Recovery contact five . . . . .  |                                       | F4    |
| Activity sequence . . . . .      | 1                                     | 1-999 |
| Text . . . . .                   | Payroll related recovery instructions |       |

- At this display, you can provide contact detail information to match each activity.

**Note:** By placing your cursor and pressing Enter on any *Recovery contact* field on this display, you can select a name from the list of contact names you created earlier.

- Press Enter to return to the Work with Recovery Activities display. Complete and add contact names to the list as required.

Creating recovery contact and activity lists can be time-consuming. Only you can best assess the relationship between the time it takes to create them and the value that is gained by your organization.

You can print copies of your recovery activity lists by using the menu options available on the Recovery Planning menu.

---

## Additional BRMS Restore Commands

In addition to the commands discussed earlier in this chapter, BRMS provides other commands that can assist you in the recovery of various items. You should use these commands instead of the OS/400 restore commands because the BRMS commands log restore information.

| BRMS Commands    | Command Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>RSTBRM</b>    | The Restore Object using BRM command restores a copy of one or more objects for use in the Integrated File System. The RSTBRM command functions similarly to the OS/400 RST command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>RSTDLOBRM</b> | The Restore DLO using BRM command allows you to restore documents, folders, and distribution objects (mail) that BRMS saved by using the SAVDLOBRM command. The RSTDLOBRM command functions similarly to the OS/400 RSTDLO command.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>RSTLIBBRM</b> | The Restore Library using BRM command allows you to restore up to 50 libraries from BRMS media content information. You can use the RSTLIBBRM command to restore any library that BRMS saved with the Save Library using BRM (SAVLIBBRM) command. You can also use the RSTLIBBRM command to restore libraries that BRMS saved in a control group. The RSTLIBBRM command functions similarly to the OS/400 RSTLIB command. |
| <b>RSTOBJBRM</b> | The Restore Object using BRM command allows you to restore a copy of up to 50 objects from a specified library. You can use the RSTOBJBRM command to restore any object that you saved with the Save Object using BRM (SAVOBJBRM) command. You can also use the RSTOBJBRM command to restore objects that BRMS saved in a control group. The RSTOBJBRM command functions similarly to the OS/400 RSTOBJ command.          |
| <b>RSTAUTBRM</b> | The Restore Authority using BRM (RSTAUTBRM) command re-establishes the owner profiles, primary groups, and authorization list names for objects on basic user auxiliary storage pools (2–32) if this information was saved. This information is saved unless it was explicitly omitted from the save by specifying *USRASPAUT as the omit for either a *SAVSYS or *SECDTA entry in the backup policy omit list.           |

**Note:** The RSTAUTBRM command does not replace the OS/400 RSTAUT command. RSTAUTBRM is used in addition to the RSTAUT command when restoring the authority information of saved basic user auxiliary storage pool objects during a system recovery.



---

## Chapter 9. Daily Maintenance in BRMS

The BRMS maintenance function regularly and automatically cleans and updates media records. Regular removal of expired records from media and media content information files allows you to make more efficient use of your media. The centerpoint of the BRMS maintenance function is the Start Maintenance for BRM (STRMNTBRM) command, which processes the daily maintenance requirements that keep your system running effectively.

You can run maintenance as part of a backup using the BRMSplug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

---

### What the STRMNTBRM Command Does

The STRMNTBRM command provides assistance for a variety of housekeeping and maintenance tasks, and also produces useful reports that are based on your media information. IBM recommends that you run this command each day after the last save has completed. You can place this command on an automatic scheduler or in the last \*EXIT entry in the last control group used to process your backup. Instructions to do this are provided later in this chapter. In either case, it is important that the STRMNTBRM command be run after the save of the BRMS media information. Failure to do so will result in an inaccurate recovery report.

The STRMNTBRM command works by processing existing commands, such as the STREXPBRM and WRKMEDBRM commands. It also performs unique tasks that are specified on the STRMNTBRM command.

Start Maintenance for BRM (STRMNTBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                  |         |                                |
|----------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------|
| Expire media . . . . .           | *YES    | *YES, *NO                      |
| Remove media information:        |         |                                |
| Media contents . . . . .         | *EXP    | *EXP, *REUSE, *NONE            |
| Object level detail . . . . .    | *MEDCON | 1-9999, *MEDCON                |
| Remove migration information . . | 180     | 1-9999, *NONE                  |
| Run media movement . . . . .     | *NO     | *NO, *YES                      |
| Remove log entries:              |         |                                |
| Type . . . . .                   | *ALL    | *ALL, *NONE, *ARC, *BKU, *M... |
| From date . . . . .              | *BEGIN  | Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn  |
| To date . . . . .                | 90      | Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn    |
| Run cleanup operations . . . . . | *YES    | *YES, *NO                      |
| Retrieve volume statistics . . . | *YES    | *YES, *NO                      |
| Audit system media . . . . .     | *NETGRP |                                |
| + for more values                |         |                                |
| Change BRM journal receivers . . | *YES    | *YES, *NO                      |
| Print expired media report . . . | *YES    | *YES, *NO                      |

More...

F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel  F13=How to use this display  
F24=More keys

Start Maintenance for BRM (STRMNTBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                  |         |                         |
|----------------------------------|---------|-------------------------|
| Print version report . . . . .   | *EXPMED | *EXPMED, *YES, *NO      |
| Print media information . . . .  | *YES    | *YES, *NO               |
| Print recovery reports . . . . . | *ALL    | *ALL, *NONE, *RCYANL... |
| + for more values                |         |                         |
| Recovery locations . . . . .     | *ALL    | Name, *ALL, *HOME       |
| + for more values                |         |                         |
| Print system information . . . . | *NO     | *NO, *YES               |
| Reorganize BRM data base . . . . | *NO     | *YES, *NO               |

F3=Exit   F4=Prompt   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel   F13=How to use this display

F24=More keys

Bottom

The STRMNTBRM command can perform the following tasks and prints the following reports when processed:

- Expires media.
- Removes history records for expired media.
- Produces a report that lists expired media.
- Determines which, if any, libraries did not save.
- Produces a report on recovery activities (contact information).
- Collects volume error statistics and updates volume error logs.
- Cleans up any temporary files that are left over from prior operations.
- Cleans or changes journal receivers as needed and attaches new ones. Deletes old journal receivers that are based on the information in Q1APRM data area. The default is to keep the information for five days.
- Performs media movement (if specified).
- Performs a media synchronization audit to ensure that the media files on all BRMS networked systems are at the same level.
- Optionally reorganize the BRMS databases so that the deleted records in the files are removed to minimize the BRMS storage requirements on the local system.

The key reports run by the STRMNTBRM command are:

#### Backup Activity Report

This report identifies libraries and objects that were not saved. Use it to look for errors in your save operation and take action as appropriate.

#### Save Strategy Exceptions Report

Use this report to see which libraries, if any, were not saved, and to help you devise save strategies for them. If the report indicates that BRMS did not save a library already in a control group, you need to investigate why the error occurred.

**Note:** You can also run the WRKMEDIBRM SAVTYPE(\*NONE) command to see a list of unsaved libraries.

#### BRMS Recovery Reports

The STRMNTBRM command can produce any number of the three essential recovery reports (Recovery Analysis, Volume Summary, and ASP Recovery). If desired, you can make this request from the *Print recovery reports* parameter.

### Centralized Media Audit Report

The STRMNTBRM command produces this report for each system in a network. BRMS does not generate this report if you have a single-system environment. See Chapter 13, “Networking with BRMS” on page 199, for more information on this report.

### Tape Volume Report, Volume Threshold Report, and Volume Statistics Report

The STRMNTBRM command generates these reports automatically. These reports show volumes that have equalled or exceeded the usage or read/write threshold limits that are set for the media class. Check these error thresholds and take appropriate action to replace volumes with errors.

Following is a summary of the commands that can be automatically processed by the STRMNTBRM command. You can also process these commands individually if desired.

- MOVMEDBRM = Runs media movement.
- RMVLOGEBRM = Removes BRMS log entries.
- RMVMEDIBRM = Removes media information from BRMS.
- STREXPBRM = Starts expiration for BRMS.
- STRRCYBRM = Runs the Recovery Analysis/Recovering Your Entire System, Volume Summary and ASP analysis reports.
- WRKMEDBRM = Runs the Expired media report.
- WRKMEDIBRM = Generates a media information summary report.
- WRKRRCYBRM = Runs Recovery activities report.

**Because the STRMNTBRM command processes so many commands and reports, IBM strongly recommends that you review and select each of the parameters on the STRMNTBRM command very carefully.** You can review complete descriptions of all of the parameters on the STRMNTBRM command by using the online help that is available for each parameter on the command.

To review the STRMNTBRM display, type STRMNTBRM at a command line and press F4 to prompt the display.

---

## Scheduling the STRMNTBRM Command

You can process the STRMNTBRM command manually, or you can schedule it to run automatically at selected dates and times. You can process the STRMNTBRM command through either of the IBM job schedulers, or through other user-defined schedulers.

To schedule the STRMNTBRM command on the OS/400 job scheduler, take the following steps:

1. Enter the ADDJOBSCDE command from any command line. This retrieves the Add Job Schedule Entry (ADDJOBSCDE) display.
2. Type STRMNTBRM in the *Command to run* field of the ADDJOBSCDE display.

Add Job Schedule Entry (ADDJOBSCDE)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                             |               |                              |
|-----------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| Job name . . . . .          |               | Name, *JOBID                 |
| Command to run . . . . .    | > STRMNTBRM   |                              |
|                             |               |                              |
| Frequency . . . . .         |               | *ONCE, *WEEKLY, *MONTHLY     |
| Schedule date, or . . . . . | *CURRENT      | Date, *CURRENT, *MONTHSTR... |
| Schedule day . . . . .      | *NONE         | *NONE, *ALL, *MON, *TUE...   |
| + for more values           |               |                              |
| Schedule time . . . . .     | *CURRENT      | Time, *CURRENT               |
|                             |               |                              |
| Bottom                      |               |                              |
| F3=Exit                     | F4=Prompt     | F5=Refresh                   |
| F10=Additional parameters   | F12=Cancel    |                              |
| F13=How to use this display | F24=More keys |                              |

- Then press F4 to prompt the STRMNTBRM display.

Start Maintenance for BRM (STRMNTBRM) RCHAS400

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                  |                             |                                |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Expire media . . . . .           | *YES                        | *YES, *NO                      |
| Remove media information:        |                             |                                |
| Media contents . . . . .         | *EXP                        | *EXP, *REUSE, *NONE            |
| Object level detail . . . . .    | *MEDCON                     | 1-9999, *MEDCON                |
| Remove migration information . . | 180                         | 1-9999, *NONE                  |
| Run media movement . . . . .     | *NO                         | *NO, *YES                      |
| Remove log entries:              |                             |                                |
| Type . . . . .                   | *ALL                        | *ALL, *NONE, *ARC, *BKU, *M... |
| From date . . . . .              | *BEGIN                      | Date, *CURRENT, *BEGIN, nnnnn  |
| To date . . . . .                | 90                          | Date, *CURRENT, *END, nnnnn    |
| Run cleanup operations . . . . . | *YES                        | *YES, *NO                      |
| Retrieve volume statistics . . . | *YES                        | *YES, *NO                      |
| Audit system media . . . . .     | *NETGRP                     |                                |
| + for more values                |                             |                                |
| Change BRM journal receivers . . | *YES                        | *YES, *NO                      |
| Print expired media report . . . | *YES                        | *YES, *NO                      |
| More...                          |                             |                                |
| F3=Exit                          | F4=Prompt                   | F5=Refresh                     |
| F12=Cancel                       | F13=How to use this display |                                |
| F24=More keys                    |                             |                                |

- Review and change the remaining parameters as needed.
- Press Enter to save and return to the Add Job Schedule Entries display.
- At the ADDJOBSCDE display, indicate the job name, frequency, date, day, and time you want BRMS to process the STRMNTBRM command.
- Press Enter to add the job to the scheduler.

**Note:** For additional information on using and setting up job schedulers with BRMS, review "Chapter 10. Scheduling Backup and Recovery Jobs."

## Processing the STRMNTBRM Command in a Backup Control Group

You can also set the STRMNTBRM command to run as the last step on the last backup control group of the day. You can do that by submitting a batch job that uses an \*EXIT in the backup control group. To put the command in an exit, take the following steps:



1. Type WRKCTLGBRM at a command line and press Enter.
2. You can add an \*EXIT to an existing control group, or you can create an entirely new control group. As appropriate, go to either the Create Backup Control Group Entries display (option 1), or to the Edit Backup Control Group Entries display (option 2).
3. Type \*EXIT in the *Backup items* field as the last entry in the control group. Place your cursor on the word \*EXIT and press F11 (Display exits).
4. Then press F10 (Change item). This takes you to the User Exit Maintenance display.

User Exit Maintenance RCHAS400

Type command, press Enter.

```

Sequence number : 30
Where used : *EXIT
Weekly activity : SMTWTFS
Command : STRMNTBRM

```

F3=Exit    F4=Prompt    F12=Cancel

5. At this display, type STRMNTBRM in the *Command* field and press Enter. The STRMNTBRM command will now process at the end of this control group.

To ensure that the STRMNTBRM does not process until the control group has completed, you should hold the batch job queue for the duration of the control group processing. Use the Change Control Group Attributes display to hold the batch job queue.

---

## Notification of Failure to Process STRMNTBRM

If the STRMNTBRM command fails to process, BRMS sends error messages to the following locations:

- The BRMS log. Use the DSPLOGBRM command to view the entries in this log.
- The message queue specified in the BRMS system policy.

To view the current setting:

1. Type GO BRMSYSPCY, then press Enter.
2. Select Option 6 — Change notification controls, then press Enter

To view the messages use the command WRKMSG MSGQ(library-name/message-queue-name).

If a processing error occurs, review the messages and take action as needed.



---

## Chapter 10. Scheduling Backup and Recovery Jobs

You can run many of the functions that are performed by BRMS under the control of a job scheduler. For example, you can schedule daily backups to begin after nightly processing, and schedule the MOVMEDBRM or STRMNTBRM commands to run after the saves complete. You can also schedule jobs to run across networks. And, as discussed in Chapter 7, “Tailoring Your Backup” on page 83 you can also use the console monitor to schedule an unattended save.

While this chapter provides some information on the Advanced Job Scheduler for iSeries, it assumes primary use of the OS/400 job scheduler. For additional information about how to use the OS/400 job scheduler, refer to *Work Management*, SC41-5306-03. For additional information about how to use the Advanced Job Scheduler for iSeries, refer to *Job Scheduler for OS/400*, SC41-5324-00.

Many of the features in this chapter are available as part of a BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

---

### Scheduling Backup and Recovery Jobs

To access the BRMS scheduling menu, select option 10 (Scheduling) from the main BRMS menu.

BRMSCD

Scheduling

System: RCHAS400

Select one of the following:

1. Work with all BRM scheduled jobs

2. Work with all scheduled jobs

3. Change job scheduler

Selection or command  
===>

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F9=Retrieve F10=Commands F12=Cancel F13=Functions

You can access the BRMS scheduling commands and tasks by using the menu options or by commands. This chapter emphasizes the use of commands.

### Scheduling Control Group Backups

The Work with Control Groups (WRKCTLGBRM) display makes it easy to schedule backups by providing a direct interface to the OS/400 job scheduler. To schedule a control group backup, perform the following steps:

1. Type WRKCTLGBRM at a command line and press Enter.

|                                                                  |                     |                             |          |                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|
| Work with Backup Control Groups                                  |                     |                             |          | RCHAS400                           |
| Position to . . . . .                                            |                     | Starting characters         |          |                                    |
| Type options, press Enter                                        |                     |                             |          |                                    |
| 1=Create                                                         | 2=Edit entries      | 3=Copy                      | 4=Delete | 5=Display                          |
| 6=Add to schedule                                                | 8=Change attributes | 9=Subsystems to process ... |          |                                    |
|                                                                  | Full                | Incr                        | Weekly   |                                    |
| Control                                                          | Media               | Media                       | Activity |                                    |
| Opt Group                                                        | Policy              | Policy                      | SMTWTFS  | Text                               |
| *BKUGRP                                                          | *BKUPCY             | *BKUPCY                     | *BKUPCY  | Entry created by BRM configuration |
| *SYSGRP                                                          | SAVSYS              | SAVSYS                      | *BKUPCY  | Entry created by BRM configuration |
| 6 PAYTEST                                                        | BRM3590             | BRM3590                     | IFIIIFI  | Test job scheduler                 |
| ATEST                                                            | SAVF                | SAVF                        | *DFTACT  | *NONE                              |
| F3=Exit      F5=Refresh      F7=Work with BRM scheduled jobs     |                     |                             |          |                                    |
| F9=Change backup policy      F23=More options      F24=More keys |                     |                             |          |                                    |

- At the Work with Control Groups display, place a 6 (Add to Schedule) in front of the control groups you want to schedule and press Enter. This takes you to the Add Job Schedule Entry (ADDJOBSCDE) display.

|                                     |                             |                              |                                           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Add Job Schedule Entry (ADDJOBSCDE) |                             |                              |                                           |
| Type choices, press Enter.          |                             |                              |                                           |
| Job name . . . . .                  | > QBRMBKUP                  | Name, *JOB                   |                                           |
| Command to run . . . . .            | > STRBKUBRM CTLGRP(PAYTEST) | SBMJOB(*NO)                  |                                           |
|                                     |                             |                              |                                           |
| Frequency . . . . .                 | > *WEEKLY                   | *ONCE, *WEEKLY, *MONTHLY     |                                           |
| Schedule date, or . . . . .         | > *NONE                     | Date, *CURRENT, *MONTHSTR... |                                           |
| Schedule day . . . . .              | > *ALL                      | *NONE, *ALL, *MON, *TUE...   |                                           |
|                                     | + for more values           |                              |                                           |
| Schedule time . . . . .             | > '00:01'                   | Time, *CURRENT               |                                           |
|                                     |                             |                              |                                           |
|                                     |                             |                              | More...                                   |
| F3=Exit                             | F4=Prompt                   | F5=Refresh                   | F10=Additional parameters      F12=Cancel |
| F13=How to use this display         |                             | F24=More keys                |                                           |

|                                                              |           |               |                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Add Job Schedule Entry (ADDJOBSCDE)                          |           |               |                                           |
| Type choices, press Enter.                                   |           |               |                                           |
|                                                              |           |               |                                           |
| Additional Parameters                                        |           |               |                                           |
| Text 'description' . . . . . > 'Entry created for BRMS job.' |           |               |                                           |
|                                                              |           |               |                                           |
|                                                              |           |               |                                           |
|                                                              |           |               |                                           |
|                                                              |           |               |                                           |
| Bottom                                                       |           |               |                                           |
| F3=Exit                                                      | F4=Prompt | F5=Refresh    | F10=Additional parameters      F12=Cancel |
| F13=How to use this display                                  |           | F24=More keys |                                           |

The *Command to run* field identifies the command that processes the control group you added to the scheduler. In this case, BRMS uses the STRBKUBRM CTLGRP(PAYTEST) SBMJOB(\*NO) command.

3. At the *Scheduled time* parameter, specify the time on the scheduled date that you want the job submitted.
4. Review or change the other parameters as needed.
5. Press Enter to apply your changes.

### A Precaution on Submitting Control Groups to the Scheduler

You should be aware that if a delay causes a control group backup to run later than scheduled, the save may not take place as specified. The control group in this example will run nightly at 23:00.

RCHAS400

Edit Backup Control Group Entries

```

Group : ETEST
Default activity *BKUPCY
Text *NONE
Type information, press Enter.

```

| Seq | Backup<br>Items | List<br>Type | Auxiliary<br>Storage<br>Pool Device | Weekly<br>Activity<br>SMTWTFS | Retain<br>Object<br>Detail | Save<br>While<br>Active | SWA<br>Message<br>Queue |
|-----|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 10  | LIB1            |              |                                     | F                             | *ERR                       | *NO                     |                         |
| 20  | LIB2            |              |                                     | FIIIIII                       | *ERR                       | *NO                     |                         |

Bottom

F3=Exit  
F11=Display exits

F5=Refresh  
F12=Cancel

F10=Change item  
F24=More keys

Suppose that the job scheduler submits the control groups to the same job queue that is used by the month-end batch job. Should the month-end job overrun and not complete before midnight, BRMS could misread the weekly activity field as follows:

- LIB1 is **Not** saved.
- A **full** rather than incremental LIB2.

### Scheduling Backups of BRMS Save Commands

You can also schedule backups of individual libraries, objects, and document library objects (DLOs) through individual BRMS commands. To schedule individual items for backup, add any of the following commands to the *Command to run* parameter on the Add Job Schedule Entries display:

- Use the SAVLIBBRM command to schedule the save of a library.
- Use the SAVOBJBRM command to schedule the save of an object.
- Use the SAVDLOBRM command to schedule the save of a DLO.
- Use the SAVBRM command to schedule the save of an Integrated File System object.

### Scheduling Selected Recovery Items

While you cannot run the Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM) \*RESTORE command from the job scheduler, you can schedule selected recoveries. You can

schedule selected recoveries in the same way that you schedule individual save items. You can also schedule the STRRCYBRM \*REPORT command to generate reports.

To schedule selected recoveries, add any of the following commands to the *Command to run* parameter on the Add Job Schedule Entries display:

- Use the RSTLIBBRM command to restore selected user or system libraries.
- Use the RSTOBJBRM command to restore specify objects.
- Use the RSTDLOBRM command to restore documents and folders.
- Use the RSTBRM command to restore Integrated File System objects.

These commands can restore the latest copy of the selected items. You can schedule these commands to run in batch mode.

## Working with Scheduled Jobs

To work with BRMS jobs that are already added to the scheduler, press F7 from the Work with Control Groups display. This will take you to the Work with BRM Schedule Job Entries display. You can also access the Work with BRM Schedule Job Entries by taking option 1 (Work with all BRM scheduled jobs) from the BRMS Scheduling display.

Work with BRM Job Schedule Entries
RCHAS400

Type options, press Enter.  
2=Change 3=Hold 4=Remove 5=Work with 6=Release

| Opt | Job      | Status | -----Schedule----- |         |           | Recovery Action | Next Submit Date |
|-----|----------|--------|--------------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|------------------|
|     |          |        | Date               | Time    | Frequency |                 |                  |
|     | QBRMBKUP | SCD    | *ALL               | 0:01:00 | *WEEKLY   | *SBMRLS         | 10/23/98         |
|     | QBRMBKUP | SCD    | *ALL               | 0:01:00 | *WEEKLY   | *SBMRLS         | 10/23/98         |
|     | QBRMBKUP | SCD    | *ALL               | 0:01:00 | *WEEKLY   | *SBMRLS         | 10/23/98         |

Bottom

F3=Exit
F5=Refresh
F6=Add
F12=Cancel

The Work with BRM Job Schedule Entries display allows you to change, hold, remove, work with, or release scheduled jobs. It is similar to the OS/400 Work with Job Schedule display, but provides fewer options. You can, however, add a new job to the schedule by pressing F6, which will take you to the Add Job Schedule Entry display. Also note that if you choose option 4 (Remove) a confirmation display does not appear and the selected entries are immediately removed.

To review or work with **all** scheduled jobs, take option 2 (Work with all scheduled jobs) from the BRMS Scheduling menu.

## Keeping Job Log Information

You can also review scheduled jobs through the job log display. The OS/400 job scheduler has a function that allows you to work with the last submission details

of scheduled jobs, which allows you to display the job log. The job log may contain useful information regarding BRMS scheduled jobs.

When submitting jobs using the job scheduler, use the default job description for the user profile (\*USRPRF). In most cases, the job scheduler deletes the job log after the job has ended. This prevents you from viewing the job log for scheduled jobs that use the work with last submission option.

If you desire or require the job log information for scheduled jobs, specify a job description that contains LOG(4 00 \*SECLVL). To specify this new job description, press F10 (Additional parameters) on the Add Job Schedule Entry (ADDJOBSCDE) display and type the job description at the JOBID keyword.

For scheduled jobs you plan to submit once (FRQ=\*ONCE), you should also use the SAVE(\*YES) keyword. This will ensure that submission details are available if you need to check at a later stage.

If you are using Job Scheduler for iSeries, change the job description to LOG(4 00 \*SECLVL).

---

## Changing the Job Scheduler

The Change Job Scheduler (CHGSCDBRM) command allows you to change the job scheduler that is used by BRMS to schedule the requested backups or recoveries. If you use the default (\*SYSTEM) job scheduler (the OS/400 job scheduler), you can use the defaults that are provided on the Change Job Scheduler (CHGSCDBRM) display. On this display, you can specify whether to prompt the add, change or select command.

Change Job Scheduler (CHGSCDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                  |         |               |
|----------------------------------|---------|---------------|
| Scheduler type . . . . .         | *SYSTEM | *IJS, *USRDFN |
| Add a job command . . . . .      | *SYSTEM |               |
| <hr/>                            |         |               |
| Command prompt for add . . . . . | *NO     | *NO, *YES     |
| List jobs command . . . . .      | *SYSTEM |               |
| <hr/>                            |         |               |
| Command prompt for list. . . . . | *NO     | *NO, *YES     |
| Select jobs command . . . . .    | *SYSTEM |               |
| <hr/>                            |         |               |
| Command prompt for select . . .  | *NO     | *NO, *YES     |

Several of the parameters require further definition:

- **Scheduler type:** The default value for scheduler type is \*SYSTEM, which is the standard OS/400 job scheduler. If you want to specify the Job Scheduler for iSeries, select the \*IJS special value that was created specifically for the Job Scheduler for iSeries. For any other scheduler, you need to specify the \*USRDFN (User-defined) value.
- **Add job command:** Here you can change the command that is used to add a scheduled item to the job scheduler. BRMS uses the add command that you change to interface with the add function of the scheduler. To add a control group to the job scheduler from the Work with Backup Control Groups display,

type a 6 (Add to schedule) in the *Opt* column. If you are using the \*SYSTEM default values that are supplied with BRMS, you will see the ADDJOBSCDE command that is used by the OS/400 scheduler. If you are using Job Scheduler for iSeries, you will see the ADDJOBJS command. If you changed the add function at the *Add a job command* parameter, you can review it in the *Add a job command* field.

**Note:** If you specified \*NO at the *Command prompt for add* prompt, then you will remain at the Work with Backup Control Groups display. The job scheduler will process the job.

- **List jobs command:** Use this command to list jobs that are scheduled in the job scheduler. BRMS uses the list command that you change to interface with the list function of the scheduler. For example, if you are at the Scheduling menu and you want to list all jobs in the job scheduler, take menu option 2 (Work with all scheduled jobs). If you are using the default values that are supplied with BRMS, you see the WRKJOBSCDE command that is used by the OS/400 scheduler. If you are using Job Scheduler for iSeries, you will see the WRKJOBJS command. If you have changed the list function by using the **List jobs command** parameter, you will see the list command that you specified.
- **Select jobs command:** You can change the command that is used to select jobs from the job scheduler. BRMS uses the select command that you change to interface with the select function of the scheduler. For example, if you are at the Scheduling menu and you want to select all BRMS jobs in the job scheduler, take menu option 1 (Work with all BRM scheduled jobs). If you are using the default values that are supplied by BRMS, you will see the Work with BRM Job Schedule Entries display. If you change the select function by using the **Select jobs command** parameter, the display you specified will appear.

## Some Notes™ on Substitution Variables

You can specify substitution variables in any of the command strings that are used on the CHGSCDBRM command parameters that are described above. The information BRMS passes to the substitution variables depends on the BRMS function you are using. The variables are:

- **&JOBNAME** - BRMS assigns an identifier to every job: QBRMBKUP.
- **&REQUEST** - Submit the full BRMS command to the scheduler. Use the STRBKUBRM or STRARCBRM command with parameters (if applicable).
- **&APPL** - Always contains BRMS identifier that is assigned to every job. This can be used to assist a non-IBM scheduler locate jobs by an application code if they support this function.
- **&GROUP** - Control group name (if applicable).

Not all variables are applicable in each case. If the variable name is not relevant, place an asterisk (\*) in the variable.

**Note:** Before you can use the &APPL variable, you need to set up the application in the OS/400 job scheduler. To do this, select option 4 (Job Controls) from the main OS/400 Job Scheduler menu. Then select option 6 (Work with Applications) display.



### Change Job Scheduler (CHGSCDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Scheduler type . . . . . \*USRDFN        \*SYSTEM, \*IJS, \*USRDFN  
Add a job command . . . . . 'ADDJOBOS JOB(&JOBNAME) APP(&APPL)  
SCDCDE(\*DAILY) TIME(2300) CMD(&REQUEST)'

---

Command prompt for add . . . . . \*YES        \*NO, \*YES  
List jobs command . . . . . 'WRKJOBOS'

---

Command prompt for list. . . . . \*NO        \*NO, \*YES  
Select jobs command . . . . . 'WRKJOBOS APP(&APPL)'

---

Command prompt for select . . . \*NO        \*NO, \*YES

**Note:** Although it is possible to use both the OS/400 job scheduler and a vendor scheduler for BRMS, IBM does not recommend it. You will find it easier to track and control scheduling activities when using only one scheduler.



---

## **Part 3. Advanced Topics in BRMS**



---

## Chapter 11. The Functional Usage Model and BRMS Security Considerations

As a BRMS administrator, you understand the importance of protecting user and system data from deletion, distortion, and theft. The BRMS Functional Usage Model allows you to customize user access to BRMS functions (backup, recovery, and media management) and to the different components of each function. For example, you can give one user authority to change a control group, and another the authority only to use and view it. You can also use the functional usage model to grant *all* users access to a particular function or functional component.

You need to access the BRMS functional usage model through the iSeries Navigator interface. You can find instructions on how to use iSeries Navigator with the functional usage model later in this chapter. If you do not have iSeries Navigator installed on your machine, you can find some tips on how to secure your BRMS functions in the "Working with OS/400 Security Controls" section of this chapter.

BRMS also provides another security option, the SETUSRBRM command, that allows you to reset a user or group profile by job category (\*OPERATOR or \*ADMINISTRATOR). Use the Set User Usage for BRM (SETUSRBRM) command as a starting point for controlling access to BRMS functions, and use the iSeries Navigator interface to tailor your security setup to better meet your requirements. You do not need to have iSeries Navigator installed to use this command.

BRMS provides effective control over user access to BRMS functionality. Use OS/400 security options to prevent users from causing accidental or intentional damage to your files or system. However, because BRMS ships its databases with \*PUBLIC \*USE authority (which allows use but not change), irreparable damage is unlikely to occur.

**Note:** If you have the Advanced Functions feature installed, you can apply the functional usage model to the archive, retrieve, and migration components. For information on how to do so, see the *Hierarchical Storage Management* book for more information.

---

### How the Functional Usage Model Works

Use the functional usage model when you want to customize user access to certain functions or when you want to grant all users the same access to a certain function. The functional usage model provides two levels of security for each BRMS function, functional component, and specific backup and media management item (such as a policy or control group):

#### ACCESS or NO ACCESS

In the functional usage model, a user either has access to a BRMS function or component, or does not have access to it. If a user has access to a function or component, that user can use and view it. If a user has no access to that function or component, then that user cannot use or view it. At this basic level of access, a user can process a specific item (such as a library or control group) in a backup operation, but does not have the ability to change it.

## SPECIFIC CHANGE or NO CHANGE

Another level of access allows a user to change a **specific** function, component, or item. For example, to change a backup list, a user must have access to a *specific* backup list. Similarly, to change a media policy, a user must have access to a *specific* media policy. The functional usage model provides lists of existing items (control groups, backup lists, media and move policies, and so on) for which you can grant specific access.

With the functional usage model, you can give a user both types of access (so that the user can both use and change a particular function, component, or item). Or you can give a user just one type of access, for example, access to use, but not change, a particular function, component, or item.

The following section summarizes your security options.

## Backup Function

In the backup area, the following usage levels are available:

### Basic Backup Activities

This is the basic level of backup usage. Those with Basic Backup Activities access can use and view the backup policy, control groups, and lists. Use access also allows these users to process backups by using control groups (through the STRBKUBRM command) or by libraries, objects, or folders (SAVLIBBRM, SAVOBJBRM, or SAVFLRLBRM). A user without access to basic backup activities cannot see backup menu options or command parameter options.

### Backup Policy

Users with access to the Backup Policy can change the backup policy, in addition to using and viewing it. Users without access to the backup policy cannot change it.

### Backup Control Groups

Users with access to Backup Control Groups can change specific control groups, in addition to using and viewing them. You can find a list of all of your existing control groups under the backup control groups heading in iSeries Navigator. You can grant a user access to any number of specific control groups. Users without access to the archive control groups cannot change them.

### Backup Lists

Users with access to Backup Lists can change specific backup lists, in addition to using and viewing them. You can find a list of all of your existing backup lists under the backup lists heading in Operations Navigator. You can grant a user access to any number of specific backup lists. Users without access to a backup list cannot change it.

## Recovery Function

In the recovery area, the following usage levels are available:

### Basic Recovery Activities

This is the basic level of recovery usage. Users with Basic Recovery Activities access can use and view the recovery policy. In addition, they can also use the WRKMEDIBRM command to process basic recoveries, and the RSTOBJBRM and RSTLIBBRM commands to perform individual restores. Users without access to basic recovery activities cannot see recovery menu options or command parameter options.

### **Recovery Policy**

Users with access to the Recovery Policy can change the recovery policy, in addition to using and viewing it. Users without access to the recovery policy cannot change it.

## **Media Management Components**

In the area of media management, the following usage levels are available:

### **Basic Media Activities**

This is the basic usage level for this function. Users with access to Basic Media Activities can perform basic media-related tasks such as using and adding media to BRMS. Users with this access can also use and view, but not change, media policies, and media classes. Users without access to basic media activities cannot see related menu options or command parameter options.

### **Advanced Media Activities**

Users with access to the Advanced Media Activities can perform media tasks such as expiring, removing, and initializing media.

### **Media Policies**

Users with access to the Media Policies can change specific media policies, in addition to using and viewing them. You can find a list of all of your existing media policies under the media policies heading in iSeries Navigator. You can grant a user access to any number of media policies. Users without access to a media policy cannot change it.

### **Media Classes**

Users with access to the Media Classes can change specific media classes, in addition to using and viewing them. You can find a list of all of your existing media classes under the media classes heading in iSeries Navigator. You can grant a user access to any number of media classes. Users without access to a media class cannot change it.

### **Media Information**

Users with Media Information access can change media information from the Work with Media Information (WRKMEDIBRM) displays.

### **Basic Movement Activities**

Users with access to Basic Movement Activities can manually process or display MOVMEDBRM commands but cannot change them.

### **Move Verification**

Users with access to move verification can perform move verification tasks.

### **Move Policies**

Users with access to Move Policies can change specific move policies, in addition to using and viewing them. You can find a list of all of your existing move policies under the move policies heading in iSeries Navigator. You can grant a user access to any number of move policies. Users without access to a move policy cannot change it.

## **System-Related Functions**

In the system area, the following usage options are available:

### **Basic System Activities**

Users with basic system-related activities can use and view device displays

and commands. They can also view and display ASP information and commands. Users with this access level can also use and view the system policy.

#### **Devices**

Users with device access can change device-related information. Users without this access are unable to change device information.

#### **Auxiliary Storage Pools**

Users with access to ASP information can change information about BRMS ASP management.

#### **Maintenance**

Users with maintenance access can schedule and run maintenance operations.

#### **System Policy**

Users with access to the system policy can change system policy parameters.

**Log** Any user can display log information, but only those with Log access can remove log entries.

#### **Initialize BRM**

Users with this access can use the INZBRM command.

---

## **Implementing the Functional Usage Model**

Use the iSeries Navigator interface to access the functional usage model feature. To get to a list of BRMS function and components, perform the following steps from your iSeries Navigator window:

1. Highlight your system name and, from the File menu, select Application Administration. If you have iSeries Navigator installed, but do not see the Application Administration feature, then you need to reinstall it.
2. When the Application Administration dialog appears, click the Host Applications tab.
3. From the Host Applications dialog select the Backup, Recovery, and Media Services for iSeries product.
4. Click the BRMS icon to expand the tree structure to see the different functions and components available.

Following is a summary of what you can see or do on the Host Applications display:

- In the **Function** column, you can see the names of the BRMS functions and functional components.
- If you highlight a box in the **Default Usage** column, you are granting all users access to that function or functional component. An X in a Default Usage box grants all users access to the function or component to the left of the box.
- If you type a checkmark in the **All Object Usage** column, you are indicating that a user or number of users have \*ALLOBJ authority at the user level. The OS/400 operating system provides a special \*ALLOBJ security value, which allows user access to all objects on the iSeries. A user with (\*ALLOBJ) authority automatically has complete access to the BRMS functions and components that you mark. If you do not type a checkmark in this box, then BRMS ignores the users \*ALLOBJ authority and requires customized access.
- To customize user access, click on the **Customize** button on the bottom right of the display. From the Customize display, you can select individual users by



name and tailor their access as needed. When you customize user access to any of the functions or functional components, an X appears in the **Customize Access** column on the Host Applications display.

## Registering New BRMS Activities with the Functional Usage Model

Once you establish the Functional Usage Model for BRMS users, BRMS begins registering new activities with the OS/400 security system. Each time you create a new control group, list, media policy, media class, or move policy, BRMS adds it to the usage model. When this happens, BRMS records the name of the new item in the log. You can use the DSPLOGBRM \*SEC command to review the log message. BRMS registers each of the new items with the default usage level that you specified in the system policy.

To get to the Change System Policy display, take the following steps:

1. Type GO BRMSYSPCY at a command line and press Enter.
2. Select option 1 (Display or change system policy).

Change System Policy

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                      |           |                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Media policy . . . . .               | FULL      | Name, F4 for list |
| Devices . . . . .                    | TAPMLB04  | Name, F4 for list |
| Home location for media . . . . .    | *HOME     | Name, F4 for list |
| Media class . . . . .                | CART3490E | Name, F4 for list |
| Sign off interactive users . . . . . | *NO       | *YES, *NO         |
| Sign off limit . . . . .             | 30        | 0-999 minutes     |
| Output queue . . . . .               | *PRTF     | Name, *PRTF       |
| Library . . . . .                    |           | Name, *LIBL       |
| Day start time . . . . .             | 0:00:00   | Time              |
| Media monitor . . . . .              | *YES      | *YES, *NO         |
| Shared inventory delay . . . . .     | 60        | 30-9999 seconds   |
| Auto enroll media . . . . .          | *NO       | *NO, *YES         |
| Trace . . . . .                      | *NO       | *NO, *YES         |
| Default usage. . . . .               | *NO       | *NO, *YES         |

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel

3. The value in the *Default usage* field specifies whether to give default access to the specific BRMS object that you are creating, for example, a control group, backup list, or policy.
4. Press Enter to save your changes and exit.

---

## Working with the SETUSRBRM Command

Use the SETUSRBRM command as a starting point to grant system operators and administrators access to BRMS functions and components. Then use the functional usage model to *customize* access by user or when you want to grant all users access to a certain function. BRMS bases these default operator and administrator categories on the kinds of activities that are usually performed by users in these roles.

To get to the Set User Usage for BRM (SETUSRBRM) display, take the following steps:

1. Type SETUSRBRM at a command line and press F4 to prompt the display.

Set User Usage for BRM (SETUSRBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| User . . . . .            | Character value, *DEFAULT |
| Usage . . . . . *OPERATOR | *OPERATOR, *ADMIN         |

F3=Exit   F4=Prompt   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel   F13=How to use this display
Bottom

F24=More keys

2. In the *User* field, type in the name of an existing group or user profile or use the \*DEFAULT value. \*DEFAULT means that the default user has access to the functions associated with the job category that is specified in the *Usage* field.
3. In the *Usage* field, select either the \*OPERATOR or the \*ADMIN value.  
 If you select the \*ADMIN value, the user named in the *User* field has use and change access to all of the BRMS functions and functional components.  
 If you select the \*OPERATOR value, the user named in the *User* field has use of the following BRMS functions:
  - Basic backup activities
  - Basic media activities
  - Basic movement activities
  - Basic archive activities (when Advanced feature is installed)
  - Basic migration activities (when Advanced feature is installed)
 but is removed access to the function components. This provides a basic set of functions to which to can grant additional function and functional component authority.
4. Press Enter to apply your changes.

**Note:** SETUSRBRM is a one time reset of access to functions. Information about user job categories (\*OPERATOR or \*ADMIN) is not kept.

Suppose you want to restrict user BRMSOPER to basic activities but allow this user to initialize media. You would:

1. Run the command  
 SETUSRBRM USER(BRMSOPER) USAGE(\*OPERATOR)  
  
 to limit the user to basic activities.
2. Go to BRMS host application in the iSeries Navigator Application Administration.
  - Click on the system under **My connections**.
  - Click on the **Configure Application Administration** task.
  - Click the on **Host Applications** tab.
3. Grant the user access to *Advanced media activities* to enable media initialization.
  - Open the **Backup Recovery and Media Services** folder.
  - Open the **Media** folder.
  - Right click on **Advanced media activities**.

- Click **Customize**.
  - Add the BRMSOPER to the Access allowed list.
  - Click **OK**.
4. Grant the user access to the *Media class* functional components which will be required by the initialization function.
- Right click on a media class in the list.
  - Click **Customize**.
  - Add user BRMSOPER to the Access allowed list for this media class.
  - Click **OK**.
  - Right click on the media class again.
  - Click **Copy Access Settings**.
  - Right click on the **Media class** folder.
  - Click **Paste**.

Application Administration copies the access information from the customized media class to all media classes in the Media classes folder.

---

## Securing the Console Monitor

You can run saves that require a restricted state, such as \*SAVSYS, from the system console in a secure, unattended mode.

Enter a password to suspend the console. Once suspended, the console is again fully available. To avoid this security exposure, create a new user profile (for example, CONSOLE) that uses QBRM as the current library. The new user profile calls the console monitor program (Q1ACCON) as its initial program, and uses the \*SIGNOFF menu as its initial menu.

```

 Create User Profile (CRTUSRPRF)

Type choices, press Enter.

User profile CONSOLE
Name User password Name, *USRPRF, *NONE
Set password to expired *NO, *YES
Status *ENABLED *ENABLED, *DISABLED
User class *SECOFR *USER, *SYSOPR, *PGMR...
Assistance level *SYSVAL *SYSVAL, *BASIC, *INTERMED...
Current library QBRM Name, *CRTDFT
Initial program to call Q1ACCON Name, *NONE
Library QBRM Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
Initial menu *SIGNOFF Name, *SIGNOFF
Library *LIBL Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB >
Limit capabilities *NO *NO, *PARTIAL, *YES
Text 'descriptions' BRMS Console Monitor Profile

```

Start the console monitor by signing on with this new user profile. Use F9 to enter commands at this display only if you enter the CONSOLE profile password. Any attempt to end the console monitor results in a sign off.

---

## Working with OS/400 Security Controls

To achieve increased security, combine OS/400 security controls with onsite security measures and the BRMS functional usage model. User management is responsible for the evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication environments.

OS/400 security features include the use of passwords, a security option to limit read/write access for files, libraries, and folders during normal operations. To better understand OS/400 security options, review the Security Reference manual.

To ensure that you are protecting your media, IBM recommends that you restrict access to the following BRMS-specific commands. Do this in addition to the other security measures that are discussed in this chapter.

- CHGMEDBRM
- CHGSCDBRM
- RMVMEDBRM
- ADDMEDIBRM
- RMVMEDBRM
- RSTAUTBRM
- RSTxxxBRM
- INZMEDBRM

IBM also recommends that you restrict access to the following OS/400 commands:

- SAVSTG
- INZTAP

Use the Grant Object Authority (GRTOBJAUT) command to grant users access to these BRMS and OS/400 commands. Use the RMVOBJAUT (Remove Object Authority) command to remove user access from these commands.

**Notes:**

1. IBM also recommends that you restrict user access to the QBRM library to BRMS users.
2. IBM ships a default user profile that is called QBRMS as part of the basic OS/400 package. Do not delete this profile. This profile resolves security and authority issues between BRMS and OS/400 during a recovery, thereby restoring the BRMS profile in advance of other user profiles. For more information on QBRMS and network security, see Chapter 13, “Networking with BRMS” on page 199.

## BRMS Media Security

BRMS monitors and protects media operations in the following ways:

- BRMS provides media protection against overwriting by checking the media inventory before using a tape. This ensures that the volume is available for use in the media scratch pool. If the volume is unavailable, BRMS rejects it, and sends a message that suggests an available volume.
- Media output to each function requires that the media be of the correct class. If it is not, BRMS rejects it, logs the attempted use, and sends a message suggesting an available volume.

**Note:** BRMS performs no media inventory checking if you use the OS/400 Save Storage (SAVSTG) command to back up your system. BRMS does not log this usage. Therefore, IBM recommends that you secure the SAVSTG command and that you use volumes that are not managed by BRMS for SAVSTG operations.

At the *Secure media* parameter on the media policy, you can specify whether to apply volume security to volumes in a selected media class. If your media policy

specifies a TSM server, then you must also specify \*ADSM at the *Secure media* prompt. If you specify \*ADSM at the Secure media prompt, then you must also specify \*ADSM at the media class and move policy prompts. You can find more information on TSM in Chapter 12, “Setting Up BRMS as a Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) Client” on page 189.

**Note:** Only users with \*ALLOBJ or \*SAVSYS authority can read a secured volume. BRMS logs any unauthorized attempts, and denies read access. To use the secure option, you also need \*ALLOBJ or \*SAVSYS authority. You can secure media by changing the value in the *Secure Media* field on the media policy that you want to use for this backup to \*YES.

To prevent the accidental initialization of media, set the INZMEDBRM command to CHECK(\*YES). This way, BRMS will not initialize media that contains active files. You cannot use the OS/400 INZTAP command to initialize BRMS media unless you have the appropriate user authority.

You can use the Remove Media Volumes from BRM (RMVMEDBRM) command to secure the process of removing media and media information. You can also use the Remove Media Info from BRM (RMVMEDIBRM) command. BRMS processes commands that contain the 4=Remove option (for media or media information) through the RMVMEDBRM and RMVMEDIBRM commands. For example, BRMS uses the RMVMEDBRM command to process remove requests from the Work with Media (WRKMEDBRM) command. You can process any command that allows the removal of media information, such as WRKMEDIBRM, WRKSPLFBRM, WRKOBJBRM, WRKLIBBRM, through the RMVMEDIBRM command.



---

## Chapter 12. Setting Up BRMS as a Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) Client

The Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM), formerly the ADSTAR Distributed Storage Manager (ADSM), is IBM's recommended solution for providing automated, centralized backup, recovery, and storage management for workstations and network servers. To find out more about TSM, visit the Tivoli Web site at [http://www.tivoli.com/products/index/storage\\_mgr](http://www.tivoli.com/products/index/storage_mgr).

---

### An Overview of the BRMS Application Client

You can use BRMS to save user data on distributed iSeries systems to any TSM server. You can do this by using a BRMS component that is called the BRMS Application Client, which is part of the standard BRMS product.

The BRMS Application Client has the look and feel of BRMS and iSeries. It is not a TSM Backup or Archive client. There is little difference in the way BRMS saves objects to TSM servers and the way it saves objects to media. A TSM server is just another device that BRMS uses for your save and restore operations.

The BRMS Application Client communicates with TSM servers through a special set of APIs that are referred to as the TSM Application Programming Interface for iSeries. A separate CD-ROM that comes with the standard BRMS product provides a copy of these APIs. If you cannot locate this media, you can download the information from the BRMS web site at <http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/service/brms/adsmapi.htm>. Follow the installation steps that are outlined in the web page.

### Benefits

The BRMS Application Client for TSM provides the following benefits for one or more systems at offsite locations:

- You can use BRMS policies to save non-system objects across a network for storage on any server in the TSM family.
- You can reduce the amount of media that is required at the offsite location, thereby increasing the level of backup automation.
- You can reduce the amount of time that is spent managing media.
- You can minimize device purchases on the offsite system.

### Restrictions

Any user data that you can save to a save file, you can save to a TSM server by using the BRMS Application Client. Typically, this data is created by the user and is not required to restore OS/400 to a functional level. Therefore, security data, configuration data, and licensed programs are excluded from save operations to TSM servers.

Following is a list of additional restrictions that are placed on BRMS Application Client operations.

- You cannot save iSeries system data to a TSM server. You must store system data on local media so that it is available for system recovery.
- BRMS does not save \*IBM type libraries to TSM servers.

- BRMS does not save IBM-supplied libraries that are considered user data such as QGPL, QUSRBRM or QUSRSYS libraries to TSM servers.
- You cannot schedule operations from a TSM server, though you can schedule operations by using BRMS.
- BRMS uses its own media policies to manage the retention and expiration of data that is stored on the TSM server. TSM policies are not used for this purpose.
- You cannot save BRMS media information on a TSM server. You must save this information to local media so that it is available for recovery.

## Setting Up Your BRMS Client

To establish the connection between TSM and BRMS, take the following steps:

### Steps at the TSM Server

Ask your TSM administrator to perform the following tasks:

- Register your system node name and assign it to a TSM domain that does not perform scheduled backups.

**Note:** When you register the system as a node with the TSM server, make sure you use COMPRESS=Client or COMPRESS=No, and BACKDELETE=Yes on the REGISTER Node command.

- Provide the management class name if that name is different from STANDARD.
- Provide the communications protocol that you will use to connect to the TSM server.
- Provide a name that indicates the communications category (for example, \*APPC or \*NET) you need to use.
- The TSM STANDARD management class does not provide the most efficient use of TSM server storage when used with the BRMS Application Client. You should consider using the following TSM administrative commands to create and enable a new TSM domain and TSM management class, and registering nodes for BRMS use.

```
DEFINE DDomain BRMS DESCRIPTION="Domain for BRMS Application
Clients" BACKRETention=365 ARCHRETention=0

DEFINE POLicyset BRMS BRMS DESCRIPTION="Policy set for BRMS
Application Clients"

DEFINE MGmtclass BRMS BRMS BRMS DESCRIPTION="Management
class for BRMS Application Clients"

DEFINE COpYgroup BRMS BRMS BRMS STANDARD Type=Backup
DESTination=storage pool name
VERExists=1 VERDeleted=0 RETExtra=0 RETOnly=0

ASSign DEFMGmtclass BRMS BRMS BRMS

ACTivate POLicyset BRMS BRMS

Register Node node-name password DDomain=BRMS COMPRESS=NO BACKDELETE=Yes
```

BRMS will be the management class name that is used by the BRMS Application Client.

- If the management class you are using for the BRMS Application Client uses a sequential access storage pool, you need to be aware that each library saved by the client starts and ends within a client session. If the device class used by the



sequential storage pool has a mount retention of 0 minutes, the tape volume is mounted at the start of a session and dismounted at the end of a session. If you are seeing a lot of tape mounts and dismounts during the backup, review the mount retention attribute on the TSM server and change it as required to improve your response time.

## Steps at the TSM Client

### 1. Install the TSM Application Program Interface (TSM APIs)

If you have the TSM APIs on CD-ROM, use the following command:

RSTLICPGM(5733197) DEV(device name where device-name is the name of the device for the CD-ROM that contains the Tivoli Storage Manager OS/400 Client API (TSM APIs).

If you downloaded the APIs from the Internet, use the following command:

RSTLICPGM LICPGM(5733197) DEV(\*SAVF) SAVF (library-name/save-file-name) where the SAVF parameter specifies the library and the save file that contains the TSM APIs. The TSM APIs can be found on the BRMS Web Page at: <http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/service/brms/adsmapi.htm>

**Note:** The TSM APIs are currently available at a Version 4 Release 2 Level 1. The previous level was Version 3 Release 1 Level 0. If you are using BRMS in a network and sharing media information and are using Version 4 Release 2 Level 1 APIs, you must update all systems using TSM to this level. A system using the Version 3 Release 1 Level 0 APIs will not be able to restore objects saved to TSM using the Version 4 Release 2 Level 1 APIs. However, the Version 4 Release 2 Level 1 APIs will be able to restore objects saved using either the Version 3 Release 1 Level 0 APIs or the Version 4 Release 2 Level 1 APIs.

### 2. Install BRMS

You can find information on how to install BRMS in Chapter 2, "Installing and Initializing BRMS" on page 11.

### 3. Add a location for your TSM server

To get to the Work with Storage Locations display, type WRKLOCBRM at a command line and press Enter.

| Work with Storage Locations                                |          |         |                     |                                    | RCHAS400 |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|---------------------|------------------------------------|----------|
| Position to . . . . .                                      |          |         | Starting characters |                                    |          |
| Type options, press Enter.                                 |          |         |                     |                                    |          |
| 1=Add 2=Change 3=Copy 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Work with media |          |         |                     |                                    |          |
| 7=Work with containers                                     |          |         |                     |                                    |          |
| Opt                                                        | Location | Volumes | Containers          | Text                               |          |
| 1                                                          | TSMSEVER |         |                     |                                    |          |
|                                                            | *HOME    | 97      | 1                   | Entry created by BRM configuration |          |
|                                                            | VAULT    | 0       | 0                   | Entry created by BRM configuration |          |
| Bottom                                                     |          |         |                     |                                    |          |
| F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel                              |          |         |                     |                                    |          |

- At the Work with Storage Locations (WRKLOCBRM) display, type a 1 (Add) in the *Opt* field.
- Then type a name for your TSM server in the *Location* field and press Enter. This takes you to the Add Storage Location display.

Add Storage Location

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                   |                                 |           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Storage location . . . . .        | TSM SERVER                      | Name      |
| Address line 1 . . . . .          | Computer room, parent location. |           |
| Address line 2 . . . . .          |                                 |           |
| Address line 3 . . . . .          |                                 |           |
| Address line 4 . . . . .          |                                 |           |
| Address line 5 . . . . .          |                                 |           |
| Contact name . . . . .            | Jennie Doe                      |           |
| Contact telephone number. . . . . |                                 |           |
| Retrieval time . . . . .          | .0                              | Hours     |
| Allow volumes to expire . . . . . | *NO                             | *YES, *NO |
| Media slotting . . . . .          | *NO                             | *YES, *NO |
| Text . . . . .                    | TSM server location             |           |

F3=Exit    F12=Cancel

- c. Use the address fields on this display to document the location of the TSM server. You can use the contact information fields to identify the TSM administrator and other important contacts.
- d. Use the default values in the *Allow volumes to expire* and the *Media slotting* fields.
- e. In the *Text* field, type a description for this TSM location.
- f. Press Enter to save the location information.

#### 4. Create a media policy

A media policy for TSM servers is important because BRMS, rather than TSM, manages the retention and expiration of data that is stored on TSM servers.

Take the following steps to create a media policy for your TSM server:

- a. At the Work with Media Policies display, type a 1 in the *Opt* column.
- b. Type a policy name in the *Policy* column.
- c. Press Enter to prompt the Create Media Policy display.

Create Media Policy

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                    |                   |                                            |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Media policy . . . . .             | TSM               | Name                                       |
| Retention type . . . . .           | 2                 | 1=Date, 2=Days,<br>3=Versions, 4=Permanent |
| Retain media . . . . .             | 35                | Date, Number                               |
| Move policy . . . . .              | *ADSM             | Name, *NONE, *ADSM, F4                     |
| Media class . . . . .              | *ADSM             | Name, *SYSPCY, *ADSM, F4                   |
| Storage location . . . . .         | TSM SERVER        | Name, *ANY, F4 for list                    |
| Save to save file . . . . .        | *NO               | *YES, *NO                                  |
| ASP for save files . . . . .       | *SYSTEM           | Name, *SYSTEM, 1-32                        |
| Save file retention type . . . . . | 4                 | 1=Date, 2=Days,<br>3=Permanent, 4=None     |
| Retain save files . . . . .        | *NONE             | Date, Number, *NONE                        |
| ASP storage limit . . . . .        | *SYS              | *SYS, 1-99                                 |
| Secure media . . . . .             | *ADSM             | *YES, *NO, *ADSM                           |
| Text . . . . .                     | TSM media policy. |                                            |

More....

F3=Exit    F4=Prompt    F5=Refresh    F12=Cancel

- d. In the *Media policy* field, specify the \*ADSM value. This name indicates that a TSM policy, rather than a BRMS policy, manages media movement.

- e. Specify \*ADSM in the *Media policy* field. This indicates that BRMS media classes will not be associated with TSM devices.
- f. Set the *Storage location* field to the value that you specified in Step 3.
- g. Specify \*ADSM in the *Secure media* field. This indicates that a TSM policy, rather than a BRMS policy, secures your data.

Create Media Policy

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                    |       |               |
|------------------------------------|-------|---------------|
| Required volumes . . . . .         | *NONE | *NONE, 1-9999 |
| Mark volumes for duplication . . . | *NO   | *NO, *YES     |

Bottom

F3=Exit   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel

- h. In the *Text* field, type in a description for this TSM policy. Then page down to the next Create Media Policy display.
- i. Use the default value of \*NONE in the *Required volumes* field, and \*NO for the *Mark Volumes for Duplication* field. The TSM policy, rather than the BRMS policy, manages these activities.
- j. Press Enter to review the additional fields:

Create Media Policy

Type choices, press Enter.

|                                    |               |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Required volumes . . . . .         | *NONE         | *NONE, 1-9999 |
| Mark volumes for duplication . . . | *NO           | *NO, *YES     |
| TSM management class . . . . .     | BRMS          |               |
| TSM security:                      |               |               |
| TSM node . . . . .                 | APPN.RCHAS400 |               |
| TSM password . . . . .             | *NONE         | Name, *NONE   |

Bottom

F3=Exit   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel

- k. In the *TSM management class* field, specify the BRMS management class name provided by your TSM administrator. Use the default value of STANDARD if you did not receive a management class name from the administrator.
  - l. The TSM security parameter has two elements, *TSM node* and *TSM password*. Specify the node name and password that identifies this system to the TSM server. Use the \*NONE value in the *TSM password* field only if the TSM server does not require authentication of client operations.
  - m. Press Enter to create the media policy.
5. **Create a TSM device**

You can create a TSM device at the Work with Devices (WRKDEVBRM) display. To get there, type WRKDEVBRM at a command line and press Enter. At the Work with Devices display, take the following steps:

- a. Type a 1 in the *Opt* field.
- b. Type a name in the *Device* field. Choose a name that is representative of your TSM server.
- c. In the *Category* field, type in the name of the communications category you want to use. The values for this field are:
  - \*APPC: This device will connect to the TSM server by using SNA protocol.

**Note:** BRMS presents a BRM1240 – Device TSM is not allowed. If the device description does not exist, then you need to create it. Use the WRKDEV DEDV(\*CMN) command to review the available device descriptions. If you cannot find one that describes the remote location of your TSM server, then you need to create this device by using the CRTDEVAPPC command.

- \*NET: This device connects to the TSM server by using TCP/IP protocol.

Work with Devices
RCHAS400

Position to . . . . . Starting characters  
 Type options, press Enter.  
 1=Add 2=Change 4=Remove 5=Display  
 8=Work with status

| Opt | Device                | Category        | Type/Model | Text                               |
|-----|-----------------------|-----------------|------------|------------------------------------|
| 1   | TAPMLBBRM<br>TSMSEVER | *TAPMLB<br>*NET | 3575/018   | Entry created by BRM configuration |

More...

F3=Exit
F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

- d. Press Enter to get to the next display. The title of the next display that you see depends on which category you chose at the Work with Devices display. For example, if you chose \*NET, you will see the Add Net Device display.

Add Net Device

Net device . . . . . : TMSERVER

Type choices, press Enter.

Text . . . . . TSM Server

Location . . . . . TMSERVER      Name, F4 for list

TSM file space . . . . . \*LCL

Buffer size . . . . . \*DEVTYPE      \*DEVTYPE, 1-512 KB

Internet address . . . . . 123.345.567.890

Internet port . . . . . 1500      1-65534

F3=Exit    F4=Prompt    F12=Cancel

- e. In the *Text* field, type in a description of the TSM device.
  - f. In the *Location* field, type in the name of the location you created in Step 3.
  - g. Use \*LCL as the default name in the *TSM file space* field. Do not specify a unique file space name unless you clearly understand how TSM uses file spaces.
  - h. If you specified \*NET device for the device category on the WRKDEV display, you must specify an Internet address and port for the TSM server. Enter the TCP/IP address and port information that your TSM administrator provided. Then press Enter to create the device.
6. **Change existing control groups to TSM devices**
- You can easily change an existing control group which uses local devices to use TSM devices provided that the data specified in the control group meets the criteria for user data allowed to be saved on TSM servers. Take the following steps to change an existing control group:
- a. Go to the Work with Backup Control Groups display.
  - b. Place an 8 (Change attributes) in the *Opt* field in front of the control group you want to change, and press Enter.
  - c. This takes you to the Change Control Group Attributes display.

Change Backup Control Group Attributes

Group . . . . . : SAMPLE

Type information, press Enter.

Media policy for:

|                               |            |                   |
|-------------------------------|------------|-------------------|
| Full backups . . . . .        | TSM        | Name, F4 for list |
| Incremental backups . . . . . | TSM        | Name, F4 for list |
| Backup devices . . . . .      | TSM SERVER | Name, F4 for list |

Parallel device resources:

|                                      |         |                        |
|--------------------------------------|---------|------------------------|
| Minimum resources . . . . .          | *NONE   | 1-32, *NONE, *AVAIL    |
| Maximum resources . . . . .          |         | 1-32, *AVAIL, *MIN     |
| Sign off interactive users . . . . . | *BKUPCY | *YES, *NO, *BKUPCY     |
| Sign off limit . . . . .             | *BKUPCY | 0-999 minutes, *BKUPCY |
| Default weekly activity . . . . .    | *BKUPCY | SMTWTF(S/F/I), *BKUPCY |
| Incremental type . . . . .           | *BKUPCY | *CUMUL, *INCR, *BKUPCY |

F3=Exit    F4=Prompt    F12=Cancel

- d. Change the full and incremental media policy fields to reflect the name of the TSM media policy you created in Step 4. You can use F4 from the media policy fields to select from a list of media policies.
- e. Change the *Backup devices* field to reflect the name of the TSM device you created in step 5. Press F4 from the *Backup devices* field to select from a list of devices. You can specify only one TSM device on this display.
- f. Roll to the next page of this display and change the value *Automatically backup media information* field to \*NONE. This prevents BRMS from storing the media information on the TSM server when the save of this control group completes. BRMS will need this information to print a recovery report that refers to TSM. For this reason, you need to issue a SAVMEDIBRM command after the save to the TSM server.
- g. Press Enter when you have finished with the control group updates.

You are now ready to perform saves to a TSM server while using this control group. You can use the locations, media policies, and devices you just created with other backup or archive control groups.

---

## Using TSM Automatic Password Management

If you have installed Version 4, Release 2, Level 1 or later of the Tivoli Storage Manager OS/400 Client API, you can use the PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE client option to have new TSM passwords automatically created by TSM when the current passwords expire. You need to perform the following actions to enable this function in the BRMS client. This is an interim solution until the function can be more fully integrated into the end user interface.

- Create a source physical file named QA1AGENPWD in the QUSRBRM library with a member named NODENAMES using the following command:  
CRTSRCPF FILE(QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD) RCDLEN(92) MBR(NODENAMES)
- Change the owner of file QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD to QBRMS using the following command:  
CHGOBJOWN OBJ(QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD) OBJTYPE(\*FILE) NEWOWN(QBRMS)
- Revoke current public authorities to file QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD using the following command:

```
RVKOBJAUT OBJ(QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD) OBJTYPE(*FILE) USER(*PUBLIC) AUT(*ALL)
```

- Grant \*USE public authority to file QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD using the following command:

```
GRTOBJAUT OBJ(QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD) OBJTYPE(*FILE) USER(*PUBLIC) AUT(*USE)
```

- Use STRSQL and add a record for each node name which you want enabled for PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE using the following SQL command.

```
INSERT INTO QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD (SRCDTA) VALUES('node-name')
```

The inserted node names must follow these rules:

- Each node name must match the node name used in the media policy.
- Enter only one node name for each record.
- Left justify the node name in the record.
- Use upper case when entering the node name.

When the BRMS TSM client requires a connection to the TSM server, BRMS checks for the existence of file QUSRBRM/QA1AGENPWD and then attempts to locate the node name from the current media policy in the NODENAMES member. If the node name is found, BRMS will submit the PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE client option when it starts the session with the TSM server. The automatic password management is under the control of the TSM APIs and the TSM server. BRMS does not manage the passwords when the PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE client option is used.

The TSM created passwords are stored in file **/etc/adsm/TSM.PWD** unless you have changed the DSMI\_DIR environment variable to specify some other directory. To simplify recovery, make assure this file is backed up regularly to tape media.





---

## Chapter 13. Networking with BRMS

This chapter provides information on how to create and manage a network of iSeries servers that use BRMS. Before you begin reading, however, do note that **the Network feature is required to used this function.**

The primary reason for implementing a BRMS network would be to maintain a shared media inventory for the systems in the network or to share the backup history information.

In the sections that follow, the term system is used generically to refer to standalone iSeries servers or logical partitions in iSeries server. Each system in a BRMS network must have a unique system name.

Beginning with V5R1M0, you can use TCP/IP to connect with other systems in the BRMS network. However, you must also configure the current system to use APPN/APPC networking if other systems in the BRMS network are not using TCP/IP when communicating with the current system.. Go to the following web site to review the PTF requirements for TCP/IP enable of BRMS networked system at releases V5R1M0 and earlier. <http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/service/brms/brmstcpip.htm>

---

### An Overview of BRMS Network Functionality

By placing multiple iSeries systems in a BRMS network, you can share BRMS policies, media information, and storage locations across the network group. This allows you to manage backups across all of your iSeries systems in a consistent manner. It also optimizes media use. BRMS shares the following information across the network:

- Container classes
- Container inventory
- Duplication references
- History information (optional)
- Media classes
- Media inventory
- Media policies
- Move policies
- Network groups
- Storage locations

Each iSeries system in a network group receives updates to the media inventory, regardless of which network member makes the change. For example, suppose you have a network of three iSeries systems (SYSTEM01, SYSTEM02, and SYSTEM03), and that you add a media volume (A001) on SYSTEM01. BRMS conveys information about this new volume to all of the systems in the network through a process called **synchronization**. The system receiving synchronization updates from other systems in the network either accepts or rejects the update based on the time stamp of the updated record compared to the time stamp on the current

record. Records with newer dates and times are accepted while records with older dates and times are rejected. So the dates and times of the systems within a BRMS network become very important.

Ideally, a BRMS network performs best if all systems in the network are in the same time zone and are running with dates and times which are consistent across all systems. However, BRMS allows for time differences up to 24 hours between these systems in the event the systems are in different time zones.

Care needs to be taken to avoid systems in a BRMS network which have a time difference that is more than 24 hours resulting in these systems having different dates. BRMS uses dates to determine expiration of media, when volumes need to be moved, and whether synchronization updates are applied.

If business reasons dictate a need to have systems in the network with a greater time difference than 24 hours, you must setup BRMS on these systems as follows:

1. No sharing of media.

The system that has a different time/date compared to the current time/date, will need to use volumes in a no shared media class. This is necessary to ensure any saves to media from this system are not overwritten by other systems or this system does not overwrite the saves on media used by the other systems.

2. No centralized movement.

Media movement on this system will have to be run by control group, move policy or system name as volumes may not move as otherwise expected.

The recommended approach is to avoid time differences between systems that exceed 24 hours.

## **How Shared Media Inventory Synchronization Works**

Figure 12 on page 201 illustrates the process by which BRMS shares the media inventory across a BRMS network. In this example, assume that SYSTEM01, SYSTEM02, and SYSTEM03 exist in a BRMS network.

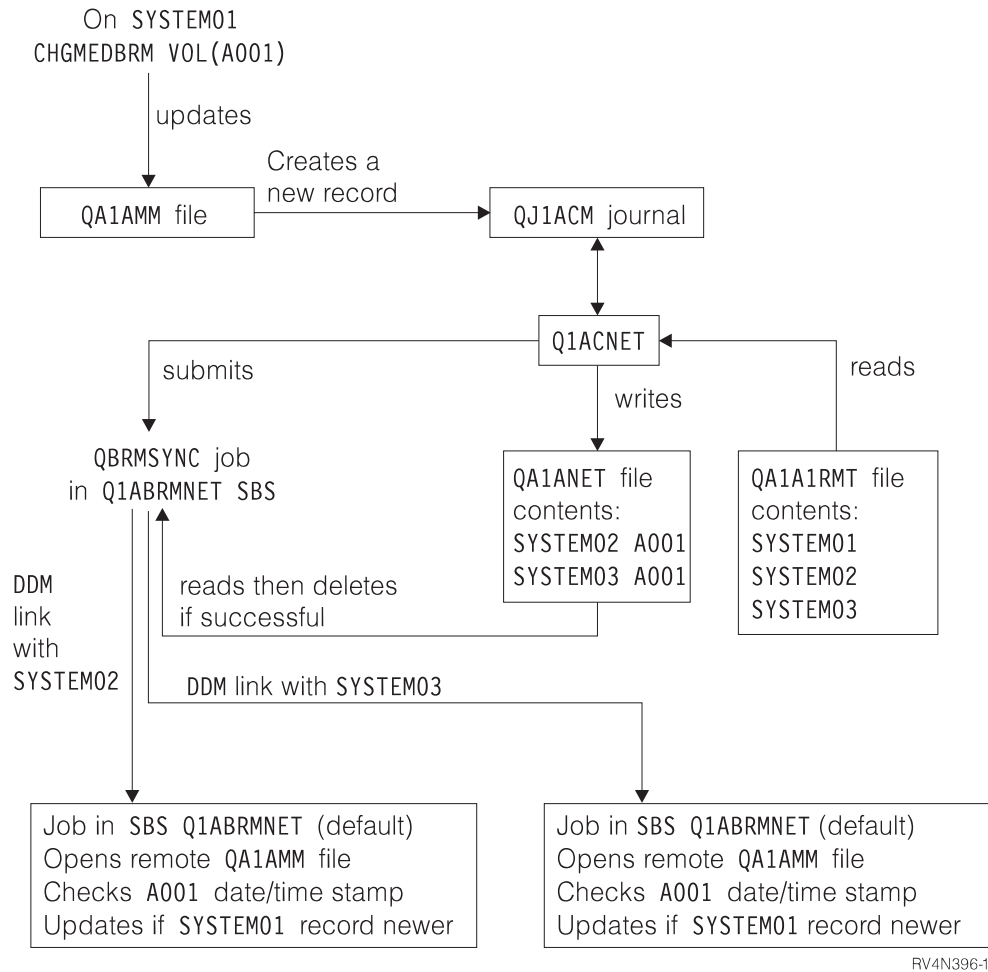


Figure 12. The network synchronization process in BRMS

In Figure 12, the Q1ABRMNET subsystem starts on all of the iSeries systems that participate in the network. BRMS establishes this shared subsystem relationship when you set up the network. BRMS stores job and subsystem descriptions, and information on the job queue it used during network processing, in the QBRM library.

To update data across a network, BRMS performs the following steps:

- BRMS journals the files that contain the shared resource information. These files are QA1AMM for the media, and QA1A1RMT for the systems in the network group. When SYSTEM01 updates media, a policy, or any shared resources, an entry is logged in the QJ1ACM journal in the QUSRBRM library. BRMS captures both before images and after images in the journal receiver for any changes that relate to the media inventory on the networked systems. However, BRMS uses only the after images to update the shared media inventory.
- The Q1ABRMNET subsystem then begins an autostart job that is called QBRMNET. This job periodically monitors the QJ1ACM journal entries and performs the following tasks:
  - Adds one record to the QA1ANET file for each change on each system.
  - Adds records to the QA1A2NET file for each file and system change that is reflected in QA1ANET.

In this example, the network group consists of three systems. If you make updates to SYSTEM01, the Q1ACNET program creates two entries in the QA1ANET file. These entries instruct BRMS to send the updates to the remaining two systems.

- At regular intervals, the QBRMNET job in subsystem Q1ABRMNET checks to see if BRMS should transfer any activity to other systems in the network. You can change the interval value that BRMS uses to synchronize media information at the *Shared inventory delay* parameter in the system policy. You can set intervals between 30 and 9999 seconds.
- When there is data in file QA1ANET, the QBRMNET job submits the QBRMSYNC job through the Q1ABRMNET job queue.  
BRMS uses QA1A2NET as a key, and reads records from file QA1ANET. BRMS establishes a distributed data management (DDM) link with the remote system to update the corresponding file on the remote system.  
Before performing the update, BRMS compares the date and time stamp of the target record you want to update with the date and time stamp of the source record. BRMS does not perform the update if the source record has the older time stamp.
- Once this update completes, QBRMSYNC deletes the record from QA1ANET file and continues with the next message. The QBRMSYNC job ends when the QA1ANET file is empty.

To see if your network is working properly, display the QA1ANET file. When the network is running properly, the number of records in QA1ANET file should be none or decreasing. If the QA1ANET file contains any records or does not show a decrease, there may be a problem with the network. In that case, check the QSYSOPR message queue on all of the networked systems. You also need to ensure that:

- Subsystem Q1ABRMNET starts properly.
- Job queue Q1ABRMNET releases properly.
- You vary on the APPC controllers.
- You can PING and/or APING all the systems in BRMS network.
- QBRMS user profile is not in a \*DISABLED state.

**Note:** When performing network synchronization tasks, BRMS always attempts to go through the Q1ABRMNET subsystem first. This subsystem contains a default communications entry that uses the QBRM mode. You should not create your own subsystem descriptions for synchronizing the BRMS network.

## How BRMS Networks Communicate

As with many communication products, BRMS uses the default local location name (LCLLOCNAME) rather than the system name (SYSNAME). In most cases, the iSeries servers have the same value specified in LCLLOCNAME as in SYSNAME. BRMS also uses the local network identifier LCLNETID. You can change these values at the Change Network Attribute (CHGNETA) display. You can review the values at the Display Network Attribute (DSPNETA) display. Other network attributes do not affect BRMS.

When you install BRMS Networking, many of the BRMS commands like WRKMEDBRM, WRKMEDIBRM, STRRCYBRM support a FROMSYS parameter allowing you to perform the operation using the data retrieved from the networked system using DDM. If your BRMS network is configured to use

TCP/IP, BRMS will attempt to create the DDM file using TCP/IP and if that fails, will attempt again using APPC. If a connection to networked system can not be made, BRMS will use data available on the local system.

The APPC connection method allows a system in restricted state to communicate with other systems in the network which are not in restricted state. This capability is not possible using TCP/IP since the subsystems used by TCP/IP are ended. If you need this capability and want to use TCP/IP as your primary communication method, you should also configure APPC as well as TCP/IP so BRMS can use APPC as an alternate communication method when TCP/IP communications is not available.

**APPN Network configuration**

If you use Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking® (APPN) with auto configuration, communication between iSeries servers should be fairly simple. If Display Station Pass Through (STRPASTHR) works, and if you can use the SNA distribution services (SNADS) successfully, then your BRMS networking should also work.

In addition, with APPN, and auto configuration enabled, you do not need to manually recreate the APPC controller and APPC device descriptions if you decide to change your system name or your network identifier. You can simply vary off and delete the old controller and device descriptions, and allow APPN to automatically create the definitions for you.

Enter the command, DSPCFGL CFGL(QAPPNRMT), to check the secure status of the systems in your APPN network. Make note of the value in the *Secure loc* field, which appears on the Display Configuration List display. You will need to know this later when you add these system to the BRMS network. For additional information on APPN security, see the iSeries Communications topic under Networking in the iSeries Information Center.

| Display Configuration List        |         |          |          |         |        |
|-----------------------------------|---------|----------|----------|---------|--------|
| Configuration list . . . . .      |         | QAPPNRMT |          |         |        |
| Configuration list type . . . . . |         | *APPNRMT |          |         |        |
| Text . . . . .                    |         |          |          |         |        |
| -----APPN Remote Locations-----   |         |          |          |         |        |
| Remote                            | Remote  |          | Remote   | Control |        |
| Location                          | Network | Local    | Control  | Point   | Secure |
|                                   | ID      | Location | Point    | Net ID  | Loc    |
| SYSTEM01                          | APPN    | SYSTEM02 | SYSTEM01 | APPN    | *YES   |
| SYSTEM06                          | APPN    | SYSTEM02 | SYSTEM06 | APPN    | *YES   |
| SYSTEM07                          | APPN    | SYSTEM02 | SYSTEM07 | APPN    | *YES   |

If the value is \*NO, you are using a non-secured network, you need to ensure that the QBRMS, QUSER, and QPGMR user profiles are enabled on those systems which you intend to add to the BRMS network.

If the value is \*YES, you are using a secured location network.

**APPC Network configuration**

If you use APPC communications, you need to create your own APPC controllers and devices. You must ensure that you specify correct remote system information when creating the controller description. For example, the Remote network identifier, Remote Control point, and Remote System Name values relate to the

remote system. You must use the QBRM mode for the *Mode* parameter on the APPC device description. The default for this value is \*NETATR, which might use the BLANK mode description.

If you use advanced program-to-program communications (APPC), you also need to change your APPC controller device descriptions if you change the name of your network or the local location name. You must do this because you cannot delete and allow the system to automatically create your definitions, as you can in APPN.

## TCP/IP Network configuration

1. Use the following command to verify TCP/IP is running on each of the systems in the BRMS network:

```
PING RMTSYS(remote-system-name)
```

If TCP/IP is not running, then you will need to configure and/or start TCP/IP.

2. You need to determine whether you intend to use secured or non-secured DDM connections to the remote systems in the BRMS network. You may want to review this with your site security administrator before taking specific actions.

- For Non-secured DDM connections:

- a. Use the following command to change the TCP/IP DDM attributes for non-secured operations:

```
CHGDDMTCPA PWDRQD(*NO)
```

- b. If you are going from a secured DDM connection to a non-secured DDM connection make sure to remove the server authentication entries. Use the following command to remove server Authentication entries for each user:

```
RMVSVRAUTE USRPRF(user-profile) SERVER(QDDMSERVER)
```

- c. Go to step 3.

- For Secured DDM connections:

- a. Use the following command to change the TCP/IP DDM attributes for secured operations:

```
CHGDDMTCPA PWDRQD(*YES)
```

- b. Automated secure TCP/IP DDM operations are not possible if authentication passwords cannot be stored. Use the following command to change the QRETSVRSEC system value so that passwords used for authentication can be stored on the system:

```
CHGSYSVAL QRETSVRSEC VALUE('1')
```

- c. Use the following command to add server authentication entries for each user who will be authorized to perform secured TCP/IP operations to the remote systems:

```
ADDSVRAUTE USRPRF(user-profile) SERVER(QDDMSERVER)
 USERID(remote-system-userid)
 PASSWORD(remote-system-password)
```

**Note:** A server authorization entry can be removed using the RMVSVRAUTE command or change using the CHGSVRAUTE command. See the CL Reference manual for a complete description of these commands and command parameters.

**Note:** There can only be one server authorization entry for a user no matter what remote system is specified. This means that for a user to access multiple systems in the network, the userid and passwords must be the same.

3. Use the following command to change the TCP/IP DDM server attributes if you want the server automatically started when TCP/IP is started:  
`CHGDDMTCPA AUTOSTART(*YES)`
4. Use the following commands to end and restart the TCP/IP DDM server if you changed any of the attributes:  
`ENDTCPSVR SERVER(*DDM)`  
`STRTCPSVR SERVER(*DDM)`

You have completed enabling this system for TCP/IP operations. You will need to indicate to BRMS that you have enabled this system for BRMS network operations when you configure the network group for this system.

---

## How to Set Up a BRMS Network

This section provides instruction on how to set up your network group. IBM delivers the BRMS Network feature with a predefined network group that is named \*MEDINV. Currently there is no way in which you can create different network groups. You can only work with the one that is shipped. \*MEDINV contains no entries for systems that participate in the network group. **Setting up the BRMS network group is simple as long as you follow these steps.**

Before you begin, be sure that you fully understand the implications of adding and removing systems to and from the BRMS network. Some of the planning issues you should consider are:

- Ensure that you have a full backup of the QUSRBRM library on all of the iSeries servers that you plan to put in the network group. The BRMS network setup changes some critical files in the QUSRBRM library. If the network fails, you need to restore the QUSRBRM libraries to their original state.
- Ensure that you have the latest BRMS PTFs installed on your systems. You should also install any dependent PTFs for the IBM Operating System/400 Version 4 (OS/400) and the Licensed Internal Code.
- Ensure there is no current BRMS activity (for example, backup, recovery, or maintenance) on the systems that you plan to network.
- Ensure that your BRMS operation is error free, and that there are no outstanding issues with the normal operations. You also need to give some thought to volume names, media policies, containers, and classes. You cannot have duplicate volume names within a shared media inventory.

## A Step-by-Step Guide to Setting Up Your BRMS Network

This example shows how to establish a BRMS network between two iSeries servers, SYSTEM01 and SYSTEM02. For best results, follow the steps in the order in which they appear, and complete each step before moving on to the next. Be sure that you perform all of the steps when setting up your network.

1. Save library QUSRBRM on SYSTEM01.
2. Save library QUSRBRM on SYSTEM02.
3. Ensure that the communications link on SYSTEM01 for SYSTEM02 is active.
4. Use WRKCFGSTS command to determine status for line (\*LIN), controller (\*CTL), and device description (\*DEV).



5. Designate SYSTEM01 to be your master system.
6. Ensure there is no BRMS activity on either system.
7. On SYSTEM01, type WRKPCYBRM \*SYS to get to the system policy menu. Once there, take the following steps:
  - a. Select option 4 (Change Network Group). Press Enter.
  - b. Change the *Enable for TCP/IP* field from \*NO to \*YES if you are using TCP/IP to communicate with other systems in the network.
  - c. To add SYSTEM02 to the master system to create the network, type SYSTEM02 in the *Remote location* field. Then type the name of the remote network in the *Remote Network ID* column.

Change Network Group SYSTEM01

|                         |                  |                       |  |
|-------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Network group . . . . . | *MEDINV          | Position to . . . . . |  |
| Text . . . . .          | Entry created by | BRM configuration     |  |
| Receive media info . .  | *LIB             | *NONE, *LIB           |  |
| Enable for TCP/IP . . . | *YES             | *NO, *YES             |  |

Type options, press Enter.  
 1=Add   4=Remove   8=Set time

| Opt | Location | Name | Remote Network ID | Receive Media Info | Status |
|-----|----------|------|-------------------|--------------------|--------|
| 1   | SYSTEM02 |      | APPN              |                    |        |

- d. Press Enter. BRMS searches the network for the system name that you specified. Depending on the network configuration and the number of systems in the network, this can take a few minutes. When BRMS finds the system name (in our example, SYSTEM02), BRMS adds it to \*MEDINV (the BRMS network group name). SYSTEM02 is still an inactive member of the network group and does not share its media inventory with other active systems in the network. To change the inactive status to active, media inventory must be copied to the system being added to the network group. The process to copy the media inventory and media history information occurs in Step 10.
8. On SYSTEM02, use the Work with Media (WRKMEDBRM) command to see if any media information exists. If media information does not exist, go to step 9. Because BRMS is fully operational, media information exists on SYSTEM02. Perform the following steps to copy media information from one file to another:
  - a. Use the CPYMEDIBRM OPTION(\*TOFILE) (Copy Media Information to file) command to copy the contents of the media inventory file. You can copy the information to a temporary file (QA1AMED) or to a file name you create. BRMS creates this temporary file in your *Current<sup>®</sup> Library*. You can also copy media information from the *Copy media information* parameter on the Copy Media Information display. Use the default value of \*NO unless you plan to restore media information to a non-networked system.

**Notes:**

- a. You do not have to perform step 8 if the system you want to add to the network does not contain media information.
- b. The CPYMEDIBRM command copies the files for the following: media class, locations, media policy, containers, container classes, move policies, move policy rules, media, and possibly history.



- c. If you put the \*FROMFILE value in the *Type of copy* field, BRMS changes the system name for media and history records to the new system name. The \*TOFILE value copies the media and history records that are on the current system.
9. You can now synchronize SYSTEM01 with SYSTEM02. Enter the following command from SYSTEM02.
- ```
INZBRM OPTION(*NETSYS) FROMSYS(APPN.SYSTEM01)
```

BRMS clears the media management files on the inactive system (SYSTEM02) during the copy process and replaces them with the network media management files. BRMS sends a message when it overwrites the SYSTEM02 files with files that come from SYSTEM01.

Display Program Messages

```
Job 047122/A960103D/QPADEV0001 started on 05/31/99 at 09:15:55 in subsystem:  
Entries exist for Media. (R I C)  
Entries exist for Media policy. (R I C)  
Entries exist for Media class. (R I C)  
Entries exist for Location. (R I C)  
Entries exist for Move policy. (R I C)
```

Type reply, press Enter.
Reply . . . _____

F3=Exit F12=Cancel

BRMS copies the following media management files to the inactive system:

- QA1ACN: Container status inventory
- QA1ACT: Container class
- QA1ADXR: Media duplication reference
- QA1AHS: History information

Note: This file is only copied when you specify *LIB in the *Receive media information* field on the Change Network Group display.

- QA1AMM: Media inventory
- QA1AMP: Move policies
- QA1AME: Media policy attributes
- QA1AMT: Media class attributes
- QA1ASL: Storage locations
- QA1ARMT: Network group
- QA1A1MP: Move policy entries
- QA1A1RMT: Remote system name entries

After BRMS copies the network media inventory to the inactive system (SYSTEM02), the status of the inactive system changes to active. Then its media inventory becomes part of the network media inventory.

On SYSTEM02, select the option to ignore all of the messages by replying with an "I." These messages indicate that you are about to overwrite files on SYSTEM02.

Notes:

- a. When BRMS networking is operational, the above physical files are journaled to QUSRBRM/QJ1ACM *JRN. These files should never be journaled to any other library or journal.
- b. You need to ensure that the QBRMS and QUSER user profiles are not in a *DISABLED state. Communication entries in subsystem Q1ABRMNET use the QBRMS user profile, and if it is disabled, you cannot establish a DDM connection.

After you add the new system to the network the *Status* for SYSTEM01 shows active status. Because this example uses only two systems, you can only see the status for system you are currently adding, in this case SYSTEM01. This display does not show an entry for the system you are on.

Change Network Group				SYSTEM02
Network group	*MEDINV		Position to	
Text	Entry created by BRM configuration			
Receive media info . .	*NONE		*NONE, *LIB	
Enable for TCP/IP . . .	*YES		*NO, *YES	
Type options, press Enter.				
1=Add 4=Remove 8=Set time				
Remote Receive				
Opt	System	Network ID	Media Info	Status
—	SYSTEM01	APPN	*NONE	Active

In addition, the process of networking the two systems automatically starts a new subsystem that is called Q1ABRMNET. You can find a description of Q1ABRMNET in library QBRM. BRMS also adds an autostart job entry for this subsystem to the QSYSWRK library on both systems.

Work with Subsystems				SYSTEM01								
Type options, press Enter.												
4=End subsystem 5=Display subsystem description												
8=Work with subsystem jobs												
Opt	Subsystem	Total Storage (K)	-----Subsystem Pools-----									
—	QBATCH	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
—	QCMN	0	2									
—	QCTL	0	2									
—	QINTER	0	2	4								
—	QSERVER	64000	2	5								
—	QSNADS	0	2									
—	QSPL	0	2	3								
—	QSYSWRK	0	2									
—	Q1ABRMNET	0	2									

10. On SYSTEM02, check the system value QDATE and make corrections as needed.
11. On SYSTEM01, check the system value QDATE and make corrections as needed.
12. Go to SYSTEM02. Now you can merge the media inventory data that BRMS saved prior to adding the system to the network under Step 9. Enter the following command on SYSTEM02: CPYMEDIBRM OPTION(*FROMFILE).

Note: You must perform this step if the old system contained BRMS media inventory.

BRMS ignores media information that is inconsistent with the new network level media information. BRMS adds all entries except duplicates to the network media inventory. If duplicate media contains active files, you must keep track of the information. If the media does not contain active files, you should re-initialize the tape with a new volume ID.

Note: When you copy the media inventory from the temporary file (QA1AMED or a file name you created), review the common classes for inconsistencies. For example, the media class SAVSYS on one system might use a media density of *QIC120, while the same media class on another system uses *FMT3490E. All media density now belongs to the network class SAVSYS.

13. Enter the WRKMEDBRM command on SYSTEM02. There you can see the media inventory for SYSTEM01 and SYSTEM02.
14. Enter the WRKMEDBRM command on SYSTEM01. There you can see the media inventory for SYSTEM02 and SYSTEM01.

Changing the System Name

You should change a system name very carefully. Many internal definitions can depend on the system name, including PC networking definitions and the system directory. Consult your network support personnel to resolve issues that relate to configuration objects.

Inherent in a system name change is a change in the default local location name, and hence, a change for BRMS. When this happens, BRMS does the following:

- Updates the network to remove the old system name and add the new system name.
- Transfers all of the media previously owned by the old system name to the new system name.

To change your system name, take the following steps:

1. Change the system name and IPL.

Note: After you change the system name and IPL, you must change the BRMS network immediately. BRMS did not yet update the media inventory to reflect the name change. Thus, the old system name still owns the media volumes. In addition, the other systems in the network will continue to try to contact the old system because they are not yet aware of the name change. *To avoid missing any information in the shared media inventory data, you must change the BRMS network immediately after the IPL.*

2. Ensure there is no BRMS activity occurs on the system between the IPL and adding your system name to the BRMS network. Also ensure that you have a copy of the latest save of the BRMS QUSRBRM library.
3. Enter GO BRMSYSPCY on the system for which you have just changed the name.
4. Select option 4 (Change network group) from the System Policy menu. On the top right corner of the display, you can see your new system name.

Change Network Group				NEWSYS APPN	
Network group		*MEDINV		Position to	
Text		Entry created by BRM configuration			
Receive media info . .		*NONE		*NONE, *LIB	
Enable for TCP/IP . . .		*YES		*NO, *YES	
Type options, press Enter.					
1=Add		4=Remove		8=Set time	
	Remote	Local	Remote	Receive	
Opt	Location Name		Network ID	Media Info	Status
	NEWSYS		APPN	*NONE	ACTIVE
4	OLDSYS		APPN	*NONE	ACTIVE
F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel					

5. Select option 4 (Remove) to remove the old name. Press Enter to confirm the name you want to remove.
6. On the Confirm Remove of Network Systems display, specify *RENAME on the *Remove media* field so that BRMS can transfer ownership of the media inventory from the old system to the new one.

Migrating From a Previous Release System to a Current Release System

Take the following steps to migrate BRMS from a previous release to the current release of a new system with a new name.

1. On one of the systems in the network group, remove the previous release system name from the network group. (If the system is in a BRMS network).
2. On the previous release system, save the QUSRBRM library.
3. On the current release system, take the following steps:
 - a. If BRMS (5722BR1) is already installed on the new system, then use Delete Licensed Program (DLTLICPGM) to remove it from the system.
 - b. Restore the QUSRBRM library which you saved from the previous release system.
 - c. Restore Licensed Program (RSTLICPGM) for BRMS (5722BR1). Also restore any of the additional BRMS features (Network and Advanced Functions) for which you have a license. This performs any file conversions that the QUSRBRM library may require. File conversions generally involve adding new fields to database files, or adding new files, or data areas. File conversions can only happen when you install a licensed program.
 - d. Use the command


```
INZBRM OPTION(*CHGSYSNAM) PRVSYSNAM(previous-system-name)
NEWSYSNAM(new-system-name)
```

to change the name of the media and saved objects in the BRMS database from the previous system name to the new system name.
 - e. Use the WRKMEDBRM command to verify you can view the media and history information.
4. Follow the instructions to add a system to the network as documented in the section "A Step-by-Step Guide to Setting Up Your BRMS Network" on page 205.

How the Networked Systems Receive Media Information

Every iSeries system in a BRMS network group receives media inventory updates, regardless of which system makes the change. You can instruct BRMS to update the media content information. To do so, take the following steps:

1. Type WRKPCYBRM *SYS at a command line. Press Enter. This takes you to the System Policy menu.
2. Select option 4 (Change Network Group). This takes you to the Change Network Group display.

Change Network Group RCHAS400

Network group : *MEDINV Position to

Text Entry created by BRM configuration

Receive media info . . . : *LIB *NONE, *LIB

Enable for TCP/IP . . . : *NO *NO, *YES

Type options, press Enter.

1=Add 4=Remove 8=Set time

Remote Local Remote Receive

Opt Location Name Network ID Media Info Status

1 SYSTEM04 ITSCNET *LIB Inactive

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F12=Cancel

System SYSTEM04 network group ITSCNET added.

3. Change the value in the *Receive media information* field to *LIB. The default value for this field is *NONE, which indicates that BRMS can share only media information with this system. Thus, to review the contents of a volume belonging to another system on this system, BRMS must use DDM to retrieve the information. In this case, then, BRMS must have an active communications link to DDM.

The system **does not** require DDM to retrieve this information if you use the *LIB option. To do so, select option 13 (Display contents) from the Work with Media display. Option 13 takes you to the Work with Media Information display. If a failure occurs, you can use synchronized media information to build a recovery report for the failed system. You can use this local database to recover objects that belong to another system.

4. Press Enter to apply your changes.

You can change the *Receive media information* field at any time. The synchronization process may take longer if your network contains a large number of media information records. Therefore, you should not change the *Receive media information* field frequently.

If you want to add a previously networked system that still contains a media inventory, ensure that you do not move the media inventory from the old system to an existing one. Specifically, **do not** run the INZBRM *NETSYS command on the existing system when you add the old system to the network. Instead, run the INZBRM *NETSYS command on the new system to the existing system by using the FROMSYS parameter.

Note: If you share a 3494 tape library device with multiple iSeries servers in a BRMS network, you must use identical library names throughout the network systems.

Once the network is operational, you should regularly verify that it is working properly. For more information about how to verify your network, see “Verifying the BRMS Network” on page 214.

Joining Two BRMS Networks

With careful planning and implementation, you can join two or more BRMS networks in a single network group. Figure 13 shows the wrong way to join the networks.

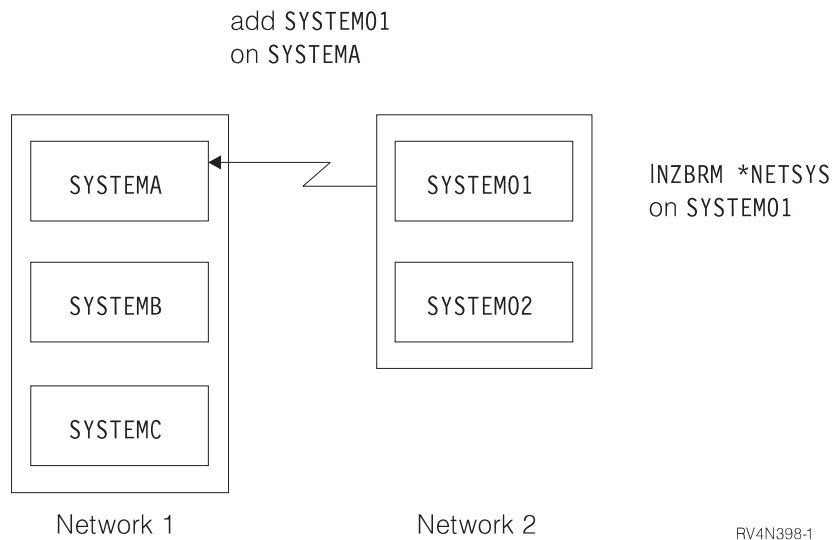
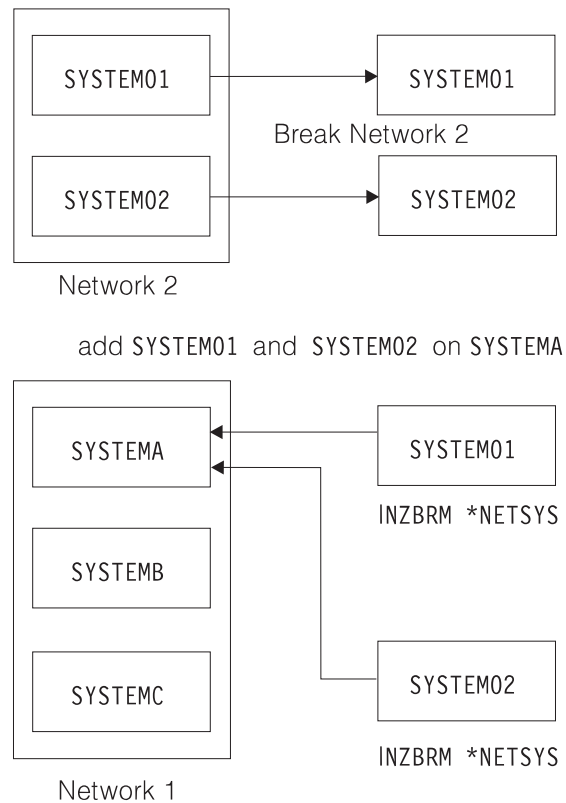


Figure 13. The wrong way to join two BRMS networks

Figure 14 on page 213 shows the correct way to join two networks. In this example, the administrator set up a network between SYSTEM01 (NETWORK2) to SYSTEMA (NETWORK1). By using this approach, SYSTEM02 remains unknown to all of the systems in NETWORK1. The INZBRM OPTION(*NETSYS) command that you ran on SYSTEM01 erased its knowledge of SYSTEM02. To avoid this, you must split one of the networks before joining them so that all of the systems in the network have knowledge of each other.



RV4N399-1

Figure 14. The correct way to join two BRMS networks

Take the following steps to successfully join two BRMS networks:

1. Remove all of the entries on the Change Network Group display on SYSTEM01 for SYSTEM02, including its media information.
2. Remove all of the entries on the Change Network Group display on SYSTEM02 for SYSTEM01, including its media information.
3. Enter the CPYMEDIBRM OPTION(*TOFILE) CPYMEDI(*YES) command on SYSTEM01 and SYSTEM02 to save the media information for both systems.
4. Add SYSTEM01 on any system in NETWORK1 by using the Change Network Group option. In this example, you used SYSTEMA to add SYSTEM01.
5. On SYSTEM01, enter INZBRM OPTION(*NETSYS) FROMSYS(SYSTEMA) to overwrite the media information files on SYSTEM01 from SYSTEMA.
6. On SYSTEM01, you need to enter CPYMEDIBRM OPTION(*FROMFILE) command to append the media information on SYSTEM01. This synchronizes the SYSTEM01 media information on all other iSeries servers within the network. You will receive several messages when BRMS overwrites the files. Reply with an "I."
7. On SYSTEM01, you can use the WRKMEDBRM command to check the media information.
8. Repeat steps 4, 5, 6, and 7 for SYSTEM02 by substituting the name of SYSTEM01 with SYSTEM02 in the steps.

Copying Control Groups Between Networked iSeries Servers

With BRMS, you can specify whether to copy control groups on your own system or send the information to other systems in the BRMS network. *LCL is the default

value when you copy a control group, which means that BRMS copies the control group to another name on your local system. You can also specify a remote system name and the network identifier for the remote system. This copies the control group to the target system that you specified. BRMS uses DDM to copy the information across to the QA1ACM file. Though this is a useful option, you should keep the following limitations in mind:

- BRMS copies control group attributes across to the target system. These attributes revert to the system defaults. However, BRMS does not copy the subsystems and job queues as part of the control group if you issue the copy command from a V3R7 or newer BRMS system. This support is not available on releases prior to V3R7.
- Though you can copy entries in the control group across systems, you cannot copy backup lists. If the entry in the control group is a list, you must manually create the backup list on the target system for the control group to work successfully. Use the WRKLBRM command to create any missing backup lists.
- If your control group has data inappropriate for the new system (for example, an unknown library), BRMS does not issue a warning message at the time of the copy. If the target system does not support a backup item, you need to remove them. In such cases, you need to edit the control group to make the appropriate changes.
- BRMS does not copy the control group text across the system. You must manually add the text on the target system.

Because of these limitations, you should review the control group after the copy to ensure that BRMS copied it correctly. You may need to tailor the values to fit the operational requirements for that particular system.

Verifying the BRMS Network

Checking the communications link between systems (such as line and control descriptions) alone does not guarantee the synchronization of the media inventory between the systems. Similarly, a status of "active" does not mean that you can communicate with that system. It simply indicates that you ran the INZBRM(*NETSYS) command. For an effective way to check for media synchronization, take the following steps:

1. On one system in the BRMS network, create a dummy media class (for example, NETCHK, which stands for Network Checking). Because you will not use this media class for real backups, you can simply use the default values.
2. On each system (SYSTEMxx, where xx = name of the system), type:
`ADDMEDBRM VOL(SYSxx) MEDCLS(NETCHK)`
3. Every morning, on each system in your BRMS network, use the job scheduler to run the CL command:
`RMVMEDBRM VOL(SYSxx) MEDCLS(NETCHK)`
`Delay Job (DLYJOB) DLY(300)`
`ADDMEDBRM VOL(SYSxx) MEDCLS(NETCHK).`
4. After you submit the CL command, your media should have a creation date equal to the current date. This should be true on the system that will run the command. If not, it means that you did not submit the CL command, and should check the job log for error information. The other systems in the BRMS network should also have the current date as the creation date for this media. If not, it means that system did not process the update correctly.

Assuming that the current date is July 6, 1999, the WRKMEDBRM command for each system should display the following information:

Work with Media

SYSTEM01

Position to

Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.

1=Add

2=Change

4=Remove

5=Display

6=Work with media set

7=Expire

8=Move

10=Reinitialize ...

Opt	Serial	Volume	Expired	Creation Date	Expiration Date	Location	Move Date	Media Class	Dup Sts
	xxxxxx			xx/xx/xx	*NONE	xxxxxxxxx	xx/xx/xx	xxxxxxx	
	xxxxxx			xx/xx/xx	*NONE	xxxxxxxxx	xx/xx/xx	xxxxxxx	
	SYS01		*YES	07/06/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK	
	SYS02		*YES	07/06/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK	
	SYS03		*YES	07/06/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK	
	SYS04		*YES	07/06/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK	
	xxxxxx			xx/xx/xx	*NONE	xxxxxxxxx	xx/xx/xx	xxxxxxx	

Press F11 to view the owning system. Reviewing the following display, you might conclude that SYSTEM01 did not receive the SYSTEM04 media update.

Work with Media					SYSTEM01				
Position to					Starting characters				
Type options, press Enter.									
1=Add		2=Change		4=Remove		5=Display			
6=Work with media set		7=Expire		8=Move		10=Reinitialize ...			
Opt	Volume Serial	Creation Expired Date	Expiration Date	Location	Move Date	Media Class	Dup Sts		
	SYS01	*YES 07/06/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK			
	SYS02	*YES 07/06/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK			
	SYS03	*YES 07/06/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK			
	SYS04	*YES 07/04/99	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	NETCHK			

In this case, it could be that a communications problem occurred subsequent to July 4th.

Removing a System From a Network

Take the following steps to remove an iSeries server from a network group:

1. At the Change Network Group display, type a 4 (Remove) next to the system you want to remove from the network. Press Enter.
2. At the Confirm Remove of Network Systems display, confirm the system or systems that you want to remove. Type *YES in the *Remove media* field to remove any media entries that were shared with other systems in the network.

Note: Use this parameter carefully because it removes all media entries associated with that system, *even if the system was never an active member of the network.*

Alternatively you could opt to rename (*RENAME) the media used by the systems you want to remove. The media would then take the name of the system you are on. In the following example, an operator changes the names of media SYSTEM03 and SYSTEM04 to SYSTEM02, which is the system currently in use.

Change Network Group

SYSTEM02

Network group : *MEDINV Position to
Text Entry created by BRM configuration
Receive media info . . : *LIB *NONE, *LIB
Enable for TCP/IP . . : *NO *NO, *YES

Type options, press Enter.
1=Add 4=Remove 8=Set time

Opt	System	Remote Network ID	Receive Media Info	Status
4	SYSTEM03	ITSCNET	*NONE	Active
4	SYSTEM04	ITSCNET	*NONE	Active
	SYSTEM05	ITSCNET	*NONE	Active

Confirm Remove of Network Systems

SYSTEM02

Press Enter to confirm your choices for 4=Remove.
Press F12 to return to change your choices.
Remove media *RENAME *YES, *NO, *RENAME

Opt	System	Remote Network ID	Receive Media Inf	Status
4	SYSTEM03	ITSCNET	*NONE	Active
4	SYSTEM04	ITSCNET	*NONE	Active

3. Delete the system name that you are removing from the other systems that remain in the network from the Change Network Group display. Type an option 4 (Remove) next to the systems remaining in the network and press Enter. At the Confirm Remove of Network Systems display, select *YES at the *Remove media* field and press Enter. The system should now be completely free of the network.

Removing the Network Feature from a Previously Networked System

To remove the Network feature from a previously networked system, take the following steps:

1. Follow the steps in the previous section (Removing a System from a Network Group).
2. After you remove all of the systems and media from the network group, Enter the GO LICPGM command from a command line.
3. At the Work with Licensed Programs display, take option 12 (Delete licensed programs).
4. Type a 4 (Delete) in front of the BRMS Network feature (5722BR1) entry and press Enter.
5. Press Enter again to confirm your deletion and return to the Work with Licensed Programs display.

Chapter 14. Online Lotus Server Backups

BRMS supports an online backup of Lotus servers (ie., Domino™ and QuickPlace™). Online backup implies that Lotus Server databases on the iSeries server can be saved while they are in use with no save while active synchronization points. This is true online backup support.

You can direct your online backups to a tape device, media library, save files, or a TSM server.

It is important that you do not replace your complete system backup with only Lotus Server online backups. Lotus Server online backups only backup the Lotus server databases. There are other important Lotus server data objects including libraries and files in the Lotus server IFS directories, and other non-Lotus server system data that should be backed up on some regular basis (ie. QUSRSYS, QGPL, etc).

How Lotus Server Online Backup Works

Online backup of a Lotus servers consists of two files, the databases and the transaction logs which contain the changes to the databases while they were being backed up. These files must be bound together during the backup in order to properly restore the databases in the event of a recovery.

Lotus Server backups use a BRMS concept called a package to bind the backup of the databases to the associated transaction logs. When the online backup is run, the Lotus Server uses the PKGID parameter on the SAVBRM command to specify the package association between the databases and the transaction logs. At the time of backup, the Lotus Server also uses the RCYEXITPGM parameter to specify a Lotus Server exit program which BRMS calls whenever the package is recovered.

When a user requests BRMS to recover a Lotus Server database that was saved as a package, BRMS restores the entire package - the database files and the transaction logs. Then BRMS calls the Lotus Server exit program which in turn applies the transaction log changes to the restored databases.

Work with media information (WRKMEDIBRM) will hide all but the initial element in packages. The number of elements in the package is displayed immediately to the right of the *Saved Items* name on the *Work with Media Information* display. In the case of Lotus Server online backups, this value is 2. Recovery reports for online Lotus Server backups show both elements of a package for a saved item because the databases may be on a different volume than the transaction logs.

Initialize BRMS For Lotus Server Backups

BRMS will automatically configure the control groups and media policies you need to perform online backup of the Lotus Server databases. The Lotus Notes server databases backed up by these control groups are files that have extensions of *.ns?, *.nt? and *.box.

BRMS also creates a backup link list named QLTSEXCL which should be used to exclude the Lotus Server databases when performing your periodic full system backups. To use this link list, replace the *LINK backup item entry from the control

group you use for the full system save with the QLTSEXCL link list entry. Your Lotus Servers must be ended when performing these full system backups.

The following table lists the BRMS objects which are automatically created for you by BRMS. These objects along with your BRMS system and backup policies determine whether your backup will be directed to a device, a save file, or a TSM server. These BRMS objects will automatically be updated to include new Lotus Servers when you run the STRMNTBRM or INZBRM *DATA commands.

Name	Object type	Description
QLTSSVR	Control group	Backs up all Lotus Servers on the system including both Domino and QuickPlace servers Note: The entries in this control group are dynamic; however, BRMS will attempt to preserve modifications you might make to the entries. New Lotus servers will be appended after the existing entries and prior to the post exit.
QLTSDOMnn	Control group	Backs up all databases for Lotus Domino Server nn, where nn is 01-99
QLTSQPLnn	Control group	Backs up all databases for Lotus QuickPlace Server nn, where nn is 01-99
QLTSSVR	Media policy	Media policy specifying the media class and expiration to be used for Lotus Server backups
QLTSEXCL	Backup link list	Backup link list which includes all Integrated File System objects <u>except</u> the *.ns?, *.nt? and *.box files saved during an online backup of all Lotus Servers.
QLTSXCLONL	Backup link list	Backup link list which includes all Lotus Server directories and objects <u>except</u> the *.ns?, *.nt? and *.box files saved during an online backup of all Lotus Servers.
QIFSXCLLTS	Backup link list	Backup link list which includes all Integrated File System objects <u>except</u> all Lotus Server directories and objects.

Performing An Online Lotus Server Backup

Attention: *Backing up your Lotus Servers should not replace your regular complete system backups.*

The Domino and QuickPlace Lotus Servers provide commands (SAVDOMBRM and SAVLQPBRM) which are used by BRMS to back up your Lotus servers while online.

BRMS initialization has created the required setup to enable you to perform online backups of Lotus Servers using the Lotus Server backup commands. A control group named QLTSSVR has been created for you that when used, will result in you backing up all the Lotus Server databases on your system.

The following steps must be performed before you can back up your Lotus servers.

Determine the device and media class to use

During the installation process, BRMS chooses a default device based on the fastest and most automated tape drive that is attached to your system. BRMS also creates media classes based upon the density/formats supported by the devices attached to your system.

Refer to “Determining Media Classes” on page 16 to determine the default device and media class configured by BRMS. Make a note of the device and media class names in the system policy.

Add media to the media class scratch pool

Adding media to a BRMS media class allows the use, tracking, and protection of active data on the media by BRMS. You should add media to the media class. Once media is added to a media class of available media, BRMS will drive backup operations and use this media, asking you to load tapes as necessary.

It is important to have sufficient media enrolled in the media class before performing a save operation. To perform the backup discussed in this chapter, we recommend that you enroll at least three pieces of media. In determining the number of media to add, you need to consider the capacity of your media and the size of your Lotus server data.

To add media, refer to either “Enrolling Media into BRMS for use by a Stand-Alone Tape Device” on page 17 or “Enrolling Media into BRMS for use by a Media Library” on page 17. If you are unsure of what kind of device you have, a media library would be an enclosed unit holding multiple media cartridges that allows access to media cartridges using a robotic loader.

Start the backup

To start the online backup of your Lotus server, enter the following command after loading the media into the devices:

```
STRBKUBRM CTLGRP(QLTSSVR) SBMJOB(*NO)
```

Note: The control group (CTLGRP) QLTSSVR specified in the command is the name of the control group that was created for you by BRMS to backup all your Lotus Servers.

During the backup processing, you may encounter certain messages that require user intervention such as loading a tape. A message at the bottom of the screen may appear indicating that a message has been sent to the system operator for a reply. Pressing the F1 key allows you to see more information on how to handle the message.

The processing time of the backup will depend on system processor size, device capabilities, amount of data being saved, and activity associated with your Lotus Server.

After completion of the backup, review the job log to ensure that the backup completed successfully. To display the job log, enter the following command:

```
DSPJOBLOG
```

On the display, press function key F10 and page up to see the details of any messages logged during backup processing.

Note: BRMS catalogs the save information and will automatically back up this information at the end of the save processing for the Lotus Server data. This data is saved because it is necessary for BRMS to successfully recovery the data.

View the Catalog of Lotus Server Saved Items

To see the BRMS catalog of save history (ie. what has been saved), do the following:

- Type GO BRMS on a command line to go to the BRMS main menu.
 - Choose 2=Backup to go to the backup menu.
 - Choose 3=Display backup activity to work with backup activity.
 - Choose 3=Display backup history to review backup history.
 - Choose 7=Work with saved link information and hit ENTER twice to see the contents of your saved directories (links).
 - Choose 9=Work with directory information and hit ENTER on a particular directory to see the saved dates and times for that directory.
 - Choose 7=Restore to restore a directory saved at a specific data and time.
- or**
- Choose 9=Work with saved objects and hit ENTER to work with the individual saved objects in the saved directory.

Note: The Work with Media Information (WRKMEDIBRM) command can also be used from any command line to get the same view. This command also supports many filtering options you can use to limit the amount of entries on the display.

Planning for Disaster Recovery

BRMS helps you plan for a complete recovery of your system by allowing you to print a complete disaster recovery plan which automatically includes any Lotus Server backups you performed.

You should use BRMS to backup the remainder of your system on a regular basis. Refer to Chapter 3, "Backing Up Your Entire System" on page 15, "Printing Your Recovery Reports" on page 19, and Chapter 4, "Recovering Your Entire System" on page 21.

Recovering a Single Lotus Server Database

Use the RSTBRM command to recover a specific Lotus Server database. For example, to restore a Lotus Server database called *names* from device TAP01, you would enter the following command:

```
RSTBRM DEV(TAP01) OBJ((' /notes/data/names.nsf'))
```

Note: You do not need to specify the media identifier on RSTBRM because BRMS knows what media contains the most current version of the data and will ask a system operator to load the required media if it is not currently loaded in TAP01.

After the recovery completes, review the job log to ensure that the recovery was successful. To display the job log, enter the following command:

DSPJOBLOG

On the display, press F10 and page up to see the details of any messages that were logged during recovery processing.

Note: Multiple objects are associated with online backup of a Lotus Server database. Therefore, multiple messages are typical during recovery.

Restrictions

- A media policy retention type of VERSIONS is not supported.
- Restoring a saved Lotus server database across a BRMS network is supported only if the *Receive media info attribute* is set to *LIB. To review the value for the *Receive media info attribute*, use Option 4 - Change network group on the BRMSYSPCY menu.

Recommendations

- Do complete system backups routinely (once per week at the very least).
- Do not attempt to use the SAVDOMBRM or SAVLQBRM commands outside of a control group. These commands should only be used with *EXIT entries within a BRMS control group.

Limitations

- Lotus Servers use subsystem descriptions. These subsystem descriptions must exist on the system prior to recovering the Lotus Servers.

Lotus Server Backup Performance Tuning

Backing up individual Lotus Server databases individually to devices does not perform well. Therefore, the Lotus Server databases are backed up in groups of 5 (default) databases per save operation. To improve performance, you can change this group value by updating an entry in the NOTES.ini file for the server using the following steps.

For Domino servers

- Type WRKDOMSVR on a command line
- Choose 13=Edit NOTES.INI on the server you wish to modify.
- Position to the following entry and modify as required.
SAVDOMBRM_FILES_IN_GROUP=nnn
where nnn is the number of databases to be grouped in one BRMS package.

For QuickPlace servers

- Type WRKLQPSVR on a command line
- Choose 13=Edit NOTES.INI on the server you wish to modify.
- Position to the following entry and modify as required.
SAVLQBRM_FILES_IN_GROUP=nnn
where nnn is the number of databases to be grouped in one BRMS package.

As you increase the number of databases in a group, your Lotus Server is backed up more quickly. However, all databases in the group will be journaled during the backup with the changes backed up separately. Because all the databases in the group are journaled until all databases in the group are backed up, the time during which changes to the databases can occur is increased and the size of the changes backed up will increase. When the databases are recovered, the changes to the database that occurred during the backup will be re-applied. This process takes longer as the number of changes increases.

If your server is being backed up during heavy server usage, you will want to keep this group value relatively small (3 to 7), so that fewer changes occur to the database during backup operation. As a result, recovery of the database can occur in a reasonable amount of time.

If your server is being backed up during off hours when server use is low, you can set the group value higher (10 to 20 or even higher) to speed up the backup operation, while keeping the recovery time reasonable.

The maximum group value is 120.

How to Copy BRMS Lotus Server Control Groups

The control groups that are created by BRMS for online backup on Lotus Servers include one or more *EXIT entries which contain either a SAVDOMBRM or SAVLQPBRM command. The control group (CTLGRP) parameter on these commands needs to be changed if one of these control groups is copied to another control group. The value for the CTLGRP parameter must contain the same name as the control group it is contained in.

Failure to change the CTLGRP parameter will result in an exception when the control group is run.

Pre-processing and Post-processing *EXITs in Control Groups

If the first entry in a control group is an *EXIT, it is processed before any subsystem or job queue processing prior to starting the saves. This is referred to as the pre-processing exit.

If the last entry in a control group is an *EXIT, it is processed after any subsystem or job queue processing following the end of the saves. This is referred to as the post-processing exit.

Because SAVDOMBRM and SAVLQPBRM commands use *EXIT entries, the BRMS control groups supplied for Lotus server backups contain an empty pre-processing *EXIT and empty post-processing *EXIT to ensure that the Lotus server *EXITs occur in the correct order relative to any pre-processing and post-processing. You can change the pre-processing and post-processing *EXIT if you need to perform some operation around the Lotus Server backups.

Example of entries in the QLTSSVR control group:

```
10 *EXIT
20 *EXIT SAVDOMBRM SERVER(DOM1) CTLGRP(QLTSSVR)
30 *EXIT SAVLQPBRM SERVER(DOM2) CTLGRP(QLTSSVR)
40 *EXIT
```

BRMS Online Incremental Lotus Server Backup

Setting up your Lotus Servers for Online Incremental Backup

When setting up your Domino for iSeries or QuickPlace for iSeries servers for online backup - incremental support, you must enable transactional logging for each Lotus Notes server. You must also identify BRMS as an additional server by issuing either:

```
CFGDOMSVR ADLSVR(*BRMS)
or
CHGDOMSVR ADLSVR(*BRMS)
```

Please refer to your Domino and QuickPlace Administrator's Guides for details on how to enable Archival logging.

Notes:

1. Failure to enable Archival logging on a database will result in that database being missed from the incremental save.
2. Circular logging is not supported for incremental save/restore. Therefore, under the Transactional Logging tab, Logging style needs to be changed from "Circular" to "Archived". If this is not done, the save via BRMS will be cancelled with error LNT0950 return code 12.

Setting up BRMS for Online Incremental Backup

You must take the following actions to set up BRMS for Lotus Server online backup - incremental support:

- Verify the Lotus servers and the associated databases are enabled for Archival logging.
- Complete a normal full online backup of your Lotus servers.

Note: You must run a backup of type *FULL of all Lotus servers that are to be backed up before using the online backup - incremental support.

- Use the WRKCTLGBRM command to view the list of backup control groups.
- Use Option 2=Edit entries on each control group you use to perform online backups of your Lotus Servers that have been enabled for Archival Logging.
- Set the Weekly Activity for the *EXIT entries which contain SAVDOMBRM to "I" for each day of the week on which you want incremental backups to be run.

BRMS recommends that you leave one day of the week set to "F" so that a full online backup is performed at least once a week.

Restrictions

1. You must perform a "F" (full) online backup of any new database, anytime you change the database instance identifier, or perform a point in time recovery of a database. Refer to your Domino and QuickPlace Administrator's Guides for details on how to determine when these changes occur.
2. Some Lotus server databases do not support incremental backup. To determine which databases:
 - Enter the WRKDOMSVR or WRKQPLSVR command.
 - Use Option 8=Work console next to a *started* server name.
 - Enter the command **sh directory** on the command line.
 - Page up to the top of the page and locate the Logged column.

- Any database where the value in this column is not set to YES cannot be backed up using the online-incremental support.

Note: You need to evaluate whether any database not enabled for online-incremental support requires a backup. If a backup is required, then you will need to move this database to a Lotus server which is scheduled for regular full backups.

3. The value of the Incremental type prompt on the attributes of backup control groups used for online - incremental support is not relevant. A value of *CUMUL or *INCR produces the same results.
4. If a backup control group is set up to run an online - incremental backup and BRMS detects that no prior full backup exists, BRMS will perform an online - full backup instead of a online - incremental backup.
5. You must use the same type of media for the online - incremental backup that you use for the online - full backup. If the online - full backup went to tape media, the online - incremental cannot go to savefile or to a Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) server. BRMS recommends you use the same media policy for the Media policy for full backups and Media Policy for incremental backups attributes of the backup control groups used for online - incremental backups to assure the same media types and retentions.
6. You are limited to 98 online - incremental backups of a Lotus server before you must perform an online - full backup. BRMS recommends that you perform an online - full backup of your Lotus servers at least once a week.

Setting up BRMS to restore Online Incremental Backups

There is no special setup to recover an online - incremental backup. The BRMS default is to recover the online - full backup and any subsequent online - incremental backups, plus any unsaved journals. This allows you to recover a database past the point-in-time of your last incremental save.

For example: If you delete a database file my.nsf and then request it to be restored, BRMS will restore the online - full backup, any saved journals (online-incrementals), and since the current journals are on the system, these will also be used to bring the database back to the most current level.

If you need a point-in-time recovery earlier than the latest version of a database, see Point-in-time recovery below.

When you view Lotus server online - incremental backups using the WRKMEDIBRM command, the package saved number for the online - full backup will increment for each online - incremental added to the full. The following is an example of the backup history for an online - full backup for which there were 3 online - incremental backups. Notice the number "5" in column 18 to the right of the *LINK

Work with Media Information										RCHASFHM	
Position to Date											
Type options, press Enter.											
2=Change 4=Remove 5=Display 6=Work with media 7=Restore											
9=Work with saved objects											

Point-in-time Recovery

You can perform point-in-time recovery of a Lotus server databases saved using online incremental backup. You can perform recovery of these databases using the **Restore iSeries Data** task provided by the BRMS plug-in to the iSeries Navigator. For detailed information on the BRMS plug-in to iSeries Navigator, see the iSeries Information Center.

Restrictions

You can only restore online - incremental backups to the same Lotus server from which it was backed up. This is a Lotus server restriction. To perform a recovery to a different Lotus server you must restore the online - full backup.

Note: The NNDILOCK.NSF file is a Lotus Notes file used for locking and is automatically created if it does not exist and is therefore never backed up by the SAVDOMBRM command.

Chapter 15. Backup and Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices

This chapter describes techniques and strategies for backup and recovery of auxiliary storage pool devices using BRMS. When you add an auxiliary storage pool device to your system configuration, you will need to plan for the backup and recovery of the user data on these devices because these devices operate differently than the system (1) or basic user (2–32) auxiliary storage pools. These differences will mean that you will have to carefully plan your backup strategy to assure you have a complete system backup.

Auxiliary disk pool devices are specified in OS/400 operations by the 10-character device description name rather than by specifying an identifying number. BRMS also uses the name when targeting saves or restores to auxiliary storage pool devices. Refer to the system documentation if you are not familiar with auxiliary storage pool device operations or terminology.

Key to good system recovery which includes auxiliary storage pool devices is running BRMS maintenance after each backup. The auxiliary storage pool devices must be available when you run maintenance; otherwise, BRMS will not be able to locate the libraries and will consider the libraries on unavailable auxiliary storage pool devices as having been deleted from the system. By default, deleted libraries are not included in the *Recovering Your Entire System Report*. You can specify OMITLIB(*NONE) on the STRRCYBRM command to include deleted libraries in the report, but this will also include libraries that were saved and then subsequently deleted which may not be your intention.

Backup of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices

The Edit Backup Control Group Entries screen has been updated as shown below to include a new Auxiliary Storage Pool Device field. This field will not appear on some backup items entries. Typically this occurs for backup items which cannot reside on auxiliary storage pool devices. The Auxiliary Storage Pool Device prompt will be automatically filled in for entries of your existing backup control groups to reflect the scope of the save across auxiliary storage pool devices. These default values should not affect your current backup strategy and should be consistent with what was being saved by the control group in V5R1.

The *SYSBAS value on the *ALLUSR backup item saves all user libraries on the system (1) and any basic user (2–32) auxiliary storage pools.

The *ALLAVL value for the *LINK backup items saves the links on the system (1) and any basic user (2–32) auxiliary storage pools as well as the links on all available auxiliary storage pool devices .

Note: When saving directory and files, you should unmount any mounted user-defined file systems (UDFSs) prior to the save to assure the objects in the mounted over directories are saved. UDFSs are automatically unmounted on auxiliary storage pool devices when the system is in restricted state. UDFSs on the system or basic user auxiliary storage pools need to be explicitly unmounted. Any unmounted UDFSes need to be remounted after the save.

RCHAS400

Edit Backup Control Group Entries

```

Group . . . . . : SYSTEM
Default activity . . . . FIIIIII
Text . . . . . Backs up the entire system

Type information, press Enter.

```

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*****			
20	*SAVSYS			FIIIIII			
30	*IBM			FIIIIII	*NO	*NO	
40	*ALLUSR		*SYSBAS	FIIIIII	*ERR	*NO	
50	*ALLDLO			FIIIIII	*NO	*NO	
60	*LINK		*ALLAVL	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
70	*EXIT			*****			

Bottom

F3=Exit
F11=Display exits

F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

F10=Change item
F24=More keys

Restrictions of the operating system prevent attaching a primary auxiliary storage pool to the current job if the system is in restricted state. The only means of saving the libraries on auxiliary storage pool devices while in restricted state is to specify the device name in the Auxiliary Storage Pool Device prompt for the backup item.

Assume the system is configured with an auxiliary storage pool group consisting of a device named PAYROLL serving as the primary auxiliary storage pool device, and ACCOUNTS serving as the secondary auxiliary storage pool device. The following screen shows that in order to perform a save of all user libraries, three separate *ALLUSR backup items are required. One *ALLUSR with *SYSBAS is specified to save the libraries on the system and basic user auxiliary storage pools, and one *ALLUSR for each of the PAYROLL and ACCOUNTS auxiliary storage pool devices.

You might consider using this approach if the auxiliary storage pools devices have been configured as private (non-switchable) disk pools. Notice that the *ALLUSR backup items directed to the PAYROLL and ACCOUNTS auxiliary storage pool devices is after the *LINK backup item. This was done to optimize the recovery because objects saved from auxiliary storage pool devices are always recovered after the objects on the system and basic user auxiliary storage pools are recovered.

RCHAS400

Edit Backup Control Group Entries

Group : SYSTEM
Default activity FIIIIII
Text Backs up the entire system

Type information, press Enter.

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*****			
20	*SAVSYS			FIIIIII			
30	*IBM			FIIIIII	*NO	*NO	
40	*ALLUSR		*SYSBAS	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
50	*ALLDLO			FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
60	*LINK		*ALLAVL	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
70	*ALLUSR		PAYROLL	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
80	*ALLUSR		ACCOUNTS	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
90	*EXIT			*****			

Bottom

F3=Exit
F11=Display exits

F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

F10=Change item
F24=More keys

It might be that the auxiliary storage pool group is configured for use in a clustered environment where the group is automatically switched to an alternate system by the cluster management software when it detects the primary system is no longer operational. It may be useful in this environment to set up a backup strategy consisting of two backup control groups, one to backup the base system, and one to backup the switchable auxiliary storage pool group. The following screen shows the backup control group entries that would be used on primary and alternate systems to save only the objects on the system and basic user auxiliary storage pools. The *SYSBAS special value used for the Auxiliary Storage Pool Device parameter of the backup items restricts the scope of the saves to the system and basic user auxiliary storage pools. The exception to the is the *SAVSYS backup item which saves the private authorities for all objects on all available auxiliary storage pool devices.

RCHAS400

Edit Backup Control Group Entries

Group : SYSTEM
Default activity FIIIIII
Text Backs up entire system but not switched ASPs

Type information, press Enter.

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*****			
20	*SAVSYS			FIIIIII			
30	*IBM			FIIIIII	*NO	*NO	
40	*ALLUSR		*SYSBAS	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
50	*ALLDLO			FIIIIII	*NO	*NO	
60	*LINK		*SYSBAS	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
70	*EXIT			*****			

Bottom

F3=Exit
F11=Display exits

F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

F10=Change item
F24=More keys

The following entries would be specified in a second backup control group which would be scheduled to run on the primary system after the SYSTEM backup control group is run. It would not be scheduled to run on the alternate system unless the switch over of these auxiliary storage pool devices had occurred. As you can see from the entries, only the user libraries and links on the auxiliary storage pool devices are saved by this backup control group.

Note: When using a switched auxiliary storage pool device, you need to consider any private authorities that may be defined for objects of these types of devices. All user profiles and all private authorities for objects on auxiliary storage pool devices will be saved with the *SAVSYS or *SAVSECDTA backup items. You need to consider how to restore these private authorities if this authority has changed while the device was switched to an alternate system. You may mean that as part of the recovery, you restore the associated user profiles from the alternate system to the primary system before restoring any objects to the switched auxiliary storage pool device.

When running multiple backup control groups, you need to consider the order these control groups run and which control group manage the restart of subsystems to return from restricted state.

Another not so obvious implication of switched auxiliary storage pool devices is when incremental has been specified for the Weekly Activity. When the auxiliary storage pool device switches to the alternate system, the alternate system will have no history of the switched objects. Therefore the first save of the objects on the switched auxiliary storage pool devices will be a full save rather than an incremental.

Edit Backup Control Group EntriesRCHAS400

Group : ASPS
Default activity FIIIIII
Text Backs up the switched ASPs

Type information, press Enter.

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*****			
20	*ALLUSR		PAYROLL	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
30	*ALLUSR		ACCOUNTS	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
40	*LINK		PAYROLL	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
50	*LINK		ACCOUNTS	FIIIIII	*YES	*NO	
60	*EXIT			*****			

F3=Exit
F11=Display exits

F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

F10=Change item
F24=More keys

Bottom

Specifying the individual auxiliary storage pool devices in the above example can be a bit cumbersome especially if you have a large number of secondary auxiliary storage pool devices in the group. If the objects on these auxiliary storage pool devices can be saved using save while active, there is no need to perform the save of these objects in restricted state, and you can use the *SETASPGRP backup item to attach the device to the job. To do so, add a *SETASPGRP backup item and specify the primary auxiliary storage pool device name in the *Auxiliary Storage Pool Device* prompt for this backup item. Then use the *CURASPGRP special value for the *Auxiliary Storage Pool Device* prompt on all subsequent backup items to be backed up from that primary auxiliary storage pool device and any of its

associated secondary auxiliary storage pool devices. This is illustrated on the following Edit Backup Control Group Entries screen.

Notes:

1. The *SETASPGRP backup item cannot run while in restricted state.
2. When more than one *SETASPGRP is used as backup items, any previously attached primary auxiliary storage pool is detached from the job when the subsequent *SETASPGRP backup item is processed.
3. To explicitly remove an attached primary auxiliary storage pool from the job, use *SETASPGRP with *SYSBAS for the *Auxiliary Storage Pool Device* prompt.

RCHAS400

Edit Backup Control Group Entries

Group : ASPS
Default activity FIIIIII
Text Backs up the switched ASPs using save-while-active

Type information, press Enter.

Seq	Backup Items	List Type	Auxiliary Storage Pool Device	Weekly Activity SMTWTFSS	Retain Object Detail	Save While Active	SWA Message Queue
10	*EXIT			*****			
20	*SETASPGRP		PAYROLL	FIIIIII			
30	*ALLUSR		*CURASPGRP	FIIIIII	*YES	*YES	*LIB
40	*LINK		*CURASPGRP	FIIIIII	*YES	*YES	*LIB
50	*SETASPGRP		*SYSBAS	FIIIIII			
60	*EXIT			*****			

Bottom

F3=Exit
F11=Display exits

F5=Refresh
F12=Cancel

F10=Change item
F24=More keys

Recovery of Auxiliary Storage Pool Devices

When your system recovery includes objects saved from auxiliary storage pools devices, the following additional steps will be added to the System Recovery Report to aid you in recovering your system. These steps will appear after Step: Perform IPL because iSeries Navigator is used to reconfigure the auxiliary storage pool devices. These steps do not appear if you are recovering by ASP, the assumption is that the ASP you are recovering is already configured. The following step provides the guidance to configure the auxiliary storage pool devices during system recovery.

```

*****
STEP: Configure auxiliary storage pool devices

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

The recovery includes objects saved from auxiliary storage pool
devices. The auxiliary storage pool devices must be deleted and
re-configured before recovery can continue.

Use the following command to view the restored auxiliary storage
pool device descriptions:

    WRKDEVD DEVD(*ASP)

Use option 4=Delete to remove the device descriptions from the system.

Use the "Display ASP Information" report (QP1AASP) to review the
names of the auxiliary storage pool devices of the saved system.

--- Attention -----
If the auxiliary storage pool devices are intended to be used as
switched auxiliary storage pools in a clustered environment, review
the documentation provided with your cluster management product to
identify any pre-configuration steps that may be required prior to
configuring these auxiliary storage pool devices.
-----

Re-configure the auxiliary storage pool devices using iSeries
Navigator referring to the online disk unit help.
*****

```

The following step provides the guidance to verify the names of the configured the auxiliary storage pool devices to the names of the saved auxiliary storage pool devices. When you configure the auxiliary storage pool devices using iSeries Navigator, these devices may or may not be assigned the same auxiliary storage pool number depending on the number of disk resources and the order these are configured. Since the auxiliary storage pool number may change, it is important to keep the name the same to allow for automated recovery.

If you are restoring objects to a different auxiliary storage pool device from which it was saved, you will need to change the default recovery options to specify the auxiliary storage pool where the objects are to be restored.

```

*****
STEP: Verify auxiliary storage pool device names

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

Use the following command to view the configured auxiliary storage
pool device descriptions:

    WRKDEVD DEVD(*ASP)

Verify the configured auxiliary storage pool device names match the
names of the auxiliary storage pool devices of the saved system.

Use option 8=Work with status to verify each auxiliary storage pool
device status is AVAILABLE.
*****

```

BRMS saves the history information for auxiliary storage pool devices by the auxiliary storage pool device name. This device name is displayed adjacent to the saved item name as shown in the sample report below. The step shown below will be included in the report if there are libraries saved from auxiliary storage pool devices. You would also see a similar section for recovery of any directories and files that might have been saved from auxiliary storage pool devices.

When recovering libraries on auxiliary storage pool devices and recovering these to the same system and the same auxiliary storage pool device, you need to consider the following:

- When you vary on an auxiliary storage pool device, library QSYS200nnn (where nnn is the auxiliary storage pool number) is created on the auxiliary storage pool device as well as several objects.
- You should recover the saved QSYS200nnn library to the auxiliary storage pool device before you recovery the other libraries on that auxiliary storage pool device.
- When you recover the saved QSYS200nnn library, you should use *F9=Recovery defaults* from the *Select Recovery Items* display and set the *Allow object differences* prompt on the *Restore Command Defaults* panel to *ALL.
- When you recovery the remaining libraries, you should use *F9=Recovery defaults* from the *Select Recovery Items* display and set the *Allow object differences* prompt on the *Restore Command Defaults* panel to *FILELVL.

```
*****
STEP: Recover additional user libraries

Start date/time _____ Stop date/time _____ Duration _____

You should restore the current version of your user libraries saved
from auxiliary storage pool devices or saved to TSM servers.

If you are performing a complete system restore, run the following
command to continue:

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*RESUME)

Otherwise, run the following command(s):

    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*ALLUSR) ACTION(*RESTORE) USEADSM(*YES)
    STRRCYBRM OPTION(*ASP) ACTION(*RESTORE) ASP(auxiliary-storage-pool-name)

Select and recover the following saved item(s) on the "Select Recovery
Items" display using the specified volume(s).

--- Attention -----
If you have logical files whose based-on physical files are in a
different library, you must restore all based-on physical files
before you can restore the logical file.
-----

--- Attention -----
If you use journaling, the libraries containing the journals must be
restored before restoring the journaled files.
-----

Saved      ----- ASP ----- Save   Save   Sequence  Control  Volume
Item      Type  Name      Number  Date   Time    Objects  Omit    Number   Group    Identifier
-----
EMPLOYEES *FULL PAYROLL 00033 8/22/02 13:09:52 6        1 SYSTEM  SAVS2
AUG2002   *FULL ACCOUNTS 00034 8/22/02 13:21:57 6        2 SYSTEM  SAVS2
*****
```

Chapter 16. Using Tape Automation with BRMS

This chapter describes the methods that you can use with BRMS to use devices such as a 3494 Automated Tape Library Dataserver or a Magstar MP 3570 Tape Library. BRMS refers to this class of automated tape libraries as media libraries.

Adjustments to BRMS When Using Tape Automation

If you were using BRMS before installing a media library, you need to make a few adjustments. If you use BRMS to manage and control daily operations, you will not notice many changes when you begin to use a media library. Once the media library is set up and the media is appropriately enrolled, BRMS assumes control of the media library. You do not need to alter your BRMS control groups, scheduling, or reporting. As part of your initial setup, you may need to adjust the following:

- Locations
- Devices
- Move policies
- Media policies
- Control group attributes

You should review your backup and archive strategy, when using a media library. For example you may want to:

- Alter the size of backup groups
- Alter the frequency of backups
- Increase the size of archive groups
- Alter the frequency of archive operations
- Introduce dynamic recall

Setting up Tape Automation with BRMS

This topic describes some of the actions required in setting up a media library before you use it with BRMS. This section assumes that a media library is installed and operational. For full planning and installation of the media library, consult the publication shipped with the device.

Creating Tape Automation on Your System

BRMS requires that the device descriptions for the library and its device resources exist on the iSeries server. Refer to the Manage tape libraries topic in the iSeries Information Center for information on how to create these device descriptions. After you set up the media library and vary it on, you use the INZBRM *DEVICE command to update BRMS with all the proper defaults for the new devices.

Basic Setup of a Media Library with BRMS

Before a media library can be used, you must add media to the library and enroll the volumes into BRMS. If the media library is empty, open the door and add all available media into empty cells rather than add only a small number at a time through the convenience I/O station. When closing the door, the media library checks each cell and records the volume ID of each media cartridge (volume). This information is kept in the media library manager database for the 3494 and in

OS/400 for the other media library devices. From the iSeries, you can view this information by using the Work with Media Library BRM (WRKMLBBRM) command. This command lists all media library devices on your system that are enrolled in BRMS. If you select option 8 (Work with MLB Media), the status of the volumes that are currently in the media library are displayed as shown below. The WRKMLMBRM command can also be used to go directly to this display. When setting up a media library for the first time, the Media Class is *NONE because the volume is not enrolled in BRMS.

Work with Media Library Media

RCHAS400

Media library device . . . : MLB01

Position to Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.

1=Add MLB media

2=Work with media

5=Initialize

6=Change category

7=Eject

8=Mount

9=Demount

---BRM Information---

Opt	Volume	Category	Media Class	Expired	Status
	BCD161	*SHARE400	CART3490E	*YES	Available
	BCD164	*SHARE400	*NONE		Available
	BCD165	*SHARE400	CART3490E	*YES	Available
	BCD166	*SHARE400	*NONE		Available
	BCD167	*SHARE400	*NONE		Available
	BCD168	*SHARE400	*NONE		Available
	BCD170	*INSERT	*NONE		Available
	BCD173	*INSERT	*NONE		Available

More...

Other options from this display; including mount, demount, and eject; can be used to manipulate the volumes within a media library. BRMS communicates changes in its media inventory to be reflected in the media library media inventory. For example, when you change the shared media attribute of a media class, BRMS runs the CHGTAPCTG command to change the category of all volumes of that media class in the media library.

Enrolling Tape Automation Media (volume) into BRMS

From the Work with Media Libraries display (WRKMLMBRM) command, select option 11 (Add MLB media) against the media library device that is attached to your system. The ADDMLMBRM prompt display as shown below.

Add MLB Media using BRM (ADDMLMBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Media library device > MLB01

Name

Volume identifier *INSERT

Character value, *INSERT

+ for more values

Add volume to BRM > *YES

*NO, *YES

Initialize tape *NO

*NO, *YES

Media class > CART3490E

CART3490E, QIC120...

Last moved date *NONE

Date, *NONE

Move policy *NONE

*NONE, OFFSITE

You can enroll all newly-inserted volumes into the BRMS media inventory. If you use the default value for the VOL parameter (*INSERT) and change the Add volume to BRM field to *YES, all volumes that were previously in the *INSERT category (from the Work with MLB Media display) are enrolled into the BRMS media inventory and are available for use.

Save and Restore Tasks

When performing save or restore operations with a media library and BRMS, consider the following.

Performing a Normal Save Operation

Using a media library for either a control group save operation or a save operation with the SAVOBJBRM, SAVLIBBRM, SAVOBJLBRM, SAVSYSBRM, or the SAVMEDIBRM commands provides certain advantages. Specifically, the save operation and save media are easier to track than if you were to use OS/400 save commands and save to a media library. The save command or control group define the objects to be saved. The media policy specifies a media class that is defined with a drive which is found within a media library. BRMS supports the location as a media qualifier in both the media policy and the SETMEDBRM command. When coupled with *MEDCLS as a device identifier in a media policy, BRMS attempts to select a device that is at the same location as the media. An example of this would be a drive in the media library. Output operations to a device in a media library may require nonspecific (*MOUNTED) volumes when no volume is in the drive. If this occurs, BRMS refers to its inventory of available scratch media to select one that is in the media library. BRMS then requests a mount of that tape. An end option of *UNLOAD (the default for a backup control group) causes the volume to be returned to its cell when the control group has completed processing. If a BRMS save command is used, the end option default of *REWIND should be accepted. The control group attributes or backup policy may be changed to *REWIND. In either case, the volume remains in the drive after the save operation has completed.

Save Storage and BRMS

BRMS does not support the use of the Save Storage (SAVSTG) command. The SAVSTG command does not support tape automation. All operations must be done in Stand Alone mode or with a category mounted to the media library.

Using the Save Licensed Program Command

The SAVLICPGM command does not support tape automation. All operations must be done in Stand Alone mode or with a category mounted to the media library. BRMS does not support the SAVLICPGM command. For system recovery, the product libraries are saved under the *IBM grouping. You cannot restore these with the RSTLICPGM command. Consult your BRMS recovery report for further details.

Recovery Process Using Tape Automation

Using a media library is quite simple, whether the STRRCYBRM, RSTLIBBRM, RSTOBJBRM, or RSTDLOBRM commands are used, or if recovery is performed from the WRKMEDIBRM, WRKOBJBRM or WRKFLRBRM displays. As long as the required volume is in the media library, the restore operation is automatic, with no message being sent to the QSYSOPR message queue to load the volume. A message is sent to the BRMS log to notify the status of the restore operation. When the restore operation is complete, the last volume used remains in the tape drive unless otherwise specified. The end-of-tape option *UNLOAD returns the volume to its storage cell. If the required volume has been moved to another location, an inquiry message is sent to the QSYSOPR message queue. The message prompts the operator to insert the volume in the convenience I/O station or the high-capacity

I/O area. If the volume is off-site, the operator can cancel the restore operation from this message. Once the volume is in either the convenience or high-capacity I/O areas, the media library places it in a storage cell, and BRMS mounts it in the drive to complete the restore operation.

Recovering an Entire System (Starting with Licensed Internal Code)

Ensure that your media library device is in stand-alone mode before starting "STEP: Recover Licensed Internal Code" during BRMS System Recovery. See the documentation on your device to learn how to properly change the mode for your media library device.

Completing the Recovery

When the restricted state portion of the recovery is complete, tape automation can be used when the following conditions are met:

- The 3494 device and communication configurations are restored or re-created.
- The media library configuration data has been restored or re-created.

Tape automation requires a minimum level of system function to be recovered before an automatic volume mounting can occur. In general, automation can begin with "STEP: Recover User Profiles" on the BRMS System Recovery Report. It is recommended that you switch the media library to random mode during "STEP: Initialize BRMS Device and Media Library Information" during BRMS System Recovery to automate the remainder of your system recovery.

Tasks for Archiving

When you use tape automation with BRMS, this opens more opportunities for archiving. Full tape automation allows archiving to be performed quickly and effortlessly while appearing seamless in its operation. The introduction of dynamic retrieval further enhances archiving potential.

Consult *Hierarchical Storage Management*, SC41-5351-01 for more information about archive, dynamic retrieval, and other storage management features of BRMS.

Archiving When Using Tape Automation

To provide the most acceptable recall performance, you must minimize the tape location and the load delays. You will probably keep a large portion of your archived data within the tape automation. This uses a large amount of capacity. When establishing a move policy, you should consider the following:

- How often will you access your data?
- How long will you need to have access to your data?

For example, you might access a monthly report only up until the time that the next month's report is created. You might have other information that you need to access at all times yet access only occasionally. Your move policy will be based on the needs of your business. If you adjust the movement delay periods, this changes the population levels of the media library.

Using Dynamic Retrieval

To further improve your archive and retrieval performance, use the dynamic retrieval function within BRMS. This function allows on-demand retrieval of the file members that have been archived and now need to be accessed again.

To accomplish this, change your archive control group such that the archiving requested keeps the object descriptions. This is known as save with storage free. To do this, change the retain object description parameter on either the archive control-group options or the archive policy to *YES.

You must set up your BRMS retrieval policy with the appropriate retrieval modes (*VERIFY, *NOTIFY, *DELAY or *SBMJOB), preferred devices, restore options, and authorities. The OS/400 Hierarchical Storage Management book contains more information on these modes.

Moving Volumes with BRMS

When BRMS operations such as Add media or Confirm move required media to be moved to or from a media library, BRMS prompts operators as needed. It instructs them to place media into, or remove media from the media library and then uses CL commands to verify that the operation is successful.

For devices such as 3494 Media Library Dataserver, a move policy or manual move of media causes the library manager to eject the tape into the convenience I/O station or the high-capacity I/O area. Additional prompting and verification is done when media, ejected from one media library location, are inserted into another. When a volume is moved into the media library, the library manager shows that the volume is in *INSERT category.

If you move a volume to a media library when media movements are to be confirmed, BRMS attempts to change the category of volumes from *INSERT to *SHARE400 or *NOSHARE, as applicable to the media class. If at the time of the confirm move, the volume has not been placed in your media library, a message is logged in the BRMS log. These volumes must be changed to *SHARE400 before they can be used by BRMS.

If move verification is not enabled, BRMS attempts to change the category of volumes that move into a media library from *INSERT to *SHARE400 or *NOSHARE immediately. This can cause a problem, as common maintenance (STRMNTBRM command) is run at night after backups have completed, and volumes have not been moved offsite. In this case, it may be worthwhile to use the PRTMOVBRM command during the day before the move is to take place. Use the PRTMOVBRM command to ensure that you collect the volumes and insert them into the media library before the MOVMEDBRM is actually processed.

Chapter 17. Tape I/O From A Program

Typically, applications written in RPG or COBOL will perform data record input and output (I/O) to database files. However, in some applications these files may be so large, that you never store them on disk. You store them on tape, and process them sequentially by application programs, either for input or for output, but not both at once. On the iSeries, this is done using a tape file object.

Such applications have the same requirements for control and tracking of the media on which the operations are performed as do media used for normal save and restore operations. This chapter discusses how you can use these types of tape file I/O applications with BRMS.

The example in Figure 15 shows typical tape file processing from an application. It is a simple RPG program which writes the alphabet 100 times to a tape.

```
FTAPFIL 0 F      26          SEQ
F*****
F*   Program: TAPFIL
F*   Purpose: This program will write the 26 letters of the
F*             alphabet to a file on tape through a tape file. The
F*             alphabet is written 100 times.
F*
F*****
C               DO  100                Loop 100 times
C               EXCPTALPHA            Write alphabet
C               END                    End of loop
C*
C               SETON                  LR   End the program
O*****
O*   Exception output defining the alphabet to be written
O*
O*****
OTAPFIL  E          ALPHA
O                               24 'ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ'
O                               26 'YZ'
```

Figure 15. Sample Program to Perform Tape File I/O

This application requires a tape file object to be created such that the program can address the tape drive. You create this with the CRTTAPF command as follows:

```

Create Tape File (CRTTAPF)

Type choices, press Enter.

File . . . . . > TAPFIL      Name
Library . . . . . > BRMTAPF  Name, *CURLIB
Tape device . . . . . *NONE    Name, *NONE
+ for more values
Volume identifier . . . . . *NONE    Character value, *NONE
+ for more values
Tape reels specifications:
Label processing type . . . . *SL      *SL, *NL, *NS, *BLP, *LTM
Number of reels . . . . . 1      1-255
Sequence number . . . . . 1      1-9999, *END, *NEXT
Tape label . . . . . > TAPEFILEXMP
File type . . . . . *DATA      *DATA, *SRC
Text 'description' . . . . . > 'Tape File Example'

```

Figure 16. CRTTAPF Command Prompt Screens

Once you create the tape file, you can process the program. However, for flexibility, you may have noticed that we have not specified a tape device name. So before you process the program TAPFIL, we need to perform an override of the tape file with the OVRTAPF command, as follows:

```

Override with Tape File (OVRTAPF)

Type choices, press Enter.

File being overridden . . . . . > TAPFIL  Name
Overriding to tape file . . . . *FILE    Name, *FILE
Library . . . . .                Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
Device . . . . . > TAP03            Name
+ for more values
Volume identifier . . . . .                Character value, *NONE
+ for more values
Tape reels specifications:
Label processing type . . . .                *SL, *NL, *NS, *BLP, *LTM
Number of reels . . . . .                1-255
Sequence number . . . . .                1-9999, *END, *NEXT
File label . . . . .
Record length . . . . .                Number, *CALC
Block length . . . . .                1-32767, *CALC
Buffer offset . . . . .                Number, *BLKDSC
Record block format . . . . .                *F, *FB, *V, *VB, *D, *DB...
More...

F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F10=Additional parameters  F12=Cancel
F13=How to use this display  F24=More keys

```

Figure 17. OVRTAPF Command Prompt Screen

This associates the tape file name to the tape device. Notice that the volume ID field is not specified.

Next we can call the program, as follows:

```
CALL BRMTAPF/TAPFIL
```

The records are written to the tape.

Using BRMS for Tape File Processing

BRMS can play a part in the processing as described above such that the tape volume created is controlled and tracked just like any other BRMS enrolled tape volume.

To do this, you must perform two actions:

1. Use a tape volume that is enrolled in the BRMS media inventory,
2. Use the SETMEDBRM command before processing the program.

The first step is as simple as inserting a tape as is done for save purposes. The second step, using SETMEDBRM, allows you to specify media management parameters to be associated with the written tape. You can specify this command as follows:

Set Media Controls using BRM (SETMEDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Input controls:

File label	*SAME	
Select version	*SAME	1-999, *SAME, *CURRENT
Allow conversion	*SAME	*SAME, *YES, *NO
Media class	> REEL	*SAME, *NONE, QIC120...
Move policy	> TAPEFILE	*SAME, *NONE, OFFSITE...
Secure volume	> *NO	*SAME, *YES, *NO

Retention:

Retention type	> *VERSION	*SAME, *DATE, *DAYS ...
Retain media	> 3	*SAME, Date, Number
File group	*SAME	Name, *SAME, *NONE...
File group type	*SAME	Name, *SAME, *NONE, *BKU...
Mark volumes for duplication . .	*NO	*SAME, *NO, *YES
Text	> Tape File Example	

Figure 18. SETMEDBRM Command Prompt Screen

The SETMEDBRM command for an output (write) operation, as in our example, allows you to set the following media characteristics:

- Media class
- Move policy
- Volume security
- Retention information
- File group information
- Associated Text

This command works a little like the OVRTAPE. You do not see any output. It *registers* the values you enter, and when an application writes to a tape file, these values are applied to the tape operation.

In this example, TFIL01 was the volume on the tape drive during the processing of the program.

The result is that a record is added to the media management information that is recorded with the tape volume, as follows:

Work with Media

RCHAS400

Position to Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.

1=Add

2=Change

4=Remove

5=Display

6=Work with media set

7=Expire

8=Move

10=Reinitialize...

Volume Opt	Serial	Expired	Creation Date	Expiration Date	Location	Move Date	Media Class	Dup Sts
5	TFIL01		12/14/95	*VER 003	*HOME	*NONE	QIC120	

Display Media Attributes

Volume serial : TFIL01

Media class : REEL

Expiration date. : *VER 003

Previous location : *NONE

Previous slot number : 0

Current location : *HOME

Last moved date : *NONE

Scheduled location : *NONE

Scheduled move date : *NONE

Container ID : *NONE

Move policy : TAPEFILE

Creation date : 12/14/95

Secure volume : *NO

Beginning volume : TFIL01

Slot number : 21

System : RCHAS400

Text : Tape File Example

Press Enter to continue.

Figure 19. WRKMEDBRM Command Screen

WRKMEDIBRM also shows that some save operations have occurred, as follows:

Work with Media Information

RCHAS400

Position to Date

Type options, press Enter.

2=Change

4=Remove

5=Display

6=Work with media

7=Restore

9=Work with saved objects

Opt	Saved Item	Date	Time	Save Type	Volume Serial	File Seq	Expiration Date
5	*LABEL	12/14/95	14:59:46	*FILE	TFIL01	1	*VER003

Figure 20. WRKMEDIBRM Command Screen

Use option 5 (Display) to see the following screen that presents a record of writing the data to the tape.

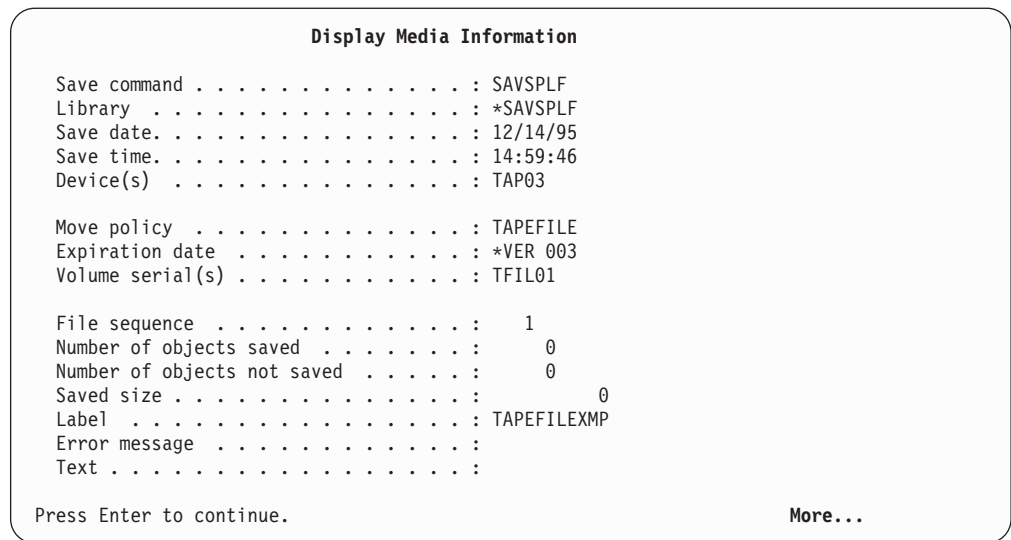


Figure 21. Display Media Information from WRKMEDIBRM

Due to the nature of the method used to get the data on the tape, option 7 to restore will not allow you to restore this object. Similarly, there are no saved objects to work with if you use option 9.

Recovery

As the file on the tape is never intended to be restored to the iSeries server, you never see the tape file record on a Recovery Analysis Report.

Using BRMS for Input Processing

We have just seen an example of how BRMS can keep information about media written using tape file output. Input processing is very similar, with the exception of the parameters on the SETMEDBRM command.

You can use the following program to read the records that were written by the first example:

```

FTAPFIL IF F      26      SEQ
FTAPRPT O F      26      PRINTER
*****
F*   Program: TAPFIL2
F*   Purpose: This program will read the letters of the alphabet
F*             from a file on tape through a tape file. The program
F*             will read the 100 records created with the other
F*             example and dump them to the printer
*****
IALPHA      DS      26
I*****
C             DO 100             Loop 100 times
C             READ TAPFIL      ALPHA      99Read alphabet
C             EXCPTALFOUT      Write alphabet
C             END              End of loop
C             SETON            LR      End the program
O*****
O*   Exception output defining the alphabet to be printed
O*
O*****
OTAPRPT E      ALFOUT
O              ALPHA      26

```

Figure 22. Program to Read Records from Tape and Print

This example also requires a printer file object such that the records are printed. Use the CRTPRTF command.

The same processing would occur, namely:

1. Use the program above
2. Use the same tape file
3. Issue OVRTAPF to specify the device name as before
4. Issue SETMEDBRM as shown in Figure 23
5. Run the program when you specify:

```
CALL BRMTAPF/TAPFIL2
```

Set Media Controls using BRM (SETMEDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Input controls:

File label	>	TAPEFILEXMP
Select version	>	*CURRENT 1-999, *SAME, *CURRENT
Allow conversion	>	*NO *SAME, *YES, *NO
Media class		*SAME *SAME, *NONE, QIC120...
Move policy		*SAME *SAME, *NONE, OFFSITE...
Secure volume		*SAME *SAME, *YES, *NO

Retention:

Retention type	*SAME	*SAME, *DATE, *DAYS ...
Retain media	*SAME	*SAME, Date, Number
File group	*SAME	Name, *SAME, *NONE ...
File group type	*SAME	Name, *SAME, *NONE
Mark volumes for duplication . .	*NO	*SAME, *NO, *YES
Text	*SAME	

Figure 23. SETMEDBRM Command Prompt Screen for Program Input

BRMS will look for an open of a tape file called TAPFIL, and will prompt the operator to insert the tape volume corresponding to the most recent version of this

file. If this file were in ASCII format, we could specify that we do not want OS/400 to convert the record to EBCDIC automatically. Specify *Allow conversion* Yes to do this.

Input/Output Processing with Multiple Devices

This example is an extension to the ones that were provided previously. These examples had two programs that wrote, then read data to and from a tape. In this example, we will use two tape drives. We will read the data from the tape already written in the previous example, and write a new file on tape which includes the original records and some new records.

The sequence of events is this:

1. Create Tape File objects
2. Compile the program (RPG in this example)
3. Use OVRTAPF to select devices
4. Issue SETMEDBRM to influence the choice of tapes used
5. Run the program

1. Create Tape File Objects

The name of the tape file itself is quite irrelevant to the processing of the files on tape. It is the Tape Label field in the CRTTAPF command that is significant. As we are updating a file on tape, both the input file (TAPFIL) and the output file (TAPFIL2) have the same File Label (TAPEFILEXMP).

Create Tape File (CRTTAPF)

Type choices, press Enter.

File	<i>tapfil</i>	Name
Library	<i>brmtapf</i>	Name, *CURLIB
Tape device	<i>*NONE</i>	Name, *NONE
+ for more values		
Volume identifier	<i>*NONE</i>	Character value, *NONE
+ for more values		
Tape reels specifications:		
Label processing type	<i>*SL</i>	*SL, *NL, *NS, *BLP, *LTM
Number of reels	<i>1</i>	1-255
Sequence number	<i>1</i>	1-9999, *END, *NEXT
Tape label	<i>tapefilexmp</i>	
File type	<i>*DATA</i>	*DATA, *SRC
Text 'description'	<i>Tape File Example</i>	

Bottom

F3=Exit	F4=Prompt	F5=Refresh
F10=Additional parameters	F12=Cancel	
F13=How to use this display	F24=More keys	

Create Tape File (CRTTAPF)

Type choices, press Enter.

File	<i>tapfil2</i>	Name
Library	<i>brmtapf</i>	Name, *CURLIB
Tape device	<i>*NONE</i>	Name, *NONE
+ for more values		
Volume identifier	<i>*NONE</i>	Character value, *NONE
+ for more values		
Tape reels specifications:		
Label processing type	<i>*SL</i>	*SL, *NL, *NS, *BLP, *LTM
Number of reels	<i>1</i>	1-255
Sequence number	<i>1</i>	1-9999, *END, *NEXT
Tape label	<i>tapefilexmp</i>	
File type	<i>*DATA</i>	*DATA, *SRC
Text 'description'	<i>Tape File Example</i>	

Bottom

F3=Exit	F4=Prompt	F5=Refresh	F10=Additional parameters	F12=Cancel
F13=How to use this display	F24=More keys			

2. Compile The Program

You need to compile the RPG program. The following code is a simple example to demonstrate the function.

```

FTAPFIL  IF  F      26          SEQ
FTAPFIL2 0   F      26          SEQ
ITAPFIL  AA
I
I
1 26 ALPHA
F*****
F*   Program: TAPFIL2
F*   Purpose: This program will read the 26 letters of the
F*             alphabet from a tap file (TAPFIL), then write them
F*             with some other data to an output file TAPFIL2.
F*
F*****
C
C          DO 100              Loop 100 times
C          READ TAPFIL          01Read alphabet
C          EXCPTALPHA1          WRITE ALPHA
C          END                  End of loop
O*****
C
C          DO 10              Loop 10 times
C          EXCPTALPHA2          Write new rcds
C          END                  End of loop
C          SETON                LR   End the program
O*****
O*   Exception output defining the alphabet to be written
O*
O*****
OTAPFIL2 E          ALPHA1
O                  ALPHA      26
OTAPFIL2 E          ALPHA2
O
O                  24 '123456789012345678901234'
O                  26 '56'
```

3. Use OVRTAPF to Indicate Which Tape Drives to Use

After you identify two available tape drives, use the OVRTAPF command to associate each tape file with an available drive. You do not need to mount the tapes at this time.

Override with Tape File (OVRTAPF)

Type choices, press Enter.

```

File being overridden . . . . . > TAPFIL   Name
Overriding to tape file . . . . *FILE      Name, *FILE
Library . . . . .                      Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
Device . . . . . > TAP01                  Name
      + for more values
Volume identifier . . . . .              Character value, *NONE
      + for more values
Tape reels specifications:
  Label processing type . . . .          *SL, *NL, *NS, *BLP, *LTM
  Number of reels . . . . .             1-255
  Sequence number . . . . .             1-9999, *END, *NEXT
  File label . . . . .
  Record length . . . . .               Number, *CALC
  Block length . . . . .                1-32767, *CALC
  Buffer offset . . . . .                Number, *BLKDSC
  Record block format . . . . .         *F, *FB, *V, *VB, *D, *DB...
                                          More...
F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel  F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys

```

Override with Tape File (OVRTAPF)

Type choices, press Enter.

```

File being overridden . . . . . > TAPFIL2   Name
Overriding to tape file . . . . *FILE      Name, *FILE
Library . . . . .                      Name, *LIBL, *CURLIB
Device . . . . . > TAP03                  Name
      + for more values
Volume identifier . . . . .              Character value, *NONE
      + for more values
Tape reels specifications:
  Label processing type . . . .          *SL, *NL, *NS, *BLP, *LTM
  Number of reels . . . . .             1-255
  Sequence number . . . . .             1-9999, *END, *NEXT
  File label . . . . .
  Record length . . . . .               Number, *CALC
  Block length . . . . .                1-32767, *CALC
  Buffer offset . . . . .                Number, *BLKDSC
  Record block format . . . . .         *F, *FB, *V, *VB, *D, *DB...
                                          More...
F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F5=Refresh  F10=Additional parameters  F12=Cancel
F13=How to use this display      F24=More keys

```

Volume R00009 contains the alphabet that is written 100 times by the previous example. T00009 is an expired tape of the media class we want to use.

Work with Media RCHAS400

Position to Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.

1=Add	2=Change	4=Remove	5=Display
6=Work with media set	7=Expire	8=Move	10=Reinitialize...

Volume Opt Serial	Expired	Creation Date	Expiration Date	Location	Move Date	Media Class	Dup Sts
M00001		5/31/95	*PERM	VAULT	7/06/95	QIC120	
M00002		5/31/95	*PERM	*HOME	*NONE	NOSHARE	
M00003		5/31/95	*PERM	*HOME	*NONE	QIC525	
R00009		8/01/95	8/06/95	*HOME	*NONE	QIC120	
T00001	*YES	7/04/95	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	QIC120	
T00002	*YES	7/04/95	7/04/95	*HOME	*NONE	QIC525	
T00003		7/04/95	*VER 002	*HOME	7/04/95	QIC525	
T00009	*YES	8/01/95	8/01/95	*HOME	*NONE	QIC120	

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F11=Volume statistics F12=Cancel F23=More options

4. Use SETMEDBRM to Involve BRMS in Managing the Tape

You need to use the SETMEDBRM command only once to control the input from TAPFIL and output to TAPFIL2. For input, the File Label field, TAPEFILEXMP, is what controls which tape is selected. The Select Version field instructs BRMS to associate TAPEFILEXMP with the correct tape, in our case R00009.

For output, the fields Media Class, Move Policy, Secure Volume, and Retention all control the tape that is selected and its media management characteristics after the tape is written.

Set Media Controls using BRM (SETMEDBRM)

Type choices, press Enter.

Input controls:

File label	TAPEFILEXMP	
Select version	*CURRENT	1-999, *SAME, *CURRENT
Allow conversion	*YES	*SAME, *YES, *NO
Media class	REEL	*SAME, *NONE, BRMLAB...
Move policy	OFFSITE	*SAME, *NONE, BRMLAB...
Secure volume	*NO	*SAME, *YES, *NO

Retention:

Retention type	*DAYS	*SAME, *DATE, *DAYS...
Retain media	30	*SAME, Date, Number
File group	*NONE	Name, *SAME, *NONE...
File group type	*NONE	Name, *SAME, *NONE
Mark volumes for duplication . .	*NO	*SAME, *NO, *YES
Text	*NONE	

Bottom

F3=Exit F4=Prompt F5=Refresh F12=Cancel F13=How to use this display
 F24=More keys

Call the Program

You can then call the RPG program. If the operator is aware of which volumes are to be used for input and output, they can be placed in the appropriate tape drives. Otherwise, BRMS will send a message to QSYSOPR with instructions on volumes to use.

```
MAIN                                OS/400 Main Menu                                System:  RCHAS400

Select one of the following:

    1. User tasks
    2. Office tasks
    3. General system tasks
    4. Files, libraries, and folders
    5. Programming
    6. Communications
    7. Define or change the system
    8. Problem handling
    9. Display a menu
   10. Information Assistant options
   11. Client Access tasks

   90. Sign off

Selection or command
==> call brmtapf/tapfil2

F3=Exit  F4=Prompt  F9=Retrieve  F12=Cancel  F13=Information Assistant
F23=Set initial menu
```

Results

After you run the program, the BRMS media inventory is updated to reflect that volume T00009 is now in use with expiration characteristics as specified in the SETMEDBRM command. (The volume still shows as being in the *HOME location as media movement has not yet been run.)

```
Work with Media                                RCHAS400

Position to . . . . . Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.
  1=Add      2=Change      4=Remove      5=Display
  6=Work with media set  7=Expire      8=Move      10=Reinitialize...

  Volume      Creation  Expiration  Move  Media  Dup
  Opt Serial   Expired   Date       Date   Location Date  Class  Sts

M00001        5/31/95  *PERM      VAULT   7/06/95 QIC120
M00002        5/31/95  *PERM      *HOME   *NONE   NOSHARE
M00003        5/31/95  *PERM      *HOME   *NONE   QIC120
R00009        8/01/95  8/06/95    *HOME   *NONE   QIC525
T00001        7/04/95  *NONE      *HOME   *NONE   QIC525
T00002        7/04/95  7/04/95    *HOME   *NONE   QIC120
T00003        7/04/95  *VER 002   *HOME   7/04/95 QIC525
5 T00009      8/01/95  8/31/95    *HOME   *NONE   *NONE

Bottom

F3=Exit  F5=Refresh  F11=Volume statistics  F12=Cancel  F23=More options
```

Display Media Attributes

```

Volume serial . . . . . : T00009
Media class . . . . . : REEL
Expiration . . . . . : 8/31/95
Previous location . . . . : *NONE
Previous slot number . . . : 0
Current location . . . . . : *HOME
Last moved date . . . . . : *NONE
Scheduled location . . . . : *NONE
Scheduled move date . . . . : *NONE
Container ID . . . . . : *NONE
Move policy . . . . . : OFFSITE
Creation date . . . . . : 8/01/95
Secure volume . . . . . :
Beginning volume . . . . . : T00009
Slot number . . . . . : 0
System . . . . . : RCHAS400
Text . . . . . : *NONE
  
```

Press Enter to continue.

More...

F3=Exit F12=Cancel

Option 13, work with content, shows what is on the tape.

Work with Media

RCHAS400

Position to Starting characters

Type options, press Enter.

1=Add 2=Change 4=Remove 5=Display
6=Work with media set 7=Expire 8=Move 10=Reinitialize...

Opt	Volume Serial	Expired	Creation Date	Expiration Date	Location	Move Date	Media Class	Dup Sts
	M00001		5/31/95	*PERM	VAULT	7/06/95	QIC120	
	M00002		5/31/95	*PERM	*HOME	*NONE	NOSHARE	
	M00003		5/31/95	*PERM	*HOME	*NONE	QIC525	
	R00009		8/01/95	8/06/95	*HOME	*NONE	QIC525	
	T00001	*YES	7/04/95	*NONE	*HOME	*NONE	QIC120	
	T00002	*YES	7/04/95	7/04/95	*HOME	*NONE	QIC120	
	T00003		7/04/95	*VER 002	*HOME	7/04/95	QIC525	
13	T00009		8/01/95	8/31/95	*HOME	*NONE	*NONE	

Bottom

F3=Exit F5=Refresh F11=Volume statistics F12=Cancel F23=More options

```

Work with Media Information          RCHAS400

Position to Date . . . . .

Type options, press Enter.
  2=Change  4=Remove  5=Display  6=Work with media  7=Restore
  9=Work with saved objects

Opt  Saved      Date      Time      Save  Volume  File  Expiration
     Item                               Type   Serial  Seq   Date
5  TAPEFILEXMP  8/01/95  14:48:24  *FILE  T00009   1  8/31/95
5  *LABEL       12/14/95  14:59:46  *FILE  TFIL01   1  *VER003

Bottom

F3=Exit  F5=Refresh  F12=Cancel

```

```

Display Media Information

Save command . . . . . :
Saved item . . . . . : TAPEFILEXMP
Save date. . . . . : 8/01/95
Save time. . . . . : 14:48:24
Device(s) . . . . . : TAP03

Move policy . . . . . : OFFSITE
Expiration date . . . . . : 8/31/95
Volume serial(s) . . . . . : T00009

File sequence . . . . . : 1
Number of objects saved . . . . . : 0
Number of objects not saved . . . . . : 0
Saved size . . . . . : 0
Label . . . . . : TAPEFILEXMP
Error message . . . . . :
Text . . . . . :

Press Enter to continue.

```

Issue the SETMEDBRM command before *any* command that performs tape I/O in addition to the example above in a program. You can use it with CPYTOTAP and CPYFRMTAP, as well as any native SAVLIB, SAVOBJ, RSTDLO, RSTUSRPRF commands. However, as you will note, SETMEDBRM will only record for media management purposes the status of the tape. You will not be able to use the BRMS functions (such as WRKMEDIBRM) to restore from this tape. It is always better to use the BRMS commands for save and restore operations for this reason.

Messages

No messages are written to the BRMS log when the tape is either written to or read in this manner.

Part 4. Appendixes

Appendix A. A Summary of BRMS Reports

Following is a list of all the reports that are available in BRMS. This list provides the title of each report, the command or commands that you can use to generate the report, and the associated printer file. The list includes source information (QUSRBRM/QA1ASRC) for printer files for the three Print Label reports, which you can change as necessary.

The following pages summarize each report itemized in the list. To see the actual layout of these reports, go to the Reports menu (GO BRMRPT), from which you can process any of these reports. The parenthesized name (QP1Axxxx) in the section titles are the names of the printer files which contain the final reports.

ASP Information Report (QP1AASP, QP1AXS)

The ASP Information report provides a summary of all auxiliary storage pools (ASPs) that are set up and various statistical information detail about the ASP's on your system. This report is printed as a result of running the command `WRKASPBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT)`

The ASP Information report is also produced as part of the maintenance (STRMNTBRM) activity or by running the STRRCYBRM command. In these cases, the printer file is named QP1AASP.

Backup Folder List Report (QP1AFL)

The Backup Folder List report lists all the folders in a backup list. This report is printed as a result of running the command `WRKLBRM TYPE(*BKU) OUTPUT(*PRINT)`.

Backup Link List Report (QP1AFS)

The Backup Link List report lists all the directories in a backup list. Print the report by running the command `WRKLBRM TYPE(*BKU) OUTPUT(*PRINT)` or by selecting Option 6 (Print) on the Work with Lists display for an integrated file system list.

Backup Object List Report (QP1AOB)

The Backup Object List report lists all the objects in a backup list. This report is printed as a result of running the command `WRKLBRM TYPE(*BKU) OUTPUT(*PRINT)`.

Backup Plan Report (QP1ABP)

The Backup Plan report lists all control groups and the entries that make up each control group. Run the report by selecting Option 3 (Print backup plan) on the Backup Planning menu (BRMBKUPLN) or use the `DSPBKUBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT)` command.

Backup Policy Report (QP1ABX)

The Backup Policy report lists the attributes defined for the Backup Policy. Print the report by running the command `WRKPCYBRM TYPE(*BKU) OUTPUT(*PRINT)`. Also included in this report are the attributes defined for the following:

- Libraries to Omit from Backups

Backup Spooled File List Report (QP1ALQ)

Running the `WRKLBRM TYPE(*BKU) OUTPUT(*PRINT)` produces the Backup Spooled File List report. This report lists all the spooled files in any list of spooled files that you have set up. This report lists each list item, the sequence number, and the selection criteria.

Calendar Report (QP1ACA)

Run the `WRKCALBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT)` command to produce the Calendar report. Calendars are user-defined grouping of days. You can define the working days of a year for a company, the days of the week that media movement is allowed, or exception days such as a holiday where normal activity does not take place. The Calendar Report lists all calendars that you have set up in BRMS, any reference calendars that you are using and the dates that you have set up for the calendar.

Note: Calendar names can be up to 10 characters in length and adhere to iSeries naming conventions.

Centralized Media Audit Report (QP1ASYN)

The Centralized Media Audit report is produced when you process the `STRMNTBRM` command and the system is in a BRMS network (the Network Feature is installed and configured). The report is not produced when you are in a single system environment. You should understand why you find errors and what updates BRMS has made to correct them.

The report indicates both the from system and the to system that you are auditing. The report will indicate for each volume whether the volume was found on the network system and if so was either system updated with information from the other system.

The following should be noted about this report:

- Volumes that are found in error or that were updated are listed by volume. Volumes that had neither condition are not listed.
- *Total volumes checked* is the number of volumes across all systems in the BRMS network.
- *Volumes in error* is the number of volumes that the audit has found to be in error. Volume entries that are found to be different between systems can cause errors. An example of a difference is a volume that is shown to exist on one system but not on another.
- *Volumes updated* is the number of BRMS volumes which have been changed as a result of the audit. For instance, volume entries can have a different internal time stamp. These volumes will be changed with the most recent update that is applied to the older entries.

Note: If you cannot reconcile the information that is provided in the report, contact level 2 IBM support.

Container Report (QP1ACN)

Running the WRKCNRB RM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command or selecting option 6 from the BRMPRTINV menu produces the Container report. Select entries that are based on the following:

- Class
- Status
- Location

The following should be noted about this report:

- *OPEN indicates that the container status is open which allows you to add volumes to the container.
- *CLOSED indicates that the container is closed and no further volumes can be added.
- Expiration date indicates the oldest expiration date of any media volume in the container. A container can contain volumes that have the same expiration date or different expiration dates. The expiration date depends on the value in the *Different expiration date* parameter for the container class specified in Work with Container Classes display.
- Date indicates the expiration date in system date format.
- *NONE indicates that you did not assign an expiration date to the container.
- *PERM indicates that you assigned the container to a permanent retention.

Container Class Report (QP1ACT)

The Container Class report lists all container classes that are specified to BRMS. This report is produced as a result of running the command WRKCLSBRM TYPE(*CNR) OUTPUT(*PRINT). Choosing option 7 from the BRMPRTINV menu can also print the report.

The following should be noted about this report:

- *Allow mixed dates* field can contain either *NO or *YES. *NO specifies that the container can contain only media volumes that have the same expiration dates. The container expiration date is the same as the expiration date of the media volumes in the container. *YES indicates that a container in this class can contain media volumes that have different expiration dates. The container assumes the expiration date of the media volume that expires last among all the volumes in the container.
- The *Unpack* field indicates whether or not this container class is automatically unpacked when volumes in the container expire or expired volumes must be manually unpacked.

If a container is automatically unpacked when media expires in the container, the association between the expired media volume serial and the container is removed. You can use the media and assign the media to another container. Likewise, you can assign the container to other volumes.

If the volume is not automatically unpacked, the relationship between expired volumes and the container that the volumes are in is left intact in the media library. The volumes are still assigned to the container, even though the volumes are expired. They will remain assigned until you manually remove them from the container.

- *Capacity* is measured in the number of media volumes that this container class can hold.
- The *Media class* field indicates the name of the media class that can be stored in this container class. You can have from one to four media classes assigned to a container class.

Device Report (QP1ADV)

The Device report provides a basic list of all tape devices defined to BRMS. This report is produced as a result of running the WRKDEVBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command. Choose the interactive version of the command to view additional detail. The *Transfer rate per second* field shows the rate which the media device transfers data to and from the storage media. *DEVTYPE indicates that you use the default transfer rate of the selected device.

Library Backup Analysis Report (QP1ALA)

The Library Backup Analysis report shows an analysis of libraries that you have backed up as well as those that you did not back up. The size of the library and the number of objects is listed for each library. The reports are produced using the ANZLIBBRM command. However, you must have first run the RTVDSKINF command. The RTVDSKINF command create files that ANZLIBBRM uses to analyze your libraries. The RTVDSKINF command defaults to an analyzsis of the system (1) and basic user(2–32) auxiliary storage pools. You must specify the ASPDEV parameter to initiate an analysis of any available auxiliary storage pool devices. The ANZLIBBRM will generate report QP1ALA for the system and basic user auxiliary storage pools, and report QP1ALA0nnn for each available auxiliary storage pool device, where nnn is the auxiliary storage pool number.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The capacity and transfer rate values are determined from the *Media class* and *Device name* that are specified in the system policy.
- The *Estimated volumes* column represents an approximation of the number of volumes that are required to back up a specified library.
- The *Estimated minutes* column specifies an approximation of the number of minutes that are required to back up a specified library.
- The *Control group* column specifies the control group of which the library is a member.

Link Information Report (QP1ADI)

The Link Information report is produced using the WRKLNKBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command. This report summarizes all directories, objects, and object types that have been saved and have media content available in BRMS. The report starts at the highest level of the path and continues through each extension of the path.

The following should be noted about this report:

1. In this example the file system root directory "/" is the first information detailed on the report.
2. Information about each saved directory is included such as save list, date and time of save and so on. Obtain this information plus additional detail by using the Option 5 (Display) on the Work with Directory Information.

3. After the root directory information is reported, each extension of the pattern is reported. For instance, the path /QLANSrv follows the "/" root directory.

Location Analysis Report (QP1A2SL)

The Location Analysis report shows a list of all locations that are specified to BRMS, together with details of the current and maximum volumes and containers at each location. This report is produced as part of running the STRMNTBRM command.

Log Report (QP1ALG)

The BRMS Log report shows activities that are processed through BRMS commands. This report is produced as part of running the DSPLOGBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command. Additional parameters on the DSPLOGBRM command allow you to filter the type and number of entries returned in the report.

You can base your filters on the following:

Date Select to and from dates

Severity

Select lowest severity code for messages to be printed

Type *ALL selects all activities

*ARC selects only archive activities.

*BKU selects only backup activities.

*MED selects only media activities.

*MGR selects only migration activities.

*RCY selects only recovery activities.

*MAINT selects only maintenance activities.

*RTV selects only retrieve activities.

*SEC selects only security log activities

Media Report (QP1AMM)

The Media report by Volume Serial is the result of running the maintenance command (STRMNTBRM) or the WRKMEDBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) SORT (*VOL) command. Choosing options 1, 2, 3, or 4 from the BRMPRTINV menu can also produce the report, depending on selection criteria or sequence required.

The purpose of the report is to summarize status and location information for selected or all volumes in the media library.

The following should be noted about this report:

- You can create this report in volume, with creation or expiration date sequence by using the WRKMEDBRM command.
- The WRKMEDBRM command provides multiple parameters to select volumes to include in the report. The selection criteria for the report are listed first, including the creation and expiration date ranges.
- The *Volume list* field indicates whether all volumes in the inventory are included (*NO) or whether specific volumes requested in a list (*YES) are printed.

- Note that some volumes can have dates earlier than the current date but have not expired. This could be because you have not run the STRMNTBRM command recently, or the volume is part of volume set with a later expiration, or because these volumes cannot expire in a remote location.
- A summary shows the number of active, expired and the total number of volumes in the inventory.
- The *System ID* field shows the system which wrote the **first** file to the tape. **Do not use a tape for active files from more than one system.**

Media Class Report (QP1AMT)

The Media Class report shows basic information for each media class that is defined to BRMS. You produce the report by running the command WRKCLSBRM TYPE(*MED) OUTPUT(*PRINT) or by choosing option 5 from the BRMPRTINV menu. Choosing the interactive version of the command can display additional information.

The following should be noted about this report:

- *Label print* shows when labels will be printed. This can be:
 - *NONE - labels are not printed
 - *MOVE - labels are printed when the MOVMEDBRM command processes media volumes that belong to this media class.
 - *WRITE - labels are printed for any tape that belongs to this media class any time a write operation occurs.
- *Label size* indicates the size of the tape labels.

Media Expiration Report (QP1AEP)

Running the maintenance command (STRMNTBRM) or specifically expiring media (STREXPBRM command) produces the Media Expiration report. This report shows the media that has expired as a result of that particular run. This report also indicates the total number of volumes in the inventory which are expired.

Note: If the ACTFILCNT parameter is 0, and you specify *REPORT in the ACTION parameter, BRMS produces a report and expires media with 0 active files. If the ACTFILCNT parameter is greater than 0, only a report is produced.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The *System* field indicates the system name which wrote the first file to the tape.
- The *User* field indicates the user who owned the job that wrote the first file to the tape.
- The *Total expired count* field indicates the total number of volumes in the inventory which are expired.
- The *Use count* field indicates the number of times the volume has been used.

Media Information Report (QP1AHS)

The Media Information report shows a history of what has been backed up by BRMS. This report is printed as a result of processing the WRKMEDIBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command or as part of the STRMNTBRM maintenance job.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The *Expiration date* field indicates when the item will expire. For instance, an expiration date of 5/15/95 indicates that the save item will expire no sooner than 12:01 A.M. on 5/16/95.
- The *Objects saved* field indicates the total number of objects that are saved as a result of this save operation.
- The *Not saved* field indicates the number of objects that you were not able to save. You cannot save objects that are locked at the time the save operation takes place.
- The *Type save* field indicates the type of save that was specified for this save item. For instance:
 - *INCR indicates that the save was an incremental (save changed objects),
 - *CUMML indicates that the save was an incremental save (cumulative save changed objects),
 - *FULL indicates that the save was of the entire library,
 - *RCY indicates that BRMS was saved when processing a control group,
 - *ARC indicates that the media information was the result of an archive operation.

You can sequence the report using the following:

- Save Date
- Library Name
- Volume Serial Number

Media Library Report (QP1AMD)

The Media Library report lists the MLB devices that are defined to BRMS. This report is produced as a result of running the WRKMLBBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The *Library* field indicates the name of the MLB.
- The *Status* field indicates the status of the Media Library. *Released* indicates that the media library can be used in media operations. *Held* indicates that the media library device cannot be used in media operations.
- The *Location* field indicates the location of the MLB. There is a one to one correspondence between location and device name. You cannot assign another device the same location as the MLB.

Media Library Media Report (QP1A1MD)

The Media Library Media report lists the volumes that are resident in the MLB. Running the WRKMLMBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) produces this the report. You may choose to display all media in the MLB, only those volumes that are registered in BRMS or both.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The *Category* field indicates the category of the volume in the MLB.
- *SHARE400 indicates that an iSeries can only use the media.
- *NOSHARE indicates that the media has a value of *YES in the *Shared media* parameter in its associated media class.

- *INSERT indicates that the media is in the "insert" mode in the MLB. You must change the media to another category before you can use it in MLB operations.
- *EJECT indicates that the media is in the "eject" mode in the MLB.
- *IPL indicates that you can use the media for an alternate IPL.
- *NL indicates that you can use the media as a non-labeled tape.
- *CNV indicates that the media is convenience station media.
- *SYSGEN indicates that the media is *SYSTGEN media
- Category-name indicates that the media is in a user-defined category.

Media Merge Report (QP1AEN)

The Media Merge report lists the volumes that are merged together as a result of running the Copy Media Information using BRM (CPYMEDIBRM) command. All media entries that are not duplicates will be added to the network media inventory on the system that you are adding. You will receive messages when there are differences that need to be resolved.

Media Movement Report (QP1APVMS)

The PRTMOVBRM command produces the Media Movement report. The Media Movement report shows all volumes that are scheduled to move from one location to another location. The report page breaks for each from/to combination. The MOVMEDBRM command actually performs the media movement.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The *To slot* field indicates where the volume is placed at the "to location".
- A Move policy of *NONE implies that these volumes were moved manually. Use Option 8 (Move) on the Work with Media display to accomplish this.
- The *Container slot* field indicates where the container is placed in the "to location".
- A *From slot* field indicates where the volume was placed at the "from location".
- An *Expiration* date of *VERnnn indicates that this volume is using version control.

Check the Media Movement report for every movement of media or containers. You can use it as a control document when moving media by an outside agency.

Media Policy Report (QP1AME)

The Media Policy report lists all the media policies defined to BRMS and the associated attributes defined for each policy. Print the report by running the command WRKPCYBRM TYPE(*MED) OUTPUT(*PRINT).

Media Volume Statistics Report (QP1AVU)

The Media Volume Statistics report is produced when you run the command PRTMEDBRM TYPE(*STATISTICS). You can use it periodically to check the usage of your media and identify if any volumes are being used excessively when compared to others.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The "*" to the right of the *Expiration date* field indicates that the volume has expired.

- The *Uses* field shows the number of times to which a media volume has been read from or written. When the volume exceeds the Usage threshold value for media in its media class, you should take it out of service and replace it with a newer volume. You can review the Usage threshold value in the Work with Media Classes display.

The following fields are the sizes of the disk files that were written to or read from tape. You should use these as an approximation as they do not reflect any data compression or compaction that may have been performed.

- The *Bytes read* indicates the number of bytes that are read from the volume since its creation date.
- The *Bytes written* field indicates the number of bytes that are currently written on the media volume.
- The *Current bytes written* field indicates the number of bytes that are currently written on the media volume.
- The *Maximum bytes on volume* field indicates the maximum number of bytes that you have written to this tape.

Media Volume Threshold Report (QP1AVOL)

Use the PRTMEDBRM TYPE(*THRESHOLD) command to produce the Media Volume Threshold report. The Media Volume Threshold report compares actual volume threshold information against standard threshold information to alert you to any potential errors in your media. Each media class is evaluated separately with summary statistics at the end of each report. You have the option of printing only exceptions, or all volumes with exceptions.

The following should be noted about this report:

- Read, write and usage error thresholds are numbers that you should obtain from media manufacturers. The thresholds will vary widely between media classes.
- BRMS also keeps the last cleaning date (as specified to BRMS by option 12 on the Work with Media BRM display) and the number of uses since the volume was cleaned.
- The "*" to the right of the *Expiration date* field indicates that the volume has expired.
- The *Exception detail* field indicates the type of (if any) exception which has occurred. These are listed below the listed volumes for the media class. Possible values are:
 - *1 - No media class found for volume.
 - *2 - Media has exceeded use count.
 - *3 - Read error threshold has been exceeded.
 - *4 - Write error has been exceeded.
 - *5 - Volume has exceeded clean usage threshold.
 - *6 - Reorder point has been reached for this class.

Move Policy Report (QP1AMP)

The command WRKPCYBRM (*MOV) produces the Move Policy report. This report shows the move sequences and associated values for each move policy defined to BRMS.

Recovery Activities Report (QP1ARW)

The Recovery Activities report is printed as part of the maintenance run (STRMNTBRM) if you select *YES and the *RCYANL choice for the PRTRCYRPT parameter. The report can also be printed using the WRKRCYBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command. Activities may range from a full system recovery, including actions to take for implementing a full mobile recovery service, to those activities necessary to recover a failed application.

The following should be noted about this report:

- *Sequence* is a number between 1 and 999. This report is used to sequence the activities on the report, but need not be a unique number.
- *Activity* is a brief description of the recovery activity to perform.
- *Text* describes the activity. You should make this as meaningful as possible.
- These fields describe the people who may need to be contacted in order to perform the activity. You can display up to five contacts.
- *Recovery information* is a free format area of text to describe in detail the activity to be performed.

Recovery Analysis Report (QP1ARCY)

Use the Recovery Analysis report to restore all or parts of the software on your system. Run either the STRRCYBRM or STRMNTBRM commands to produce this report. The report is broken into multiple steps, with instructions and associated media volumes where applicable for each step. Chapter 4 of this book covers each of the areas in more detail.

Notes:

1. When doing an *SAVSYS, the number of objects will show as 0 since the licensed internal code is not comprised of OS/400 objects.
2. If recovering to a different system you should specify *ALL in the *Allow object differences* field and *NONE in the *System resource management* field.

Recovery Policy Report (QP1ARX)

The Recovery Policy report lists the attributes defined for the Recovery Policy. Print the report by running the command WRKPCYBRM TYPE(*RCY) OUTPUT(*PRINT).

Recovery Volume Summary Report (QP1A2RCY)

The Recovery Volume Summary report is produced as part of the maintenance (STRMNTBRM) activity or by running the STRRCYBRM command. The report provides a list of all tape volumes that are required to complete a full system recovery to the latest backup point. The report also lists all duplicate volumes for the volumes that are required for recovery. Use this report in conjunction with the Recovery Analysis report to locate all tapes or duplicate tapes that are required for recovery. Slot information is included (where used) to allow easy retrieval of the tapes.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The total number of volumes that are required for a complete system recovery is shown as a final summary.

Save Files Report (QP1ASF)

The BRM Save Files report lists all save files in the BRMS media content information. This report shows all libraries which have been saved to save files and have not yet had media content information deleted. The report is produced as a result of running the WRKSAVFBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The name of the *Save file* is based on a date/time stamp. These save files were created when BRMS performed save or archive activity with a media policy which specified to save to a save file. Save files created outside BRMS (CRTSAVF) are **not** listed.
- The last 2 digits of the *Save file library* name reflect the ASP in which the save file was created.

Save Strategy Exceptions Report (QP1ALE)

The Save Strategy Exceptions report lists libraries that have not been saved by a BRMS control group. You can run the Media Information report by using the WRKMEDIBRM SAVTYPE(*NONE) OUTPUT(*PRINT) command which scans the media information for libraries that have not been backed up. The library name, description of the library (if any), and the total number of libraries are listed in the Save Strategy Exceptions report.

If a control group exists which includes special values such as *ALLUSR, a new user library is still listed in this report if it has not previously been saved. Once it has been saved, it will not appear on the Saved Strategies Exceptions report.

You can also use the STRMNTBRM command and specify *ALL or *SAVEXCP for the PRTRCYRPT parameter to produce the Save Strategy Exceptions report.

Saved Folders Report (QP1AFD)

The Saved Folders report lists all folders and subfolders which have been saved by BRMS. The WRKFLRBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command produces this report. You can sequence the report in *Save date* or *Folder name* order.

You can select folders to appear in the report that is based on all the fields that are shown below in the report except *Volumes*.

Saved Objects Report (QP1AOD)

Running the WRKOBJBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command produces the Saved Objects report. This report lists all objects that are saved by BRMS with *Retain object detail* *YES, *OBJ, or *MBR. You can sequence the report by *Save date*, *Object name*, or *Library*.

Saved Spooled Files by Date Report (QP1AOQ)

Running the WRKSPLFBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT) command produces the Saved Spooled Files by Date report. This report lists all saved spooled files that are saved by BRMS. You can also sequence the report by *Job* or *File name*.

Storage Location Report (QP1ASL)

The Storage Location report is produced as a result of processing the WRKLOCBRM OUTPUT(*PRINT). The report displays all the storage locations that you have set up for your system and the current contents and maximums that you have set up.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The *Retrieval time in hours* field indicates how long it takes to move media from this location to the home location.
- The *Threshold number* fields for both containers and volumes indicate the current thresholds at this location. The threshold is the number of volumes or containers, that if equaled or exceeded, causes BRMS to issue a warning that the storage location's threshold is being approached.
- *Allow expire* indicates whether volumes are allowed to expire in this location. Volumes should always be allowed to expire at the home location.

System Policy Report (QP1ASP)

The System Policy report lists the attributes defined for the System Policy. Print the report by running the command WRKPCYBRM TYPE(*SYS) OUTPUT(*PRINT). Also included in this report are the attributes defined for the following:

- Signoff Exceptions
- Subsystems to Check before IPL
- Presentation Controls
- Notification Controls
- IPL Controls

Version Control Report (QP1AVER)

The Version Control report is produced as a result of processing the STRMNTBRM command. The report displays those volumes under version control for each control group.

The following should be noted about this report:

- The *Seq* field indicates the version of the save for the control group. The most recent is shown as 1.
- The *Retain* field indicates the number of versions that will be kept for the control group.
- The *Type* field indicates the type of data that was saved. Valid values are
 - *LSTF - full save of object list
 - *LSTI - incremental save of object list
 - *LSTC - cumulative incremental save of object list
 - *FULL - full save
 - *INCR - incremental save
 - *CUMML - cumulative incremental save
 - *QBRM - recovery data
 - *ARCH - archive data

Volume Movement Report (QP1AVMS)

Running the MOVMEDBRM command produces the Volume Movement report. The Volume Movement report shows all volumes that were moved or not moved from one location to another location. The report shows the current location, when the volume moved to the current location, the date and location of the next move, and the current move policy controlling the volume movement.

If there are errors that are associated with a volume, an error code will be associated with that volume. The possible error codes are:

1. Error *1 No move policy or no move rules were found. Volume will move to default home location.
2. Error *2 Unable to assign a container for indicated volume.
3. Error *3 Location reached maximum number of volumes. Move operation bypassed.
4. Error *4 Location reached maximum number of containers. Move operation bypassed.
5. Error *5 Volume movement for this move policy was prevented by move calendar schedule.
6. Error *6 Reference calendar refers to a calendar previously defined.
7. Error *7 Volume marked for duplication.

Appendix B. Programs and APIs

The following programs and APIs are provided for the user who wants to perform various utility functions while using BRMS. Each program and API are described in general and followed by detailed field descriptions and sizes.

Tape Information Exit Program

Parameters:

Required Parameter Group:

1	Operational information	Input	Char(*)
---	----------------------------	-------	---------

Exit Point Name: QIBM_A1A_TAPE_INF

Exit Point Format Name: MEDI0100

The exit program is called each time that a file is written to a tape. The exit program must be registered to the exit point described above. For example, if a SAVLIB command saved 10 libraries to a tape, the exit would be called 10 times, passing information about each tape file resulting from the save of the libraries. To use this exit point, the customer must develop an exit program and register it to the exit point name and exit point format name shown above. After registration, BRMS will call the program and pass the information described by the parameters.

Required Parameter Group

Operation information

INPUT; Char(*)

Information about the tape operation at the time the exit program is called.

Format of Operational Information

The following table shows the format of the operational information. For a description of each field, see "Field Descriptions" on page 272.

Offset		Type	Field
Dec	Hex		
0	0	Binary(4)	Length of operational information
4	4	Char(1)	Volume operation
5	5	Char(17)	Volume label
22	16	Char(10)	Device name
32	20	Char(4)	Device type
36	24	Char(80)	Volume VOL1 label
116	74	Char(80)	Volume HDR1 label
196	C4	Char(80)	Volume HDR2 label
276	114	Char(24)	Reserved

Tape Information Exit Program

Note: Volume header and end of volume formats can be found in the IBM standard tape labels documentation. The exit point is used when access to a tape begins.

Field Descriptions

Device name. The name of the device on which the volume is loaded.

Device type. The type of tape device.

Length of operational information. The length of the data in the structure.

Volume HDR1. The header from the standard label.

Volume HDR2. The second header from the standard label volume.

Volume label. The volume label identifier of the volume.

Volume operation. The type of operation being performed on the volume. The values are:

O Output

An output operation is performed on the volume.

I Input

An input operation is performed on the volume.

Volume VOL1. The standard tape label volume information.

Tape Movement Exit Program

Parameters:

Required Parameter Group:

1	Operational information	Input	Char(*)
---	----------------------------	-------	---------

Exit Point Name: QIBM_A1A_TAPE_MOVE

Exit Point Format Name: MEDM0100

The exit program is called each time a BRMS registered volume is moved. It will supply the location the volume is moving to and the previous location where the volume came from. To use this exit point the customer will have to develop an exit program and register it to the exit point name and exit point format name listed above. After registration, BRMS will call the program and pass the information described by the parameters.

Required Parameter Group

Operation information

INPUT; Char(*)

Information about the tape movement operation at the time the exit program is called.

Format of Operational Information

The following table shows the format of the operational information. For a description of each field, see “Field Descriptions” on page 273.

Offset		Type	Field
Dec	Hex		
0	0	Binary(4)	Length of operational information
4	4	Char(6)	Volume ID
10	0A	Char(8)	Expiration date
18	12	Char(1)	Expired indicator
19	13	Char(10)	Current location
29	1D	Char(6)	To slot
35	23	Char(10)	Previous location
45	29	Char(6)	From slot
51	33	Char(10)	Volume next location
61	3D	Char(8)	Move date/time
69	45	Char(10)	Media class
79	4F	Char(10)	Container ID
89	59	Char(10)	Move policy
99	63	Char(1)	Move verification pending

Field Descriptions

Container ID. The identifier of the container if you are using containers to move media. A special value *NONE is returned if you are not using containers.

Expiration date. The date that the volume expires. The format of the date that is returned is job date format. The values are:

*NONE

There is no expiration date. The volume is expired.

*VER EXP

The volume is under version control and has expired.

*VER nnn

The volume is under version control.

*PERM

The volume has a permanent retention date.

From slot. The slot from which the volume came.

Length of operational information. The length of the data in the structure.

Media class. The media class of the volume that is being moved. A special value *NONE is returned if a media class is not found.

Move policy. The move policy associated with the volume that you are moving. A special value *NONE is returned if you are not using a move policy.

Move verification pending. Indicates whether BRMS marked the volume for movement and based on the move policy specified above, whether the move must be verified before it can actually occur. The values are:

0 Verification not in effect

Verification of moves is not in effect and the volume has been moved when this exit point is reached. The current location is the location to which the volume was moved.

1 Verification in effect

Tape Movement Exit Program

The volume has not moved yet, verification of moves is in effect and the location shows the current location of the volume. The next location shows where BRMS intends to move the volume.

Move date/time. The date that the volume is to move. The format of the date that is returned is job date format. The values are:

*NONE

There is no move date. The volume does not move.

*VER EXP

The volume is under version control and has expired.

*VER nnn

The volume is under version control.

To slot. The slot in the location to which the volume is being moved.

Volume ID. The volume ID of the volume that is being moved.

Current location. The location to which the volume is moving. A special value *NONE is returned if the volume does not have a current location.

Previous location. The location from which the volume is being moved. A special value *NONE is returned if the volume does not have a previous location.

Volume next location. The location to which the volume will be moved after this move. A special value *NONE is returned if the volume does not have a next location.

BRMS Object Retrieval Exit Program

Parameters:

Required Parameter Group:

1	Object description information	Input	Char(*)
2	Media information	Input	Char(*)
3	Control value information	Output	Char(*)

Exit Point Name: QIBM_A1A_RETR_INF

Exit Point Format Name: RTVIO100

The BRMS Object Retrieval Exit Program provides the capability of retrieving objects saved using *FREE by BRMS. The exit program, if registered to the exit point, will only be called when the retrieve confirmation within BRMS is *VERIFY.

The user exit program is called each time a suspended object is accessed by an OS/400 operation and BRMS has determined that an archive version of the object is to be restored to the system to satisfy the OS/400 request. This exit will give the user exit program a chance to influence the decision to restore the object as well as provide a custom interface tailored to individual needs.

When the user exit program is given control, it makes the decision as to what continued action should be taken for the suspended object. The exit program returns the appropriate control value information to BRMS indicating either to

follow the normal retrieval rules defined to BRMS, to recall immediately, to delay restore to a later time, to submit the restore to batch, or to cancel the restore of the object.

Required Parameter Group

Object description information

INPUT; Char(*)

Information about the object that BRMS intends to restore from storage extension. For details, see “Format of Object Description Information”.

Media information

INPUT; Char(*)

Information about the media or media set needed to restore the object. Media information may include either tape volume information or save file information. For details, see “Format of Media Information” on page 276.

Control value information

OUTPUT; Char(*)

Information about the exit program request of action to be taken by BRMS. For details, see “Format of Control Value Information” on page 277.

Format of Object Description Information

The following table shows the format of the object description information. For a description of each field, see “Field Descriptions” on page 276.

Offset				
Dec	Hex	Type	Field	
0	0	Bin(4)	Length of object description information	
4	4	Bin(4)	Length of media information	
8	8	Bin(4)	Length of control value information	
12	0C	Char(10)	Object name	
22	16	Char(10)	Object library	
32	20	Char(10)	Member name	
42	2A	Char(10)	Object owner	
52	34	Char(7)	Saved date	
59	3B	Char(6)	Saved time	
65	41	Char(6)	Saved release	
71	47	Char(10)	Media class	
81	51	Char(4)	File sequence	
85	55	Bin(4)	Member size	
89	59	Bin(4)	Member size multiplier	
93	5D	Char(2)	Auxiliary storage pool	
95	5F	Char(50)	Member text	

BRMS Object Retrieval Exit Program

Field Descriptions

Length of object description information. The length, in bytes, of the object description information.

Length of media information. The length, in bytes, of the media information.

Length of control value information. The length, in bytes, of the control value information.

Object name. The name of the object.

Object library. The name of the library that contained the object.

Member name. The name of the member associated with the object.

File sequence. The tape file sequence number assigned when the object was saved on a tape. The field contains zeros if the object was saved to a save file.

Object owner. The owner of that the object that you are retrieving.

Saved date. The date that the object was saved expressed in cyymmdd (century, year, month, day) format.

Saved time. The time that the object was saved expressed in hhmm (hour, minute) format.

Saved release. The release of OS/400 under which the object was saved.

Media class. The media class of the volume that contains the saved objects.

File sequence. The tape file sequence number assigned when the object was saved on a tape. The field contains zeros if the object was saved to a save file.

Member size. The size of the member in units of size multiplier. The member size is equal to or smaller than the member size multiplied by the number size multiplier.

Member size multiplier. The value to multiply the member size by to get the true size. The value is 1 if the member is smaller than 1 000 000 000, and 1024 if it is larger.

Auxiliary storage pool (ASP). The auxiliary storage pool ID.

Member text. Text that describes the object to be recalled.

Format of Media Information

The following table shows the format of the media information. For a description of each field, see “Field Descriptions”.

Offset				
Dec	Hex		Type	Field
0		0	Bin(4)	Number of volumes
4		-	Char(6)	Volume ID
14		-	Char(10)	Volume location
24		-	Char(6)	Volume retrieval time

Note: The Volume ID, Volume location and Volume retrieval time fields in the previous table are repeated based on the number specified in the Number of volumes field.

Field Descriptions

Number of volumes. The number of volumes required for the object retrieval.

Volume ID. The volume ID or IDs of the volumes required for the object retrieval.

BRMS Object Retrieval Exit Program

Volume location. The location or locations of the volumes required for the object retrieval.

Volume retrieval time. The length of time in hours to return the volume from an off site storage location to the home location. Volume retrieval time is expressed in hhhmmm (hours, minutes) format.

Format of Control Value Information

The following table shows the format of the control value information. For a description of each field, see "Field Descriptions".

Offset		Type	Field
Dec	Hex		
0	0	Char(1)	Return information

Field Descriptions

Return information. The return information for the object that is to be recalled. The values are:

- | | | |
|---|---------|--|
| 0 | *VERIFY | Process the recall as if the exit program were not called. |
| 1 | *NOTIFY | Process the recall immediately and notify the user about the recall. |
| 2 | *DELAY | Mark the object/member to be restored later. |
| 3 | *SBMJOB | Submit the restore to batch. |
| 4 | *NONE | Do not recall the object. |

BRMS Retrieve Media Information (Q1ARTVMED) API

Parameters:

Required Parameter Group:

1	Receiver variable	Output	Char(*)
2	Length of receiver	Input	Binary(4)
3	Format name	Input	Char(8)
4	Control value information	Input	Char(26)
5	Error code	I/O	Char(*)

The BRMS retrieve media information API lets you retrieve BRMS media information for a specific volume or select an expired volume.

Required Parameter Group

Receiver variable
OUTPUT; Char(*)

Retrieve Media Information API

The receiver variable that is to receive the information requested. You can specify the size of the area to be smaller than the format requested as long as you specify the length of the receiver variable correctly. As a result the API returns only the data the area can hold.

Length of receiver variable

INPUT; Binary(4)

The length of the receiver variable. This length must be at least 6 bytes. If this value is larger than the actual receiver variable, unpredictable results may occur.

Format name

INPUT; Char(8)

MEDV0100 is the only format name available.

Control value information

INPUT; Char(*)

Information needed by the API to select a media volume is supplied in this structure. For more information see "Format of Control Value Information" section.

Error code

INPUT/OUTPUT; Char(*)

The structure in which to return error information. For the format of the structure, see "Error Code Parameter" in the System Programmers Interface Reference.

Format of the Generated Information

The following table shows the format of the MEDV0100. The MEDV0100 format includes the information about the requested media volume. For a description of each field, see "Field Descriptions" on page 279.

Offset				
Dec	Hex	Type	Field	
0	0	Char(6)	Volume serial	
6	06	Char(4)	Secure volume	
10	0A	Char(10)	Media group type	
20	14	Char(13)	Media group identification	
33	21	Char(10)	Media class	
43	2B	Char(10)	Location	
53	35	Char(7)	Move date	
60	3C	Char(10)	Move policy	
70	46	Char(7)	Expiration date	
77	4D	Char(1)	Volume expired indicator	
78	4E	Char(7)	Creation date	
85	55	Char(4)	Volume sequence	
89	59	Char(6)	Beginning volume	
95	5F	Char(50)	Volume description	
145	91	Char(8)	Registered system	
153	99	Char(8)	System using volume	
161	A1	Char(10)	Job name	
171	AB	Char(6)	Job number	
177	B1	Char(10)	User	

Dec	Offset		Type	Field
	Hex			
187		BB	Char(10)	Next location
197		C5	Char(7)	Next move date
204		CC	Char(10)	Container ID
214		D6	Char(6)	Slot number
220		DC	Char(10)	Previous location
230		E6	Char(1)	Move verification pending

Field Descriptions

Beginning volume. The first volume of a multi-volume set.

Container ID. The container ID of the container in which the volume is stored, if you are using containers.

Creation date. The date that the most current data was written on the media.

Expiration date. The date that the media expires and can be used as scratch media.

Job name. The name of the job that created the media.

Job number. The number of the job that created the media.

Location. The location where the media is currently stored.

Media group type. A grouping factor assigned by BRMS to handle *GRPnnn moves.

Media group identification. A sub-grouping to bundle like volumes in the same group.

Media class. The media class assigned to the volume.

Move date. The date that the media is scheduled to move.

Move verification pending. Indicates whether BRMS marked the volume for movement and based on the move policy specified below, whether the move must be verified before it can actually occur. The values are:

0 Verification not in effect

Verification of moves is not in effect and the volume has been moved when this exit point is reached. The current location is the location to which the volume was moved.

1 Verification in effect

The volume has not moved yet, verification of moves is in effect and the location shows the current location of the volume. The next location shows where BRMS intends to move the volume.

Move policy. The name of the move policy associated with the volume.

Next location. The next location to which the media will move.

Next move date. The date on which the media is scheduled to move next.

Previous location. The location the media moved from to arrive at its current location.

Registered system. The system whose License Manager was used to register the media.

Secure volume. Whether the media requires special authority for read access.

Slot number. The slot number assigned to the media.

System using volume. The system name of the system that last wrote data on the tape.

User. The identification of the user who is assigned to the volume.

Retrieve Media Information API

Volume expired indicator. Indicates whether or not the volume is expired. The values are:

- Y** Expired
 The volume is expired.
- N** Active
 The volume is active.

Volume serial. The volume serial of the media.

Volume sequence. The sequence number of the volume in a media set.

Volume description. A text description of the volume.

Format of Control Value Information

The following table shows the format of the control value information. For a description of each field, see "Field Descriptions".

Offset				
Dec	Hex	Type	Field	
0	0	Char(6)	Volume serial	
6	06	Char(10)	Media class	
16	10	Char(10)	Location	
26	1A	Char(7)	Expiration date	

Field Descriptions

Volume serial. The volume serial ID for the media volume to be retrieved. The values are:

- ID** volume-serial-ID
 A six character media volume serial.
- *EXP** Expired
 A special value used to request that a scratch volume be located.
- *ACT** Active
 A special value used to request that an active volume with space available for write operations be located.

Media class. A media class name that will be used to locate the media volume. This field must be specified if special values ***EXP** or ***ACT** are specified for the *Volume serial* field. The possible values are:

- *ANY**
 Specifies the retrieved volume can be assigned to any media class.
- media-class
 Specifies the retrieved volume must be assigned to this media class.

Location. A location name that will be used to locate the media volume. This field must be specified if special values ***EXP** or ***ACT** are specified for the *Volume serial* field. The possible values are:

- *ANY**
 Specifies the retrieved volume can be assigned to any location.
- location-name
 Specifies the retrieved volume must be assigned to this location.

Expiration date. The expiration date that will be used to locate an active media volume. This field must be specified if special value ***ACT** is specified for the *Volume serial* field. The possible values are:

*ANY

Specifies any active volume can be retrieved that meets the media class and location control values.

expiration-date

Specifies any active volume can be retrieved that meets the media class and location control values and has an assigned expiration date that is equal to or later than this date.

Error Messages

- BRM1147 E Volume not found.
- BRM1480 E No media of class &1; available.
- CPF24B4 E Severe error while addressing parameter list.
- CPF3CF1 E Error code parameter not valid.
- CPF3C19 E Error occurred with receiver variable specified.
- CPF3C21 E Format name &1; is not valid.
- CPF3C24 E Length of receiver variable is not valid.

BRMS Select Device (Q1ASLTDEV) API

Parameters:

Required Parameter Group:

1	Receiver variable	Output	Char(*)
2	Length of receiver variable	Input	Binary(4)
3	Format name	Input	Char(8)
4	Control value information	Input	Char(47)
5	Error code	I/O	Char(*)

The BRMS select device API lets you select a device to allocate or deallocate, or to select search values such as location and media class to locate and allocate an available device for BRMS media input or output operations.

Required Parameter Group

Receiver variable

OUTPUT; Char(*)

The receiver variable that is to receive the information requested. You can specify the size of the area to be smaller than the format requested as long as you specify the length of the receiver variable correctly. As a result the API returns only the data the area can hold.

Length of receiver variable

INPUT; BINARY(4)

The length of the receiver variable. The length must be at least 6 bytes. If this value is larger than the actual receiver variable, unpredictable results may occur.

Format name

INPUT; Char(8)

DEV00100 is the only format name available.

BRMS Select Device (Q1ASLTDEV) API

Control value information

INPUT; Char(*)

Information needed by the API to select a device is supplied in this structure. For more information see "Format of Control Value Information" section.

Error code

INPUT/OUTPUT; Char(*)

The structure in which to return error information. For the format of the structure, see "Error Code Parameter" in the System Programmers Interface Reference.

Format of Generated Information

The following table shows the format of the generated information. The DEV00100 format includes the information about the requested media volume. For a description of each field, see "Field Descriptions".

Offset				
Dec	Hex	Type	Field	
0	0	Char(10)	Device name	
10	0A	Char(10)	Location	
20	14	Char(10)	Media class	

Field Descriptions

Device name. The name of the selected device.

Location. The location of the selected device.

Media class. The name of the media class used to select the device that supports the required density.

Format of Control Value Information

The following table shows the format of the control value information. For a description of each field, see "Field Descriptions".

Offset				
Dec	Hex	Type	Field	
0	0	Char(10)	Device name	
10	0A	Char(10)	Media class	
20	14	Char(10)	Location	
30	1E	Char(10)	Device action	
40	28	Char(7)	Operation	

Field Descriptions

Device name. The name of a valid tape device. A special value of *MEDCLS will instruct the API to locate an available tape device from the BRMS device information.

Location. A location name that will be used to locate an expired media volume. This value is needed only when a device special value of *MEDCLS is specified. The values are:

*ANY

Any location can be used to locate an expired volume.

location-name

BRMS Select Device (Q1ASLTDEV) API

Specify the name of the location used to locate an expired volume.

Media class. A media class name that will be used to locate an expired media volume. This value is needed only when a device special value of *MEDCLS is specified.

Device action. Specifies the device action that you want to used for the device. The values are:

*ALCDEV

The device is allocated.

*DLCDEV

The device is not allocated. This choice is not valid for device *MEDCLS.

Note: BRMS shared device support is implied in device selection since *ALCDEV will vary on a shared device and *DLCDEV will vary it off.

Operation. Specifies the type of device operation. Since input and output densities for a particular device may be different, the type of device operation will be used to ensure that the device selected for the specified media class is compatible with the operation being requested. The values are:

*INPUT

The operation is an input operation.

*OUTPUT

The operation is an output operation.

Error Messages

BRM1877 E Devices with density &3; are not available

BRM1883 E Devices with density &3; are not available

CPF1002 E Cannot allocate device

CPF24B4 E Severe error while addressing parameter list.

CPF3CF1 E Error code parameter not valid.

CPF3C19 E Error occurred with receiver variable specified.

CPF3C21 E Format name &1; is not valid.

CPF3C24 E Length of receiver variable is not valid.

BRMS Select Device (Q1ASLTDEV) API

Index

Special Characters

/QLANSrv

- restoring IFS objects to 143
- *BKUGRP control group 15, 95
 - backing up with 19
- *EXIT special value 111
- *LNKLIST 143
- *SAVSYS special value
 - using 92
- *SYSGRP control group 15, 94
 - backing up with 18
- *SYSTEM control group 15, 94
 - backing up with 18
- *USRMLB 50

A

- access paths 88
- Add Media Information Using BRMS (ADDMEDIBRM) command 57
- Add Media Library Media to BRMS (ADDMLMBRM) command 59
- Add Media to BRMS (ADDMEDBRM) command 17, 59
- adding
 - devices 45
 - automatically 45
 - manually 46
 - media contents to the history file
 - from an enrolled volume 57
- ADDLICENSE (Add License Key Information) command 13
- ADDMEDBRM (Add Media to BRMS) command 17, 59
- ADDMEDIBRM (Add Media Information Using BRMS) command 57
- ADDMLMBRM 56
- ADDMLMBRM (Add Media Library Media to BRMS) command 59
- advanced functions feature
 - hierarchical storage management (HSM) 3
 - HSM (hierarchical storage management) 3
 - removing 13
 - uninstalling 13
- and policies 6
- APIs
 - See application program interfaces (APIs)
- appending to media 89
- application program interfaces (APIs) 191
 - BRMS Object Retrieval Exit Program 274
 - BRMS Select Device (Q1ASLTDEV) 281
 - Retrieve Media Information 277
 - Tape Information Exit Program 271
 - Tape Movement Exit Program 272

- Apply Journal Changes (APYJRNCHG) command 38
- applying
 - program temporary fixes (PTFs) 39
 - PTFs (program temporary fixes) 39
- applying journal changes 38
- APYJRNCHG (Apply Journal Changes) command 38
- archiving 238
- ASP Information Report 257
- authorities
 - *SAVSYS special authority 93
- authorization information, recovering 39
- auto enroll media 47
- automated tape library
 - See media libraries
- auxiliary storage pool devices 227
 - Backup 227
 - Recovery 231
- auxiliary storage pools
 - security 182

B

- backing up
 - access paths 88
 - control groups 112
 - entire system 15
 - full system
 - with the *SYSTEM control group 18
 - journalized objects 88
 - libraries 100
 - Lotus servers 217, 223
 - media information 88
 - object level detail 88
 - resuming 113
 - retaining object level detail 88
 - spooled files 37
 - system data
 - with the *SYSGRP control group 18
 - user data
 - with the *BKUGRP control group 19
 - with the *SYSGRP control group 18
 - with the *SYSTEM control group 18
 - with the *BKUGRP control group 19
- backup
 - restrictions for *SAVSYS 92
- Backup Folder List Report 257
- backup history
 - adding media contents to
 - from an enrolled volume 57
- Backup Link List Report 257
- backup lists
 - creating
 - folder 105
 - link 109
 - object 106
 - spooled file 107
- backup lists (*continued*)
 - definition 104
 - folder lists 105
 - link lists 109
 - object lists 106
 - QALLSPLF spooled file list 108
 - security 180
 - spooled file lists 107
 - types 104
- Backup Object List Report 257
- Backup Plan Report 257
- backup policy
 - changing 86
 - definition 5
 - key parameters 86
- Backup Policy Report 258
- Backup Recovery and Media Services (BRMS) 4
- backup scenarios 122
 - performing a backup across a network
 - with shared devices 129
 - using multiple control groups in a serial backup 123
 - using multiple control groups in parallel and concurrent backups 126
- Backup Spooled File List Report 258
- Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS)
 - advanced functions feature 3
 - removing 13
 - uninstalling 13
 - changing presentation controls 86
 - customizing the look 86
 - functional usage model 179
 - hardware requirements 11
 - installation instructions 12
 - introduction 3
 - libraries
 - QGPL 31
 - QSYS2 31
 - QUSRBRM 23
 - QUSRSYS 23, 31
 - recovering 27, 31
 - migrating from previous release to current release 210
 - network feature 3
 - overview 3
 - recovering 27
 - removing from your system 13
 - security 179
 - software requirements 11
 - standard product 3
 - backup function 4
 - media management function 4
 - overview 4
 - recovery function 4
 - tape I/O from a program 241
 - uninstalling 13
 - updating license information 13
 - using in a network 199

- backups
 - Auxiliary storage pool devices 227
 - concurrent 120
 - when to use 121
 - customizing 83
 - default weekly activity 87
 - ending subsystems
 - with *SAVSYS 93
 - entire system 15
 - full
 - retention 63
 - full system 15, 18
 - incremental
 - retention 63
 - specifying type 87
 - types 63
 - Lotus server online 217
 - Lotus server online incremental 223
 - media information 81
 - parallel 121
 - multiple-library parallel 121
 - parallel save/restore 121
 - restrictions 121
 - setting up 121
 - when to use 121
 - performing 18
 - planning 83
 - resuming 113
 - retention
 - full backups 63
 - incremental backups 63
 - scenarios 122
 - performing a backup across a
 - network with shared devices 129
 - using multiple control groups in a
 - serial backup 123
 - using multiple control groups in
 - parallel and concurrent backups 126
 - scheduling 93, 119, 169
 - serial 120
 - special considerations for
 - *SAVSYS 92
 - starting subsystems
 - with *SAVSYS 93
 - strategy 83
 - system data
 - with the *SYSGRP control
 - group 18
 - tailoring 83
 - types of 63
 - unattended 118
 - user data
 - with the *BKUGRP control
 - group 19
 - User-defined file systems 84, 227
- block size 47
- BRMS 4
 - See Backup, Recovery, and Media Services (BRMS)
- BRMS Application Client for TSM
 - See Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM)

C

Calendar Report 258

- calendars, move management
 - defining exceptions 74
 - establishing 73
 - exceptions 74
 - for move days 74
 - for working days 73
 - names 74
 - reference calendar 74
 - specifying dates 74
- Centralized Media Audit Report 258
- Change Job Scheduler (CHGSCDBRM)
 - command 173
- change system values 25
- changing
 - control group attributes 99
 - control groups 98
 - device configuration 48
 - device information 46
 - auto enroll media 47
 - configuration 48
 - density 48
 - media libraries 48
 - name 48
 - optimum block size 47
 - shared device 47
 - standalone devices 46
 - device name 48
 - job scheduler 173
 - substitution variables 174
 - optimum block size 47
 - QSECOFR password 31
 - system name 209
- CHGSCDBRM (Change Job Scheduler)
 - command 173
- Commands 11
 - Add License Key Information (ADDLICENSE) 13
 - Add Media Information Using BRMS (ADDMEDIBRM) 57
 - Add Media Library Media to BRMS (ADDMLMBRM) 59
 - Add Media to BRMS (ADDMEDBRM) 59
 - Add Media to BRMS (ADDMEDBRM)
 - command 17
 - ADDLICENSE (Add License Key Information) 13
 - ADDMEDBRM (Add Media to BRMS) 17, 59
 - ADDMEDIBRM (Add Media Information Using BRMS) 57
 - ADDMLMBRM 56
 - ADDMLMBRM (Add Media Library Media to BRMS) 59
 - Apply Journal Changes (APYJRNCHG) 38
 - APYJRNCHG (Apply Journal Changes) 38
 - Change Job Scheduler (CHGSCDBRM) 173
 - CHGSCDBRM (Change Job Scheduler) 173
 - CPYMEDIBRM 206
 - Display Job Log (DSPJOBLOG) 19, 40
 - DSPJOBLOG (Display Job Log) 12, 19, 40

Commands (continued)

- DSPSYSVAL (Display System Values) 12
- Duplicate Media using BRMS (DUPMEDBRM) 79
- DUPMEDBRM (Duplicate Media using BRMS) 79
- End Subsystems (ENDSBS) 19
- ENDSBS (End Subsystems) 19
- EXTMEDIBRM (Extract Media Information Using BRMS) 57
- Extract Media Information Using BRMS (EXTMEDIBRM) 57
- Initialize BRMS (INZBRM) 11, 30
- Initialize Media Using BRMS (INZMEDBRM) 58
- Initialize Media Using BRMS (INZMEDBRM) 59
- INZBRM (Initialize BRMS) 11, 30
- INZMEDBRM (Initialize Media Using BRMS) 58, 59
- Monitor Save While Active for BRMS (MONSWABRM) 115
- MONSWABRM (Monitor Save While Active for BRMS) 115
- Move Media Using BRMS (MOVMEDBRM) 68, 74
- MOVMEDBRM (Move Media Using BRMS) 68, 74
- Restore Authority using BRMS (RSTAUTBRM) 160
- Restore Authority Using BRMS (RSTAUTBRM) 39
- Restore DLO using BRMS (RSTDLOBRM) 160
- Restore Library using BRMS (RSTLIBBRM) 160
- Restore Object using BRMS (RSTBRM) 160
- Restore Object using BRMS (RSTOBJBRM) 160
- RSTAUTBRM (Restore Authority using BRMS) 160
- RSTAUTBRM (Restore Authority Using BRMS) 39
- RSTBRM (Restore Object using BRMS) 160
- RSTDLOBRM (Restore DLO using BRMS) 160
- RSTLIBBRM (Restore Library using BRMS) 160
- RSTOBJBRM (Restore Object using BRMS) 160
- SAVBRM (Save BRMS) 131
- SAVDLOBRM (Save DLO using BRMS) 131
- SAVDOMBRM 221
- Save BRMS (SAVBRM) 131
- Save DLO using BRMS (SAVDLOBRM) 131
- Save Folder List using BRMS (SAVFLRLBRM) 131
- Save Library using BRMS (SAVLBRM) 131
- Save Media Information using BRMS (SAVMEDIBRM) 131

Commands (continued)

- Save Object List using BRMS (SAVOBJLBRM) 131
- Save Object using BRMS (SAVOBJBRM) 131
- Save Save File with BRMS (SAVSAVFBRM) command 101
- Save Save Files using BRMS (SAVSAVFBRM) 131
- Save System using BRMS (SAVSYSBRM) 132
- SAVFLRLBRM (Save Folder List using BRMS) 131
- SAVLIBBRM (Save Library using BRMS) 131
- SAVLQPB RM 221
- SAVMEDIBRM (Save Media Information using BRMS) 131
- SAVOBJBRM (Save Object using BRMS) 131
- SAVOBJLBRM (Save Object List using BRMS) 131
- SAVSAVFBRM (Save Save File with BRMS) command 101
- SAVSAVFBRM (Save Save Files using BRMS) 131
- SAVSYSBRM (Save System using BRMS) 132
- scheduling backups of BRMS save commands 171
- Set User Usage for BRMS (SETUSRBRM) 179
- SETUSRBRM (Set User Usage for BRMS) 179
- Start Backup using BRMS (STRBKUBRM) 19
- Start Backup Using BRMS (STRBKUBRM) 18, 19
- Start Maintenance for BRMS (STRMNTBRM) 75, 163
- Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM) 135
- Start Recovery using BRMS (STRRCYBRM) 22, 23
- Start Recovery Using BRMS (STRRCYBRM) 20
- STRBKUBRM (Start Backup using BRMS) 19
- STRBKUBRM (Start Backup Using BRMS) 18, 19
- STRMNTBRM (Start Maintenance for BRMS) 75, 163
- STRRCYBRM (Start Recovery using BRM) 135
- STRRCYBRM (Start Recovery using BRMS) 22, 23
- STRRCYBRM (Start Recovery Using BRMS) 20
- Work with Configuration Status (WRKCFGSTS) 45
- Work with Containers Using BRMS (WRKCNRBRM) 67
- Work with Devices using BRMS (WRKDEVBRM) 30, 33
- Work with License Information (WRKLICINF) 13

Commands (continued)

- Work with Link Information (WRKLNKBRM) 145
- Work with Media Information Using BRMS (WRKMEDIBRM) 57
- Work with Media Libraries Using BRMS (WRKMLB RM) 49
- Work with Media Library Status (WRKMLBSTS) 26, 49
- Work with Media using BRMS (WRKMEDBRM) 17
- Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLF) 20
- Work with Spooled Files Using BRMS (WRKSPLFBRM) 36
- Work with Storage Locations Using BRMS (WRKLOCBRM) 65
- Work with Subsystems (WRKSBS) 19
- Work with System Values (WRKSYSVAL) 12
- WRKCFGSTS (Work with Configuration Status) 45
- WRKCLSBRM 55
- WRKCNRBRM (Work with Containers Using BRMS) 67
- WRKDEVBRM (Work with Devices using BRMS) 30, 33
- WRKLICINF (Work with License Information) 13
- WRKLNKBRM (Work with Link Information) 145
- WRKLOCBRM (Work with Storage Locations Using BRMS) 65
- WRKMEDBRM (Work with Media using BRMS) 17
- WRKMEDIBRM (Work with Media Information Using BRMS) 57
- WRKMLB RM (Work with Media Libraries Using BRMS) 49
- WRKMLBSTS (Work with Media Library Status) 26, 49
- WRKSBS (Work with Subsystems) 19
- WRKSPLF (Work with Spooled Files) 20
- WRKSPLFBRM (Work with Spooled Files Using BRMS) 36
- WRKSYSVAL (Work with System Values) 12
- communications in a BRMS network 202
- concurrent backups 120
- when to use 121
- concurrent recoveries 153
- configuration data recovering 32
- console monitor 94, 118
- canceling 120
- interrupting 120
- messages 120
- monitoring 120
- securing 185
- starting 119
- Container Class Report 259
- container classes 66
- creating 67
- Work with Container Classes display 67

Container Report 259

- containers
 - adding 67
 - changing 67
 - classes 66
 - creating 67
 - managing 68
 - move policies 68
 - moving 67, 68
 - removing 67
 - tracking in BRMS 68
 - unpacking 67
- control groups
 - *BKUGRP 15, 95
 - *SYSGRP 15, 94
 - *SYSTEM 15, 94
 - additional options for processing 113
 - advantages 89
 - backing up 112
 - backups using 15
 - changing 96, 98
 - changing attributes of 99
 - contents 89, 90
 - contents of default control groups 94
 - copying between networked systems 213
 - copying Lotus server 222
 - creating 96
 - creating backup lists in 104
 - default 15, 90
 - *BKUGRP 95
 - *SYSGRP 94
 - *SYSTEM 94
 - contents of 94
 - definition 6, 15, 89
 - editing 96, 98
 - ending subsystems automatically 102
 - exit programs 91
 - file groups 72
 - holding job queues 103
 - how they work 6
 - moving media by 73
 - performing maintenance as part of 166
 - post-processing exits in 222
 - pre-processing exits in 222
 - processing after save 104
 - processing before save 103
 - processing order 103
 - recovering 135
 - with STRRCYBRM 137
 - recovering multiple 140
 - concurrently 154
 - releasing job queues 103
 - saving selected libraries 100
 - scheduling 93
 - scheduling backups of 169
 - restrictions 171
 - security 180
 - special considerations 100
 - special operations 91
 - exit programs 91
 - tape loading 91
 - special values
 - *ALLDLO 91
 - *ALLPROD 92
 - *ALLTEST 92

- control groups (*continued*)
 - special values (*continued*)
 - *ALLUSR 92
 - *ASPnn 92
 - *DLOnn 92
 - *IBM 92
 - *LINK 92
 - *QHST 92
 - *SAVCAL 92
 - *SAVCFG 92
 - *SAVSECDTA 92
 - *SAVSYS 92
 - spooled file lists in 37
 - starting subsystems
 - automatically 102
 - user exits in 111
 - using the save-while-active
 - feature 113
 - using with a move policy 73
 - working with 96
- copying volumes 80
- CPYMEDIBRM 206
- creating
 - backup lists in a control group 104
 - container classes 67
 - control groups 96
 - folder lists 105
 - link lists 109
 - objects lists 106
 - recovery activities list 158
 - recovery contact list 157
 - spooled file lists 107
- customizing
 - backup 83
 - planning 83
 - user access to BRMS functions 179

D

- device pooling 47
- Device Report 260
- devices
 - adding 45
 - automatically 45
 - manually 46
 - auto enroll media 47
 - changing configuration 48
 - changing device information
 - media libraries 48
 - changing information 46
 - auto enroll media 47
 - density 48
 - optimum block size 47
 - shared device 47
 - standalone devices 46
 - changing name 48
 - configuration 48
 - density 48
 - initializing 45
 - last active 51
 - optimum block size 47
 - pooling 47
 - security 182
 - sharing 47
 - varying on 45, 46
 - working with 45
- directory objects, recovering 36

- Display ASP Information Report 22
- Display Job Log (DSPJOBLOG) 12
- Display Job Log (DSPJOBLOG)
 - command 19, 40
- Display System Values (DSPSYSVAL) 12
- DLOs (document library objects)
 - See* document library objects (DLOs), recovering
- document library objects (DLOs),
 - recovering 36
- DSPJOBLOG (Display Job Log)
 - command 19, 40
- Duplicate Media using BRMS (DUPMEDBRM) command 79
- duplicating media 79
 - limitations 79
 - saving media information 81
 - Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) servers 80
- DUPMEDBRM (Duplicate Media using BRMS) command 79
- dynamic retrieval 238

E

- End Subsystems (ENDSBS) command 19
- ENDSBS (End Subsystems) command 19
- enrolling media 55
 - automatically 56
 - existing 56
 - multiple volumes
 - for media libraries 56
 - for stand-alone devices 56
- EXTMEDIBRM (Extract Media Information Using BRMS) command 57
- Extract Media Information Using BRMS (EXTMEDIBRM) command 57

F

- file groups 72
- folders
 - recovering 149
 - saving with object detail 149
- functional usage model 179
 - backup usage levels 180
 - backup control groups 180
 - backup lists 180
 - backup policy 180
 - basic backup activities 180
 - how it works 179
 - implementing
 - using iSeries Navigator 182
 - media management usage levels 181
 - advanced media activities 181
 - basic media activities 181
 - basic movement activities 181
 - media classes 181
 - media information 181
 - media policies 181
 - move policies 181
 - move verification 181
 - recovery usage levels 180
 - basic recovery activities 180
 - recovery policy 181

- functional usage model (*continued*)
 - registering new BRMS activities 183
 - system-related usage levels 181
 - auxiliary storage pools 182
 - basic system activities 181
 - devices 182
 - initialize BRMS 182
 - log information 182
 - maintenance 182
 - system policy 182
 - using the SETUSRBRM command with 183
 - working with OS/400 security controls 185

H

- hierarchical storage management 3
- HSM
 - See* hierarchical storage management

I

- IBM Content Manager onDemand for iSeries, recovering 38
- IBM product libraries, recovering 34
- independent disk pools 23
- initial program load (IPL)
 - performing 40
- Initialize BRMS (INZBRM) command 30
- Initialize Media Using BRMS (INZMEDBRM) command 58
- Initialize Media Using BRMS (INZMEDBRM) command 59
- initializing
 - BRMS 11
 - BRMS for online backups 217
 - device information 30
 - devices 45
 - functional authority information 29
 - Initialize BRMS (INZBRM) command 29, 30
 - media library information 30
 - update system name 29
 - volumes 58
 - for use by media libraries 59
 - how many 59
- installing
 - BRMS 11
 - hardware requirements 11
 - instructions 12
 - software requirements 11
- Integrated File System
 - recovering objects 135
 - with STRRCYBRM 143
 - restoring objects to /QLANSrv 143
- INZBRM 45
- INZBRM (Initialize BRMS) command 30
- INZMEDBRM (Initialize Media Using BRMS) command 58, 59
- IPL
 - See* initial program load (IPL)
- iSeries Integration for Windows Server,
 - recovering 37, 40

iSeries Navigator
 implementing the functional usage
 model 182

J

job log, printing 40
job queues
 holding 103
 releasing 103
job scheduler
 changing 173
 substitution variables 174
journal changes
 applying 38
 recovering 38

L

labels
 customizing 82
 external 81
 media 81
 printing 81
LAN servers
 restoring IFS objects to 143
last active device 51
libraries
 IBM product 34
 omitting from a backup 100
 QGPL 31
 QSYS2 31
 QUSRSYS 31, 100
 recovering 31, 135
 IBM product 34
 user 35
 with STRRCYBRM 142
 special considerations when
 saving 100
 user 35
Library Backup Analysis Report 260
license, BRMS 13
Licensed Internal Code, recovering 24
Link Information Report 260
Linux servers in a logical partition 37
Location Analysis Report 261
Log Report 261
Lotus server online backups
 See online backups

M

maintenance 163
 Backup Activity Report 164
 Centralized Media Audit Report 165
 messages 167
 reports
 Backup Activity Report 164
 BRMS Recovery Reports 164
 Centralized Media Audit
 Report 165
 Save Strategy Exceptions
 Report 164
 Tape Volume Report 165
 Volume Statistics Report 165
 Volume Threshold Report 165

maintenace 163 (*continued*)
 running as an *EXIT 166
 Save Strategy Exceptions Report 164
 scheduling 165
 security 182
 Start Maintenance for BRMS
 (STRMNTBRM) command
 commands processed by 165
 scheduling 165
 what it does 163
 Tape Volume Report 165
 Volume Statistics Report 165
 Volume Threshold Report 165

media
 adding media contents to the history
 file
 from an enrolled volume 57
 adding to the media scratch pool 219
 appending to 89
 automatically enrolling 47
 container classes 67
 containers 66, 68
 copying volumes 80
 duplicating 79
 enrolling 15, 55, 219
 media library 17
 stand-alone tape device 17
 enrolling existing volumes 56
 enrolling multiple volumes
 for media libraries 56
 for stand-alone devices 56
 file groups 72
 initializing volumes 58
 how many 59
 initiating movement 74
 with MOVMEDBRM 74
 with STRMNTBRM 75
 inventory 60, 77
 managing 8
 media class 16
 media classes 54
 media information
 in QUSRBRM library 28
 recovering 28
 mounting volumes 61
 move pattern 71
 moving 8, 68, 69, 74
 by control group 73
 by file groups 72
 next volume message prompt 61
 pools 60
 benefits 60
 preparing 8, 54
 recovering media information 28
 retention
 definition 63
 full backups 63
 incremental backups 63
 overlapping 63
 rotating 60
 limitations of 60
 scratch pools 60
 benefits 60
 security 186
 sets 60
 sharing 55
 slotting 69

media (*continued*)
 storage locations 64
 creating 64
 defaults 64
 home location 64
 how BRMS uses 64
 media policy 65
 move policy 65
 system policy 65
 uses of 64
 Work with Storage Locations
 (WRKLOCBRM) display 65
 storing 8, 61
 tape I/O from a program 241
 tracking 8, 77
 verifying movement 76
Media and Storage Extensions,
 installing 11
media class
 adding 54
 creating 54
 definition 16, 54
 description 55
 determining 16
 security 181
 working with 54
Media Class Report 262
Media Expiration Report 262
Media Information Report 262
media inventory 77
media libraries
 adjustments to BRMS when
 using 235
 advantages 49
 archiving 238
 automating recovery with 26
 basic setup 235
 changing device information 48
 creating on your system 235
 definition 48
 enrolling media in 236
 enrolling multiple volumes 56
 how BRMS uses 48
 initializing volumes for 59
 model 3494
 attaching through an RS232
 connection 33
 varying on LAN line
 description 23
 varying on the LAN line
 description 33
 moving volumes 239
 non-IBM 50
 performing a normal save
 operation 237
 recovering an entire system 238
 recovery process 237
 releasing 46
 resetting information 33
 save and restore tasks 237
 saving licensed programs 237
 saving storage 237
 setting up 235
 sharing 49
 storage locations 65
 third party 50
 user-defined 50

- media libraries (*continued*)
 - varying on 45, 46
 - varying on LAN line description 23
 - Work with Media Libraries Using BRMS (WRKMLBTRM)
 - command 49
 - Work with Media Library Status (WRKMLBSTS) 49
 - Work with Media Library Status (WRKMLBSTS) command 26
- Media Library Media Report 263
- Media Library Report 263
- media management
 - components of 7, 53
 - determining media classes 16
 - enrolling media 15
 - media inventory
 - setting up 60
 - media pools 60
 - benefits 60
 - media scratch pools 60
 - benefits 60
 - media set rotation 60
 - limitations of 60
 - moving media 8
 - preparing media 8
 - rotating media sets 60
 - scratch pools 60
 - security 181
 - setting up 53
 - storing media 8
 - tracking media 8
 - usage levels 181
- Media Merge Report 264
- Media Movement Report 264
- media policy
 - changing 62
 - copying 62
 - creating 62
 - definition 5, 61
 - deleting 62
 - displaying 62
 - FULL 6, 61
 - INCR 61
 - predefined 61
 - retention
 - definition 63
 - full backups 63
 - incremental backups 63
 - overlapping 63
 - SAVF 61
 - SAVSYS 61
 - security 181
 - storage locations 65
 - storing media 61
 - SYSTEM 61
 - using with OS/400 save commands 64
 - Work with Media Policies display 62
- Media Policy Report 264
- Media Report 261
- Media Volume Statistics Report 264
- Media Volume Threshold Report 265
- messages
 - BRM1948 120
 - BRM1950 120
 - BRM1954 120

- messages (*continued*)
 - BRM1990 50
 - BRM1991 50
 - console monitor 120
 - CPF3773 40
 - maintenance 167
 - media libraries 50
 - message file Q1AMSGF 50
 - replying to on nonprogrammable workstation 93
 - save-while-active 118
- migrating
 - from previous release to current release 210
- Monitor Save While Active for BRMS (MONSWABRM) command 115
- MONSWABRM (Monitor Save While Active for BRMS) command 115
- mounting volumes 61
- Move Media Using BRMS (MOVMEDBRM) command 68, 74
- move patterns 69
 - scheduling 73
- move policy
 - and media policies 70
 - calendars 73
 - defining exceptions 74
 - exceptions 74
 - for move days 74
 - for working days 73
 - names 74
 - specifying dates 74
 - changing 70
 - containers 68
 - creating 70
 - default 70
 - definition 5, 70
 - deleting 70
 - move management calendars 73
 - move patterns 73
 - OFFSITE 70
 - security 181
 - storage locations 65
 - using with a control group 73
- Move Policy Report 265
- move reports
 - Print Media Movement 77
 - printing 77
 - Run Media Movement 77
- moving 76
 - initiating 74
 - media 69
 - security 181
 - with media libraries 239
 - verifying media moves 76
- MOVMEDBRM (Move Media Using BRMS) command 68, 74
- Multiple Control Groups in a Serial Backup
 - appending to media 126
 - saving media information 126

N

- network feature 3
- networking 199
 - APPC configuration 203

- networking (*continued*)
 - APPN configuration 203
 - changing a system name 209
 - copying control groups 213
 - how networks communicate 202
 - joining two BRMS networks 212
 - receiving media information 211
 - removing a system from a network 215
 - removing network feature 216
 - security considerations 203
 - setting up 205
 - sharing media inventory 200
 - synchronizing media inventory 200
 - TCP/IP configuration 204
 - verifying the network 214
- next volume message prompt, setting up 61

O

- object level detail 88
- objects in directories, recovering 36
- omitting
 - libraries from a backup 100
- online backups
 - adding media 219
 - choosing the device 219
 - choosing the media class 219
 - copying Lotus server control groups 222
 - enrolling media 219
 - how they work 217
 - initializing BRMS for 217
 - limitations 221
 - Lotus server 217
 - performance tuning 221
 - Domino servers 221
 - QuickPlace servers 221
 - performing 218
 - planning for disaster recovery 220
 - recommendations 221
 - restrictions 221
 - starting 219
 - viewing saved items 220
- operating system, recovering 25
- optimum block size 47

P

- parallel backups 121
 - restrictions 121
 - setting up 121
 - when to use 121
- parallel recoveries 153
 - performing 155
- policies
 - and control groups 6
 - backup 5, 86
 - how they work 5
 - media 5, 61, 65
 - move 5, 65
 - recovery 5, 133
 - system 5
 - types 5
 - pooling devices 47

- preparing
 - media 54
- presentation controls 86
 - defaults 86
- printing
 - customized labels 82
 - external labels 81
 - job log 40
 - labels 55, 81
 - media labels 81
 - media status reports 79
 - movement-related reports 77
 - recovery reports 19, 22
- profiles
 - See* user profiles
- program temporary fixes (PTFs) 39
 - applying 39
 - reloading latest cumulative 12
- programs
 - See* application program interfaces (APIs)
- PTF
 - See* program temporary fixes (PTFs)

Q

- QALLSPLF spooled file list 108
- QALWUSRDMN system value 12
- QATACGY file 100
- QATADEV file 100
- QATAMID file 100
- QGPL library 31
- QP1A2RCY spooled file 20, 22
- QP1AASP spooled file 20, 22
- QP1ARCY spooled file 20, 22
- QSYS2 library 31
- QUSRBRM library 23, 28
 - generating a Recovering Your Entire System report from 157
- QUSRSYS library 23, 31
 - QATACGY file 100
 - QATADEV file 100
 - QATAMID file 100

R

- recovering 21
 - authority 39
 - authorization information 39
 - automating your recovery 26
 - Auxiliary storage pool devices 231
 - BRMS libraries 27
 - BRMS product 27
 - configuration data 32
 - control groups
 - multiple 140
 - with STRRCYBRM 137
 - creating a recovery activities list 158
 - creating a recovery contact list 157
 - directory objects 36
 - Display ASP Information Report 22
 - DLOs (document library objects) 36
 - document library objects (DLOs) 36
 - entire system 21
 - including LAN Server environment 146

- recovering (*continued*)
 - entire system (*continued*)
 - using a media library 238
 - folders 149
 - generating a Recovering Your Entire System report from the QUSRBRM data files 157
 - IBM Content Manager onDemand for iSeries 38
 - IBM product libraries 34
 - IFS objects
 - with STRRCYBRM 143
 - independent disk pools 23
 - integrated file system objects
 - with STRRCYBRM 143
 - iSeries Integration for Windows Server 37, 40
 - journal changes 38
 - libraries
 - with STRRCYBRM 142
 - Licensed Internal Code 24
 - Linux servers in a logical partition 37
 - Lotus server databases 220
 - media information 28
 - multiple control groups 140
 - multiple control groups
 - concurrently 154
 - objects in directories 36
 - objects with object detail 147
 - objects without object detail 149
 - operating system 25
 - printing recovery reports 22
 - Recovering Your Entire System 21
 - recovery reports 21
 - Recovery Volume Summary Report 22
 - remaining system data 33
 - remaining user data 33
 - restarting a recovery 41
 - resuming a recovery 156
 - scheduling 169
 - selected items 133
 - spooled files 36, 151
 - Start Recovery using BRMS (STRRCYBRM) 22
 - Start Recovery using BRMS (STRRCYBRM) command 23
 - storage spaces 145
 - STRRCYBRM (Start Recovery using BRMS) 22
 - system libraries 31
 - testing 41
 - tips 41
 - recovery reports 42
 - restarting a recovery 41
 - using OS/400 41
 - to a different system
 - allowing object differences 30
 - to the same system 30
 - user libraries 35
 - user profiles 30, 146
 - using OS/400 to assist 41
 - with the recovery policy 133
 - without the Recovery Analysis Report 156

- recovering (*continued*)
 - identifying the tapes you need 156
- Recovering Your Entire System report
 - generating from the QUSRBRM data files 157
- Recovering Your Entire System Report 21
 - control group 24
 - restoring from save files 23
 - restoring from Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) servers 23
 - saved time 24
 - start time 24
 - using 23, 24
 - volume identifier 24
- recovery activities list 158
- Recovery Activities Report 266
- Recovery Analysis Report 21, 266
- recovery contact list 157
- recovery policy
 - definition 5
- Recovery Policy Report 266
- recovery reports
 - and system maintenance 164
 - Display ASP Information 20, 22
 - overview 21
 - printing 19, 22
 - Recovering Your Entire System 20, 21
 - Recovering Your Entire System Report using 23
 - Recovery Analysis Report 21
 - Recovery Volume Summary Report 20, 22
 - testing 41
- Recovery Volume Summary Report 22, 266
- reference calendar 74
- removing BRMS 13
- reports
 - ASP Information Report 257
 - Backup Activity Report 164
 - Backup Folder List 257
 - Backup Link List 257
 - Backup Object List 257
 - Backup Plan 257
 - Backup Policy 258
 - Backup Spooled File List 258
 - Calendar 258
 - Centralized Media Audit 258
 - Centralized Media Audit Report 165
 - Container 259
 - Container Class 259
 - Device 260
 - Display ASP Information 22
 - Library Backup Analysis 260
 - Link Information 260
 - Location Analysis 261
 - Log 261
 - Media 261
 - Media Class 262
 - Media Expiration 262
 - Media Information 262
 - Media Library 263
 - Media Library Media 263
 - Media Merge 264

reports (*continued*)

- Media Movement 264
- Media Policy 264
- Media Volume Statistics 264
- Media Volume Threshold 265
- Move Policy 265
- movement-related 77
- printing 19
 - media status 79
 - movement-related 77
 - recovery 22
- Recovering Your Entire System 21
 - using to recover LAN Server environment 146
- Recovering Your Entire System Report
 - using 23
- recovery 21
- Recovery Activities 266
- Recovery Analysis 266
- Recovery Analysis Report 21
- Recovery Policy 266
- Recovery Volume Summary 266
- Recovery Volume Summary Report 22
- Save Files 267
- Save Strategy Exceptions 267
- Save Strategy Exceptions Report 164
- Saved Folders 267
- Saved Objects 267
- Saved Spooled Files by Date 267
- Storage Location 268
- summary of 257
- System Policy 268
- Tape Volume Report 165
- Version Control 268
- Volume Movement 269
- Volume Statistics Report 165
- Volume Threshold Report 165
- reset system values 40
- resetting device and media library information 33
- Restore Authority using BRMS (RSTAUTBRM) command 160
- Restore Authority Using BRMS (RSTAUTBRM) command 39
- Restore DLO using BRMS (RSTDLOBRM) command 160
- Restore Library using BRMS (RSTLIBBRM) command 160
- Restore Object using BRMS (RSTBRM) command 160
- Restore Object using BRMS (RSTOBJBRM) command 160
- restoring
 - See* recovering
- retaining object level detail 88
- retention, media 63
 - full backups 63
 - incremental backups 63
- RSTAUTBRM (Restore Authority using BRMS) command 160
- RSTAUTBRM (Restore Authority Using BRMS) command 39
- RSTBRM (Restore Object using BRMS) command 160
- RSTDLOBRM (Restore DLO using BRMS) command 160

- RSTLIBBRM (Restore Library using BRMS) command 160
- RSTOBJBRM (Restore Object using BRMS) command 160

S

- SAVBRM (Save BRMS) command 131
- SAVDLOBRM (Save DLO using BRMS) command 131
- SAVDOMBRM 221
- Save BRMS (SAVBRM) command 131
- Save DLO using BRMS (SAVDLOBRM) command 131
- Save Files Report 267
- Save Folder List using BRMS (SAVFLRLBRM) command 131
- Save Library using BRMS (SAVLIBBRM) command 131
- Save Media Information using BRMS (SAVMEDIBRM) command 131
- Save Object List using BRMS (SAVOBJLBRM) command 131
- Save Object using BRMS (SAVOBJBRM) command 131
- Save Save File with BRMS (SAVSAVFBRM) command 101
- Save Save Files using BRMS (SAVSAVFBRM) command 131
- Save Strategy Exceptions Report 267
- Save System using BRMS (SAVSYSBRM) command 132
- save-while-active feature 113
 - activating 114
 - advantages 113
 - message queue 118
 - messages 118
 - monitoring for synchronization checkpoints 115
 - using *ALLPROD special value with 114
 - using *ALLUSR special value with 114
 - using without commitment control 113
 - using without journaling 113
- Saved Folders Report 267
- Saved Objects Report 267
- Saved Spooled Files by Date Report 267
- SAVFLRLBRM (Save Folder List using BRMS) command 131
- SAVLIBBRM (Save Library using BRMS) command 131
- SAVLQPB RM 221
- SAVMEDIBRM (Save Media Information using BRMS) command 131
- SAVOBJBRM (Save Object using BRMS) command 131
- SAVOBJLBRM (Save Object List using BRMS) command 131
- SAVSAVFBRM (Save Save File with BRMS) command 101
- SAVSAVFBRM (Save Save Files using BRMS) command 131
- SAVSYSBRM (Save System using BRMS) command 132

scheduling

- *SAVSYS backups 93
- backups 169
 - with *SAVSYS in them 93
- BRMS save command backups 171
- changing the job scheduler 173
 - substitution variables 174
- control group backups 169
 - restrictions 171
- maintenance 165
- recoveries 169, 171
- scheduling an *SAVSYS with console monitoring 94
- selected recoveries 171
- viewing scheduled jobs 172
- working with scheduled jobs 172

security

- console monitor 185
- functional usage model 179
 - backup function 180
 - how it works 179
- in a network 203
- media 186
- recommendations 186
- working with OS/400 security controls 185
 - recommendations 186

serial backups 120

serial recoveries 153

Set User Usage for BRMS (SETUSRBRM) command 179

setting up

- BRMS network 205
- media inventory system 60
- media management 53
- next volume message prompt 61

SETUSRBRM (Set User Usage for BRMS) command 179

sharing devices 47

signing off interactive users 7

special operations 91

- exit programs 91
- tape loading 91

special values 91

- *ALLDLO 91
- *ALLPROD 92
- *ALLTEST 92
- *ALLUSR 92
- *ASPnn 92
- *DLOnn 92
- *EXIT 111
- *IBM 92
- *LINK 92
- *QHST 92
- *SAVCAL 92
- *SAVCFG 92
- *SAVSEC DTA 92
- *SAVSYS 92
 - authority needed 93
 - restrictions 92
 - special considerations 92
 - using 92

spooled files

- backing up 107
- creating spooled file lists 107
- list 37
- QALLSPLF spooled file list 108

- spooled files (*continued*)
 - QP1A2RCY 20, 22
 - QP1AASP 20, 22
 - QP1ARCY 20, 22
 - recovering 36, 151
 - saving 37
 - Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLF)
 - command 20
 - Work with Spooled Files Using BRMS (WRKSPLFBRM) command 36
- SRM database
 - See* system resource management (SRM) database
- standard product 3
 - backup function 4
 - media management function 4
 - overview 4
 - recovery function 4
- Start Backup using BRMS (STRBKUBRM) command 19
- Start Backup Using BRMS (STRBKUBRM) command 18, 19
- Start Maintenance for BRMS (STRMNTBRM) command 75, 163
- Start Recovery using BRM (STRRCYBRM) command 135
 - parameters 135
 - what it does 135
- Start Recovery using BRMS (STRRCYBRM) command 22, 23
- Start Recovery Using BRMS (STRRCYBRM) command 20
- Storage Location Report 268
- storage locations
 - creating 64
 - home location 64
 - how BRMS uses 64
 - media libraries 65
 - media policy 65
 - move policy 65
 - system policy 65
 - uses of 64
 - Work with Storage Locations (WRKLOCBRM) display 65
- storage locations, media 64
- STRBKUBRM (Start Backup using BRMS) command 19
- STRBKUBRM (Start Backup Using BRMS) command 18, 19
- STRMNTBRM (Start Maintenance for BRMS) command 75, 163
- STRRCYBRM (Start Recovery using BRM) command 135
- STRRCYBRM (Start Recovery using BRMS) command 22, 23
- STRRCYBRM (Start Recovery Using BRMS) command 20
- substitution variables 174
- subsystems
 - ending 19
 - with *SAVSYS 93
 - ending automatically 102
 - starting
 - with *SAVSYS 93
 - starting automatically 102
 - working with 19
- SWA feature
 - See* save-while-active feature
- system information, verify 39
- system policy
 - customizing backups 84
 - default value 7
 - defaults 84
 - definition 5
 - key parameters 85
 - overriding 6, 87
 - security 182
 - storage locations 65
 - understanding 84
- System Policy Report 268
- system recovery 21
- system resource management (SRM)
 - database 30, 32
- system values 12
 - QALWUSRDMN (Allow user domain objects in user libraries) 12

T

- tape automation
 - See* media libraries
- tape input/output 241
 - input processing 245
 - messages 254
 - processing techniques 253
- tape file processing 243
 - with multiple devices 247
 - calling the program 251
 - compiling the program 248
 - creating tape file objects 247
 - indicating which drives to use 248
 - managing the media 250
 - results 251
- tape library
 - See* media libraries
- third party media libraries 50
- Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) 23
 - adding a location 191
 - benefits 189
 - Create a media policy 192
 - duplicating items saved to 80
 - overview 189
 - restrictions 189
 - setting up 190
 - TSM (ADSM) Server 190
 - TSM Client 191
 - TSM application program interfaces (APIs) 191
- TSM
 - See* Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM)

U

- uninstalling BRMS 13
- updating
 - license information 13
- user exits
 - definition 111
 - in control groups 111
 - in Lotus server backups 222
 - post—processing activities 112

- user exits (*continued*)
 - processing 111
- user libraries, recovering 35
- user profiles
 - allowing object differences 30
 - QSECOFR
 - changing 31
 - recovering 30, 146
- User-defined file systems 84, 227

V

- varying on
 - device 45
 - media library 45
- verifying system information 39
- Version Control Report 268
- Volume Movement Report 269

W

- Work with Configuration Status (WRKCFGSTS) command 45
- Work with Containers Using BRMS (WRKCNBRM) command 67
- Work with Devices using BRMS (WRKDEVBRM) command 30, 33
- Work with Link Information (WRKLNKBRM) command 145
- Work with Media Classes Using BRMS (WRKCLSBM) command 55
- Work with Media Information Using BRMS (WRKMEDIBRM) command 57
- Work with Media Libraries Using BRMS (WRKMLBBRM) command 49
- Work with Media Library Status (WRKMLBSTS) command 26, 49
- Work with Media using BRMS (WRKMEDBRM) command 17
- Work with Spooled Files (WRKSPLF) command 20
- Work with Spooled Files Using BRMS (WRKSPLFBRM) command 36
- Work with Storage Locations (WRKLOCBRM) display 65
- Work with Storage Locations Using BRMS (WRKLOCBRM) command 65
- Work with Subsystems (WRKSBS) command 19
- Work with System Values (WERKSYSVAL) command 40
- Work with System Values (WRKSYSVAL) 12
- Work with System Values (WRKSYSVAL) command 25
- working with devices 45
- WRKCFGSTS (Work with Configuration Status) command 45
- WRKCLSBM 55
- WRKCLSBM (Work with Media Classes Using BRMS) command 55
- WRKCNBRM (Work with Containers Using BRMS) command 67
- WRKDEVBRM (Work with Devices using BRMS) command 30, 33

WRKLICINF (Work with License
 Information) command 13
 WRKLNKBRM (Work with Link
 Information) command 145
 WRKLOCBRM (Work with Storage
 Locations Using BRMS) command 65
 WRKMEDBRM (Work with Media using
 BRMS) command 17
 WRKMEDIBRM (Work with Media
 Information Using BRMS)
 command 57
 WRKMLBBRM (Work with Media
 Libraries Using BRMS) command 49
 WRKMLBSTS (Work with Media Library
 Status) command 26, 49
 WRKSBS (Work with Subsystems) 19
 WRKSPLF (Work with Spooled Files)
 command 20
 WRKSPLFBRM (Work with Spooled Files
 Using BRMS) command 36
 WRKSYSVAL (Work with System Values)
 command 25, 40
 WRKSYSVAL (Work with System
 Values) 12

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

iSeries
Backup, Recovery, and Media Services for iSeries
Version 5

Publication No. SC41-5345-03

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Overall satisfaction	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Accurate	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Complete	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to find	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to understand	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Well organized	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Applicable to your tasks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? ☐ Yes ☐ No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.



Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

IBM CORPORATION
ATTN DEPT 542 IDCLERK
3605 HWY 52 N
ROCHESTER MN 55901-7829



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold
Along Line



Printed in U.S.A.

SC41-5345-03

